

The Gigantic Mess Project

2017–2023

The Gigantic Mess Project Authors

Version 1d560bdd, compiled on Jan 05, 2024.

Contents

Part 1. Sets	1
Chapter 1. Sets	2
1.1. The Enrichment of Sets in Classical Truth Values	2
1.1.1. (-2) -Categories	2
1.1.2. (-1) -Categories	2
1.1.3. 0-Categories	5
1.1.4. Tables of Analogies Between Set Theory and Category Theory	5
Appendices	7
1.A. Other Chapters	7
1.B. Other Chapters	8
Chapter 2. Constructions With Sets	10
2.1. Limits of Sets	10
2.1.1. Products of Families of Sets	10
2.1.2. Binary Products of Sets	11
2.1.3. Pullbacks	16
2.1.4. Equalisers	21
2.2. Colimits of Sets	24
2.2.1. Coproducts of Families of Sets	24
2.2.2. Binary Coproducts	25
2.2.3. Pushouts	27
2.2.4. Coequalisers	32
2.3. Operations With Sets	34
2.3.1. The Empty Set	34
2.3.2. Singleton Sets	34
2.3.3. Pairings of Sets	34
2.3.4. Ordered Pairs	35
2.3.5. Unions of Families	35
2.3.6. Binary Unions	35
2.3.7. Intersections of Families	37
2.3.8. Binary Intersections	37
2.3.9. Differences	39
2.3.10. Complements	41
2.3.11. Symmetric Differences	42
2.4. Powersets	46
2.4.1. Characteristic Functions	46
2.4.2. The Yoneda Lemma for Sets	49
2.4.3. Powersets	49
2.4.4. Direct Images	53

2.4.5. Inverse Images	56
2.4.6. Direct Images With Compact Support	59
Appendices	64
2.A. Other Chapters	65
2.2. Other Chapters	66
 Chapter 3. Pointed Sets	67
3.1. Pointed Sets	67
3.1.1. Foundations	67
3.1.2. Morphisms of Pointed Sets	67
3.1.3. The Category of Pointed Sets	68
3.1.4. Elementary Properties of Pointed Sets	68
3.2. Limits of Pointed Sets	69
3.2.1. Products	69
3.2.2. Equalisers	69
3.2.3. Pullbacks	69
3.3. Colimits of Pointed Sets	70
3.3.1. Coproducts	70
3.3.2. Pushouts	70
3.3.3. Coequalisers	70
3.4. Constructions With Pointed Sets	70
3.4.1. Internal Hom	70
3.4.2. Free Pointed Sets	70
3.4.3. Wedge Sums of Pointed Sets	71
Appendices	73
3.A. Other Chapters	73
3.2. Other Chapters	74
 Chapter 4. Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	76
4.1. Bilinear Morphisms of Pointed Sets	76
4.1.1. Left Bilinear Morphisms of Pointed Sets	76
4.1.2. Right Bilinear Morphisms of Pointed Sets	76
4.1.3. Bilinear Morphisms of Pointed Sets	77
4.2. Tensors and Cotensors of Pointed Sets by Sets	78
4.2.1. Tensors of Pointed Sets by Sets	78
4.2.2. Cotensors of Pointed Sets by Sets	79
4.3. The Left Tensor Product of Pointed Sets	79
4.3.1. Foundations	79
4.3.2. The Skew Associator	80
4.3.3. The Skew Left Unit	81
4.3.4. The Skew Right Unit	82
4.3.5. The Left-Skew Monoidal Category Structure on Pointed Sets	82
4.4. The Right Tensor Product of Pointed Sets	83
4.4.1. Foundations	83
4.4.2. The Skew Associator	83
4.4.3. The Skew Left Unit	84
4.4.4. The Skew Right Unit	85
4.4.5. The Right-Skew Monoidal Category Structure on Pointed Sets	85

4.5. Smash Products of Pointed Sets	86
4.5.1. Foundations	86
Appendices	90
4.A. Other Chapters	90
4.2. Other Chapters	91
Chapter 5. Relations	93
5.1. Relations	94
5.1.1. Foundations	94
5.1.2. Relations as Decategorifications of Profunctors	96
5.1.3. Examples of Relations	97
5.1.4. Functional Relations	98
5.1.5. Total Relations	99
5.2. Categories of Relations	99
5.2.1. The Category of Relations	99
5.2.2. The Closed Symmetric Monoidal Category of Relations	100
5.2.2.1. The Monoidal Product	100
5.2.2.2. The Monoidal Unit	100
5.2.2.3. The Associator	101
5.2.2.4. The Left Unitor	101
5.2.2.5. The Right Unitor	101
5.2.2.6. The Symmetry	102
5.2.2.7. The Internal Hom	102
5.2.2.8. The Closed Symmetric Monoidal Category of Relations	103
5.2.3. The 2-Category of Relations	103
5.2.4. The Double Category of Relations	104
5.2.4.1. The Double Category of Relations	104
5.2.4.2. Horizontal Identities	105
5.2.4.3. Horizontal Composition	106
5.2.4.4. Vertical Composition of 2-Morphisms	107
5.2.4.5. The Associators	108
5.2.4.6. The Left Unitors	108
5.2.4.7. The Right Unitors	109
5.2.5. Properties of the Category of Relations	109
5.3. Constructions With Relations	120
5.3.1. The Graph of a Function	120
5.3.2. The Inverse of a Function	122
5.3.3. Representable Relations	124
5.3.4. The Domain and Range of a Relation	124
5.3.5. Binary Unions of Relations	125
5.3.6. Unions of Families of Relations	126
5.3.7. Binary Intersections of Relations	126
5.3.8. Intersections of Families of Relations	127
5.3.9. Binary Products of Relations	128
5.3.10. Products of Families of Relations	129
5.3.11. The Inverse of a Relation	129
5.3.12. Composition of Relations	130
5.3.13. The Collage of a Relation	134
5.4. Equivalence Relations	135

5.4.1. Reflexive Relations	135
5.4.1.1. Foundations	135
5.4.1.2. The Reflexive Closure of a Relation	136
5.4.2. Symmetric Relations	137
5.4.2.1. Foundations	137
5.4.2.2. The Symmetric Closure of a Relation	137
5.4.3. Transitive Relations	138
5.4.3.1. Foundations	138
5.4.3.2. The Transitive Closure of a Relation	139
5.4.4. Equivalence Relations	141
5.4.4.1. Foundations	141
5.4.4.2. The Equivalence Closure of a Relation	141
5.4.5. Quotients by Equivalence Relations	142
5.4.5.1. Equivalence Classes	142
5.4.5.2. Quotients of Sets by Equivalence Relations	142
5.5. Functoriality of Powersets	145
5.5.1. Direct Images	145
5.5.2. Strong Inverse Images	149
5.5.3. Weak Inverse Images	153
5.5.4. Direct Images With Compact Support	157
5.5.5. Functoriality of Powersets	161
5.5.6. Functoriality of Powersets: Relations on Powersets	162
5.6. Relative Preorders	162
5.6.1. The Left Skew Monoidal Structure on $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$	162
5.6.1.1. The Left Skew Monoidal Product	163
5.6.1.2. The Left Skew Monoidal Unit	163
5.6.1.3. The Left Skew Associators	163
5.6.1.4. The Left Skew Left Unitors	164
5.6.1.5. The Left Skew Right Unitors	164
5.6.1.6. The Left Skew Monoidal Structure on $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$	164
5.6.2. Left Relative Preorders	165
5.6.3. The Right Skew Monoidal Structure on $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$	166
5.6.3.1. The Right Skew Monoidal Product	166
5.6.3.2. The Right Skew Monoidal Unit	167
5.6.3.3. The Right Skew Associators	167
5.6.3.4. The Right Skew Left Unitors	167
5.6.3.5. The Right Skew Right Unitors	168
5.6.3.6. The Right Skew Monoidal Structure on $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$	168
5.6.4. Right Relative Preorders	168
Appendices	169
5.A. Other Chapters	170
5.B. Other Chapters	171
Chapter 6. Spans	172
6.1. Spans	175
6.1.1. The Walking Span	175
6.1.2. Spans	175
6.1.3. Morphisms of Spans	175

6.1.4. Functional Spans	176
6.1.5. Total Spans	177
6.2. Categories of Spans	177
6.2.1. The Category of Spans Between Two Sets	177
6.2.2. The Bicategory of Spans	180
6.2.3. The Monoidal Bicategory of Spans	181
6.2.4. The Double Category of Spans	181
6.2.5. Properties of The Bicategory of Spans	184
6.3. Limits of Spans	187
6.3.1. tmp^2	187
6.3.2. tmp	187
6.3.3. Left Kan Extensions	188
6.3.4. Right Kan Extensions	188
6.3.5. Right Kan Lifts	189
6.4. Colimits of Spans	189
6.5. Constructions With Spans	189
6.5.1. Representable Spans	189
6.5.2. Composition of Spans	190
6.5.3. Horizontal Composition of Morphisms of Spans	190
6.5.4. Properties of Composition of Spans	191
6.5.5. The Inverse of a Span	191
6.6. Functoriality of Spans	191
6.6.1. Direct Images	191
6.6.2. Functoriality of Spans on Powersets	191
6.7. Un/Straightening for Spans	191
6.7.1. Straightening for Spans	191
6.7.2. Unstraightening for Spans	192
6.7.3. The Un/Straightening Equivalence for Spans	193
6.8. Comparison of Spans to Functions and Relations	194
6.8.1. Comparison to Functions	194
6.8.2. Comparison to Relations: From Span to Rel	195
6.8.2.1. Relations Associated to Spans	195
6.8.2.2. The Comparison Functor from Span to Rel	195
6.8.3. Comparison to Relations: From Rel to Span	196
6.8.4. Comparison to Relations: The Wehrheim–Woodward Construction	198
6.8.5. Comparison to Multirelations	198
6.8.6. Comparison to Relations via Double Categories	198
Appendices	199
6.A. Other Chapters	199
6.2. Other Chapters	200
Chapter 7. Posets	201
7.1. Section	201
7.1.1. Section	201
7.1.1.1. Section	201
Appendices	201
7.A. Other Chapters	201

7.2. Other Chapters	202
Part 2. Indexed and Fibred Sets	204
Chapter 8. Indexed Sets	205
8.1. Indexed Sets	205
8.1.1. Foundations	205
8.1.2. Morphisms of Indexed Sets	205
8.1.3. The Category of Sets Indexed by a Fixed Set	205
8.1.4. The Category of Indexed Sets	206
8.2. Limits of Indexed Sets	207
8.2.1. Products of K -Indexed Sets	207
8.2.2. Pullbacks of K -Indexed Sets	207
8.2.3. Equalisers of K -Indexed Sets	207
8.2.4. Products in \mathbf{ISets}	207
8.2.5. Pullbacks in \mathbf{ISets}	208
8.2.6. Equalisers in \mathbf{ISets}	208
8.3. Colimits of Indexed Sets	208
8.3.1. Coproducts of K -Indexed Sets	208
8.3.2. Pushouts of K -Indexed Sets	208
8.3.3. Coequalisers of K -Indexed Sets	209
8.4. Constructions With Indexed Sets	209
8.4.1. Change of Indexing	209
8.4.2. Dependent Sums	210
8.4.3. Dependent Products	211
8.4.4. Internal Hom	211
8.4.5. Adjointness of Indexed Sets	211
Appendices	212
8.A. Other Chapters	212
8.B. Other Chapters	213
Chapter 9. Fibred Sets	214
9.1. Fibred Sets	214
9.1.1. Foundations	214
9.1.2. Morphisms of Fibred Sets	214
9.1.3. The Category of Fibred Sets Over a Fixed Base	214
9.1.4. The Category of Fibred Sets	216
9.2. Constructions With Fibred Sets	217
9.2.1. Change of Base	217
9.2.2. Dependent Sums	218
9.2.3. Dependent Products	219
9.2.4. Internal Hom	222
9.2.5. Adjointness for Fibred Sets	223
Appendices	234
9.A. Other Chapters	234
9.B. Other Chapters	235
Chapter 10. Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	236
10.1. Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	236

10.1.1. Straightening for Fibred Sets	236
10.1.2. Unstraightening for Indexed Sets	238
10.1.3. The Un/Straightening Equivalence	240
10.2. Miscellany	241
10.2.1. Other Kinds of Un/Straightening	241
Appendices	241
10.A. Other Chapters	241
10.B. Other Chapters	242
Part 3. Category Theory	244
Chapter 11. Categories	245
11.1. Categories	245
11.1.1. Foundations	245
11.1.2. Examples of Categories	247
11.1.3. Subcategories	249
11.1.4. Skeletons of Categories	249
11.1.5. Precomposition and Postcomposition	250
11.2. The Quadruple Adjunction With Sets	251
11.2.1. Statement	251
11.2.2. Connected Components of Categories	252
11.2.3. Sets of Connected Components of Categories	252
11.2.4. Connected Categories	253
11.2.5. Discrete Categories	254
11.2.6. Indiscrete Categories	255
11.3. Groupoids	256
11.3.1. Foundations	256
11.3.2. The Groupoid Completion of a Category	256
11.3.3. The Core of a Category	258
11.4. Functors	261
11.4.1. Foundations	261
11.4.2. Faithful Functors	263
11.4.3. Full Functors	263
11.4.4. Fully Faithful Functors	264
11.4.5. Essentially Surjective Functors	264
11.4.6. Conservative Functors	264
11.4.7. Equivalences of Categories	265
11.4.8. Isomorphisms of Categories	266
11.4.9. The Natural Transformation Associated to a Functor	267
11.5. Natural Transformations	268
11.5.1. Foundations	268
11.5.2. Vertical Composition of Natural Transformations	269
11.5.3. Horizontal Composition of Natural Transformations	272
11.5.4. Properties of Natural Transformations	275
11.5.5. Natural Isomorphisms	276
11.6. Categories of Categories	277
11.6.1. Functor Categories	277
11.6.2. The Category of Categories and Functors	279

11.6.3. The 2-Category of Categories, Functors, and Natural Transformations	280
11.6.4. The Category of Groupoids	281
11.6.5. The 2-Category of Groupoids	281
11.7. Miscellany	281
11.7.1. Concrete Categories	281
11.7.2. Balanced Categories	281
11.7.3. Monoid Actions on Objects of Categories	281
11.7.4. Group Actions on Objects of Categories	281
Appendices	282
11.A. Other Chapters	282
11.B. Other Chapters	283
 Chapter 12. Types of Morphisms in Categories	285
12.1. Monomorphisms	285
12.1.1. Foundations	285
12.1.2. Monomorphism-Reflecting Functors	288
12.1.3. Split Monomorphisms	288
12.2. Epimorphisms	289
12.2.1. Foundations	289
12.2.2. Regular Epimorphisms	290
12.2.3. Effective Epimorphisms	291
12.2.4. Split Epimorphisms	291
Appendices	291
12.A. Other Chapters	291
12.B. Other Chapters	292
 Chapter 13. Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	294
13.1. Other Chapters	294
 Chapter 14. Constructions With Categories	296
Appendices	296
14.A. Other Chapters	296
14.B. Other Chapters	297
 Chapter 15. Profunctors	299
15.1. Profunctors	299
15.1.1. Foundations	299
15.2. Operations With Profunctors	299
15.2.1. The Domain and Range of a Profunctor	299
15.2.2. Composition of Profunctors	300
15.2.3. Representable Profunctors	300
15.2.4. Collages	301
15.3. Categories of Profunctors	304
15.3.1. The Bicategory of Profunctors	304
15.3.2. Properties of Prof	304
15.4. Other Chapters	306
 Chapter 16. Cartesian Closed Categories	308

16.1. Cartesian Closed Categories	309
Appendices	309
16.A. Other Chapters	309
16.2. Other Chapters	310
 Chapter 17. Kan Extensions	 312
Appendices	312
17.A. Other Chapters	312
17.2. Other Chapters	313
 Part 4. Bicategories	 315
 Chapter 18. Bicategories	 316
18.1. Monomorphisms in Bicategories	316
18.1.1. Faithful Monomorphisms	316
18.1.2. Full Monomorphisms	316
18.1.3. Fully Faithful Monomorphisms	317
18.1.4. Strict Monomorphisms	317
18.2. Epimorphisms in Bicategories	318
18.2.1. Faithful Epimorphisms	318
18.2.2. Full Epimorphisms	318
18.2.3. Fully Faithful Epimorphisms	319
18.2.4. Strict Epimorphisms	319
18.3. bicategories of spans	319
Appendices	320
18.A. Other Chapters	320
18.2. Other Chapters	321
 Chapter 19. Internal Adjunctions	 323
19.1. Internal Adjunctions	323
19.1.1. The Walking Adjunction	323
19.1.2. Internal Adjunctions	324
19.1.3. Internal Adjoint Equivalences	329
19.1.4. Mates	330
19.2. Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions	332
19.2.1. Lax Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions	332
19.2.2. Oplax Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions	333
19.2.3. Strong Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions	334
19.2.4. Strict Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions	335
19.3. 2-Morphisms Between Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions	335
19.3.1. 2-Morphisms Between Lax Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions	335
19.3.2. 2-Morphisms Between Oplax Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions	336
19.3.3. 2-Morphisms Between Strong Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions	336
19.3.4. 2-Morphisms Between Strict Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions	337
19.4. Bicategories of Internal Adjunctions in a Bicategory	337

Appendices	337
19.A. Other Chapters	337
19.2. Other Chapters	338
Part 5. Internal Category Theory	340
Chapter 20. Internal Categories	341
Appendices	341
20.A. Other Chapters	341
20.2. Other Chapters	342
Part 6. Cyclic Stuff	344
Chapter 21. The Cycle Category	345
Appendices	345
21.A. Other Chapters	345
21.2. Other Chapters	346
Part 7. Cubical Stuff	348
Chapter 22. The Cube Category	349
Appendices	349
22.A. Other Chapters	349
22.2. Other Chapters	350
Part 8. Globular Stuff	352
Chapter 23. The Globe Category	353
Appendices	353
23.A. Other Chapters	353
23.2. Other Chapters	354
Part 9. Cellular Stuff	356
Chapter 24. The Cell Category	357
Appendices	357
24.A. Other Chapters	357
24.2. Other Chapters	358
Part 10. Monoids	360
Chapter 25. Monoids	361
Appendices	361
25.A. Other Chapters	361
25.2. Other Chapters	362
Chapter 26. Constructions With Monoids	364
Appendices	364
26.A. Other Chapters	364

26.2. Other Chapters	365
Part 11. Monoids With Zero	367
Chapter 27. Monoids With Zero	368
Appendices	368
27.A. Other Chapters	368
27.2. Other Chapters	369
Chapter 28. Constructions With Monoids With Zero	371
Appendices	371
28.A. Other Chapters	371
28.2. Other Chapters	372
Part 12. Groups	374
Chapter 29. Groups	375
Appendices	375
29.A. Other Chapters	375
29.2. Other Chapters	376
Chapter 30. Constructions With Groups	378
Appendices	378
30.A. Other Chapters	378
30.2. Other Chapters	379
Part 13. Hyper Algebra	381
Chapter 31. Hypermonoids	382
Appendices	382
31.A. Other Chapters	382
31.2. Other Chapters	383
Chapter 32. Hypergroups	385
Appendices	385
32.A. Other Chapters	385
32.2. Other Chapters	386
Chapter 33. Hypersemirings and Hyperrings	388
Appendices	388
33.A. Other Chapters	388
33.2. Other Chapters	389
Chapter 34. Quantales	391
Appendices	391
34.A. Other Chapters	391
34.2. Other Chapters	392
Part 14. Near-Rings	394

Chapter 35. Near-Semirings	395
Appendices	395
35.A. Other Chapters	395
35.2. Other Chapters	396
Chapter 36. Near-Rings	398
Appendices	398
36.A. Other Chapters	398
36.2. Other Chapters	399
Part 15. Real Analysis	401
Chapter 37. Real Analysis in One Variable	402
Appendices	402
37.A. Other Chapters	402
37.2. Other Chapters	403
Chapter 38. Real Analysis in Several Variables	405
Appendices	405
38.A. Other Chapters	405
38.2. Other Chapters	406
Part 16. Measure Theory	408
Chapter 39. Measurable Spaces	409
Appendices	409
39.A. Other Chapters	409
39.2. Other Chapters	410
Chapter 40. Measures and Integration	412
Appendices	412
40.A. Other Chapters	412
40.2. Other Chapters	413
Part 17. Probability Theory	415
Chapter 41. Probability Theory	416
Appendices	416
41.A. Other Chapters	416
41.2. Other Chapters	417
Part 18. Stochastic Analysis	419
Chapter 42. Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion	420
Appendices	420
42.A. Other Chapters	420
42.2. Other Chapters	421
Chapter 43. Itô Calculus	423

Appendices	423
43.A. Other Chapters	423
43.2. Other Chapters	424
Chapter 44. Stochastic Differential Equations	426
Appendices	426
44.A. Other Chapters	426
44.2. Other Chapters	427
Part 19. Differential Geometry	429
Chapter 45. Topological and Smooth Manifolds	430
Appendices	430
45.A. Other Chapters	430
45.2. Other Chapters	431
Part 20. Schemes	433
Chapter 46. Schemes	434
46.1. Introduction	434
46.2. Other Chapters	434
Part 21. Secret Part	436
Chapter 47. To Do List	437
47.1. Notes to Self	437
47.1.1. Things To Ask On MO/Zulip	437
47.1.2. Things To Explore/Add	437
47.1.3. Random Cool Papers	438
47.1.4. Omitted Proofs To Add	438
Appendices	438
47.A. Other Chapters	438
47.2. Other Chapters	439
Bibliography	441
Index of Notation	447
Index of Set Theory	450

Part 1

Sets

CHAPTER 1

Sets

0000 This chapter (will eventually) contain material on axiomatic set theory, as well as a couple other things.

1.1. The Enrichment of Sets in Classical Truth Values

1.1.1. (-2) -Categories.

0003 **Definition 1.1.1.1.1.** A (-2) -category is the “necessarily true” truth value.^{1,2,3}

1.1.2. (-1) -Categories.

0005 **Definition 1.1.2.1.1.** A (-1) -category is a classical truth value.

0006 **Remark 1.1.2.1.2.** ⁴ (-1) -categories should be thought of as being “categories enriched in (-2) -categories”, having a collection of objects and, for each pair of objects, a Hom-object $\text{Hom}(x, y)$ that is a (-2) -category (i.e. trivial).

Therefore, a (-1) -category C is either ([BS10, pp. 33–34]):

- (1) *Empty*, having no objects;
- (2) *Contractible*, having a collection of objects $\{a, b, c, \dots\}$, but with $\text{Hom}_C(a, b)$ being a (-2) -category (i.e. trivial) for all $a, b \in \text{Obj}(C)$, forcing all objects of C to be uniquely isomorphic to each other.

As such, there are only two (-1) -categories, up to equivalence:

- The (-1) -category **false** (the empty one);
- The (-1) -category **true** (the contractible one).

0007 **Definition 1.1.2.1.3.** The **poset of truth values**⁵ is the poset $(\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}, \preceq)$ ⁶ consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$ whose elements are the truth values **true** and **false**;
- *The Partial Order.* The partial order

$$\preceq: \{\text{true}, \text{false}\} \times \{\text{true}, \text{false}\} \rightarrow \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$$

¹Thus, there is only one (-2) -category.

²A $(-n)$ -category for $n = 3, 4, \dots$ is also the “necessarily true” truth value, coinciding with a (-2) -category.

³For motivation, see [BS10, p. 13].

⁴For more motivation, see [BS10, p. 13].

⁵Further Terminology: Also called the **poset of (-1) -categories**.

⁶Further Notation: Also written $\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$.

on $\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$ defined by⁷

$$\begin{aligned}\text{false} \preceq \text{false} &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{true}, \\ \text{true} \preceq \text{false} &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{false}, \\ \text{false} \preceq \text{true} &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{true}, \\ \text{true} \preceq \text{true} &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{true}.\end{aligned}$$

0008 Proposition 1.1.2.1.4. The poset of truth values $\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$ is Cartesian closed with product given by⁸

$$\begin{aligned}\text{t} \times \text{t} &= \text{t}, \\ \text{t} \times \text{f} &= \text{f}, \\ \text{f} \times \text{t} &= \text{f}, \\ \text{f} \times \text{f} &= \text{f},\end{aligned}$$

and internal Hom $\mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}$ given by the partial order of $\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$, i.e. by

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t}, \text{t}) &= \text{t}, \\ \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t}, \text{f}) &= \text{f}, \\ \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{t}) &= \text{t}, \\ \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{f}) &= \text{t}.\end{aligned}$$

Proof. *Existence of Products:* We claim that the products $\text{t} \times \text{t}$, $\text{t} \times \text{f}$, $\text{f} \times \text{t}$, and $\text{f} \times \text{f}$ satisfy the universal property of the product in $\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$. Indeed, consider the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \begin{array}{c} P_1 \\ \downarrow \exists! \\ \text{t} \xleftarrow{\text{pr}_1} \underbrace{\text{t} \times \text{t}}_{=\text{t}} \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_2} \text{t} \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} P_2 \\ \downarrow \exists! \\ \text{t} \xleftarrow{\text{pr}_1} \underbrace{\text{t} \times \text{f}}_{=\text{f}} \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_2} \text{f} \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} P_3 \\ \downarrow \exists! \\ \text{f} \xleftarrow{\text{pr}_1} \underbrace{\text{f} \times \text{t}}_{=\text{f}} \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_2} \text{t} \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} P_4 \\ \downarrow \exists! \\ \text{f} \xleftarrow{\text{pr}_1} \underbrace{\text{f} \times \text{f}}_{=\text{f}} \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_2} \text{f}. \end{array} \end{array}$$

Here:

- (1) If $P_1 = \text{t}$, then $p_1^1 = p_2^1 = \text{id}_t$, and there's indeed a unique morphism from P_1 to t making the diagram commute, namely id_t ;
- (2) If $P_1 = \text{f}$, then $p_1^1 = p_2^1$ are given by the unique morphism from f to t , and there's indeed a unique morphism from P_1 to t making the diagram commute, namely the unique morphism from f to t ;
- (3) If $P_2 = \text{t}$, then there is no morphism p_2^2 .
- (4) If $P_2 = \text{f}$, then p_1^2 is the unique morphism from f to t while $p_2^2 = \text{id}_f$, and there's indeed a unique morphism from P_2 to f making the diagram commute, namely id_f ;
- (5) The proof for P_3 is similar to the one for P_2 ;
- (6) If $P_4 = \text{t}$, then there is no morphism p_1^4 or p_2^4 .
- (7) If $P_4 = \text{f}$, then $p_1^4 = p_2^4 = \text{id}_f$, and there's indeed a unique morphism from P_4 to f making the diagram commute, namely id_f .

⁷This partial order coincides with logical implication.

⁸Note that \times coincides with the “and” operator, while $\mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}$ coincides with the logical implication operator.

Cartesian Closedness: We claim there's a bijection

$$\text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(A \times B, C) \cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(A, \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(B, C))$$

natural in $A, B, C \in \{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$. Indeed:

- For $(A, B, C) = (\text{t}, \text{t}, \text{t})$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t} \times \text{t}, \text{t}) &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t}, \text{t}) \\ &= \{\text{id}_{\text{true}}\} \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t}, \text{t}) \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t}, \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t}, \text{t})). \end{aligned}$$

- For $(A, B, C) = (\text{t}, \text{t}, \text{f})$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t} \times \text{t}, \text{f}) &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t}, \text{f}) \\ &= \emptyset \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t}, \text{f}) \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t}, \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t}, \text{f})). \end{aligned}$$

- For $(A, B, C) = (\text{t}, \text{f}, \text{t})$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t} \times \text{f}, \text{t}) &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{t}) \\ &\cong \text{pt} \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{t}) \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{t})). \end{aligned}$$

- For $(A, B, C) = (\text{t}, \text{f}, \text{f})$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t} \times \text{f}, \text{f}) &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{f}) \\ &\cong \{\text{id}_{\text{false}}\} \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{f}) \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t}, \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{f})). \end{aligned}$$

- For $(A, B, C) = (\text{f}, \text{t}, \text{t})$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f} \times \text{t}, \text{t}) &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{t}) \\ &\cong \text{pt} \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{t}) \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t}, \text{t})). \end{aligned}$$

- For $(A, B, C) = (\text{f}, \text{t}, \text{f})$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f} \times \text{t}, \text{f}) &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{f}) \\ &\cong \{\text{id}_{\text{false}}\} \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{f}) \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{t}, \text{f})). \end{aligned}$$

- For $(A, B, C) = (\text{f}, \text{f}, \text{t})$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f} \times \text{f}, \text{t}) &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{t}) \\ &\cong \text{pt} \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{t}) \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}\left(\text{f}, \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{t})\right).\end{aligned}$$

- For $(A, B, C) = (\text{f}, \text{f}, \text{f})$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f} \times \text{f}, \text{f}) &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{f}) \\ &= \{\text{id}_{\text{false}}\} \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{f}) \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}\left(\text{f}, \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}}(\text{f}, \text{f})\right).\end{aligned}$$

The proof of naturality is omitted. \square

1.1.3. 0-Categories.

000A Definition 1.1.3.1.1. A **0-category** is a poset.⁹

000B Definition 1.1.3.1.2. A **0-groupoid** is a 0-category in which every morphism is invertible.¹⁰

1.1.4. Tables of Analogies Between Set Theory and Category Theory. Here we record some analogies between notions in set theory and category theory. Note that the analogies relating to presheaves relate equally well to copresheaves, as the opposite X^{op} of a set X is just X again.

Basics:

SET THEORY	CATEGORY THEORY
Enrichment in $\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$	Enrichment in Sets
Set X	Category \mathcal{C}
Element $x \in X$	Object $X \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$
Function	Functor
Function $X \rightarrow \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$	Functor $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$
Function $X \rightarrow \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$	Presheaf $\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$

Powersets and categories of presheaves:

⁹Motivation: A 0-category is precisely a category enriched in the poset of (-1) -categories.

¹⁰That is, a *set*.

SET THEORY	CATEGORY THEORY
Powerset $\mathcal{P}(X)$	Presheaf category $\mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$
Characteristic function $\chi_{\{x\}}$	Representable presheaf h_X
Characteristic embedding $\chi_{(-)}: X \hookrightarrow \mathcal{P}(X)$	Yoneda embedding $\mathfrak{J}: \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$
Characteristic relation $\chi_X(-_1, -_2)$	Hom profunctor $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(-_1, -_2)$
The Yoneda lemma for sets $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(\chi_x, \chi_U) = \chi_U(x)$	The Yoneda lemma for categories $\text{Nat}(h_X, \mathcal{F}) \cong \mathcal{F}(X)$
The characteristic embedding is fully faithful, $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(\chi_x, \chi_y) = \chi_X(x, y)$	The Yoneda embedding is fully faithful, $\text{Nat}(h_X, h_Y) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y)$
Subsets are unions of their elements $U = \bigcup_{x \in U} \{x\}$ or $\chi_U = \underset{\chi_x \in \text{Sets}(U, \{\text{t}, \text{f}\})}{\text{colim}} (\chi_x)$	Presheaves are colimits of representables, $\mathcal{F} \cong \underset{h_X \in \int_{\mathcal{C}} \mathcal{F}}{\text{colim}} (h_X)$

Categories of elements:

SET THEORY	CATEGORY THEORY
Assignment $U \mapsto \chi_U$	Assignment $\mathcal{F} \mapsto \int_{\mathcal{C}} \mathcal{F}$ (the category of elements)
Assignment $U \mapsto \chi_U$ giving an isomorphism $\mathcal{P}(X) \cong \text{Sets}(X, \{\text{t}, \text{f}\})$	Assignment $\mathcal{F} \mapsto \int_{\mathcal{C}} \mathcal{F}$ giving an equivalence $\mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{C}) \cong \mathbf{DFib}(\mathcal{C})$

Functions between powersets and functors between presheaf categories:

SET THEORY	CATEGORY THEORY
Direct image function $f_*: \mathcal{P}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(Y)$	Inverse image functor $f^{-1}: \mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{D})$
Inverse image function $f^{-1}: \mathcal{P}(Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(X)$	Direct image functor $f_*: \mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{D}) \rightarrow \mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$
Direct image with compact support function $f_!: \mathcal{P}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(Y)$	Direct image with compact support functor $f_!: \mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{D})$

Relations and profunctors:

SET THEORY	CATEGORY THEORY
Relation $R: X \times Y \rightarrow \{t, f\}$	Profunctor $\mathfrak{p}: \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$
Relation $R: X \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(Y)$	Profunctor $\mathfrak{p}: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{PSh}(\mathcal{D})$
Relation as a cocontinuous morphism of posets $R: (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(Y), \subset)$	Profunctor as a colimit-preserving functor $\mathfrak{p}: \text{PSh}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \text{PSh}(\mathcal{D})$

Appendices

1.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyper-rings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces
- (40) Measures and Integration

Probability Theory

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

1.2. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

(23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

(24) The Cell Category

Monoids

(25) Monoids
(26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

(27) Monoids With Zero
(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

(29) Groups
(30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

(31) Hypermonoids
(32) Hypergroups
(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
(34) Quantales

Near-Rings

(35) Near-Semirings
(36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

(39) Measurable Spaces
(40) Measures and Integration

Probability Theory

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion | Differential Geometry |
| (42) Itô Calculus | (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds |
| (43) Stochastic Differential Equations | Schemes |
| | (45) Schemes |

CHAPTER 2

Constructions With Sets

000D This chapter contains some material relating to constructions with sets. Notably, it contains:

- (1) Explicit descriptions of the major types of co/limits in **Sets**, including in particular pushouts and coequalisers (see [Definitions 2.2.3.1.1](#) and [2.2.4.1.1](#) and [Remarks 2.2.3.1.2](#) and [2.2.4.1.2](#));
- (2) A discussion of powersets as decategorifications of categories of presheaves ([Remarks 2.4.1.1.2](#) and [2.4.3.1.2](#));
- (3) A lengthy discussion of the adjoint triple

$$f_* \dashv f^{-1} \dashv f_! : \mathcal{P}(A) \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathcal{P}(B)$$

of functors (morphisms of posets) between $\mathcal{P}(A)$ and $\mathcal{P}(B)$ induced by a map of sets $f: A \rightarrow B$, along with a discussion of the properties of f_* , f^{-1} , and $f_!$.

2.1. Limits of Sets

2.1.1. Products of Families of Sets. Let $\{A_i\}_{i \in I}$ be a family of sets.

000G **Definition 2.1.1.1.1.** The **product**¹ of $\{A_i\}_{i \in I}$ is the pair $(\prod_{i \in I} A_i, \{\text{pr}_i\}_{i \in I})$ consisting of

- *The Limit.* The set $\prod_{i \in I} A_i$ defined by²

$$\prod_{i \in I} A_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ f \in \text{Sets}\left(I, \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i\right) \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{for each } i \in I, \text{ we} \\ \text{have } f(i) \in A_i \end{array} \right\}.$$

- *The Cone.* The collection

$$\left\{ \text{pr}_i: \prod_{i \in I} A_i \rightarrow A_i \right\}_{i \in I}$$

of maps given by

$$\text{pr}_i(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f(i)$$

for each $f \in \prod_{i \in I} A_i$ and each $i \in I$.

¹*Further Terminology:* Also called the **Cartesian product** of $\{A_i\}_{i \in I}$.

²Less formally, $\prod_{i \in I} A_i$ is the set whose elements are I -indexed collections $(a_i)_{i \in I}$ with $a_i \in A_i$ for each $i \in I$.

Proof. We claim that $\prod_{i \in I} A_i$ is the categorical product of $\{A_i\}_{i \in I}$ in Sets . Indeed, suppose we have, for each $i \in I$, a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & & \\ & \searrow^{p_i} & \\ & \prod_{i \in I} A_i & \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_i} A_i \end{array}$$

in Sets . Then there exists a unique map $\phi: P \rightarrow \prod_{i \in I} A_i$, uniquely determined by the condition $\text{pr}_i \circ \phi = p_i$ for each $i \in I$, being necessarily given by

$$\phi(x) = (p_i(x))_{i \in I}$$

for each $x \in P$. \square

000H Proposition 2.1.1.1.2. Let $\{A_i\}_{i \in I}$ be a family of sets.

000J (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $\{A_i\}_{i \in I} \mapsto \prod_{i \in I} A_i$ defines a functor

$$\prod_{i \in I}: \text{Fun}(I_{\text{disc}}, \text{Sets}) \rightarrow \text{Sets}$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $(A_i)_{i \in I} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Fun}(I_{\text{disc}}, \text{Sets}))$, we have

$$\left[\prod_{i \in I} \right] ((A_i)_{i \in I}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \prod_{i \in I} A_i$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $(A_i)_{i \in I}, (B_i)_{i \in I} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Fun}(I_{\text{disc}}, \text{Sets}))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\left(\prod_{i \in I} \right)_{(A_i)_{i \in I}, (B_i)_{i \in I}} : \text{Nat}((A_i)_{i \in I}, (B_i)_{i \in I}) \rightarrow \text{Sets} \left(\prod_{i \in I} A_i, \prod_{i \in I} B_i \right)$$

of $\prod_{i \in I}$ at $((A_i)_{i \in I}, (B_i)_{i \in I})$ is defined by sending a map

$$\{f_i: A_i \rightarrow B_i\}_{i \in I}$$

in $\text{Nat}((A_i)_{i \in I}, (B_i)_{i \in I})$ to the map of sets

$$\prod_{i \in I} f_i: \prod_{i \in I} A_i \rightarrow \prod_{i \in I} B_i$$

defined by

$$\left[\prod_{i \in I} f_i \right] ((a_i)_{i \in I}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (f_i(a_i))_{i \in I}$$

for each $(a_i)_{i \in I} \in \prod_{i \in I} A_i$.

Proof. *Item 1, Functionality:* Clear. \square

2.1.2. Binary Products of Sets. Let A and B be sets.

000L Definition 2.1.2.1.1. The **product**³ of A and B is the pair $(A \times B, \{\text{pr}_1, \text{pr}_2\})$ consisting of

³*Further Terminology:* Also called the **Cartesian product of A and B** or the **binary**

- *The Limit.* The set $A \times B$ defined by⁴

$$\begin{aligned} A \times B &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \prod_{z \in \{A, B\}} z \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{f \in \text{Sets}(\{0, 1\}, A \cup B) \mid \text{we have } f(0) \in A \text{ and } f(1) \in B\} \\ &\cong \{\{\{a\}, \{a, b\}\} \in \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{P}(A \cup B)) \mid \text{we have } a \in A \text{ and } b \in B\}. \end{aligned}$$

- *The Cone.* The maps

$$\begin{aligned} \text{pr}_1 &: A \times B \rightarrow A, \\ \text{pr}_2 &: A \times B \rightarrow B \end{aligned}$$

defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{pr}_1(a, b) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} a, \\ \text{pr}_2(a, b) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} b \end{aligned}$$

for each $(a, b) \in A \times B$.

Proof. We claim that $A \times B$ is the categorical product of A and B in Sets . Indeed, suppose we have a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & P & \\ p_1 \swarrow & & \searrow p_2 \\ A & \xleftarrow{\text{pr}_1} & A \times B \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_2} B \end{array}$$

in Sets . Then there exists a unique map $\phi: P \rightarrow A \times B$, uniquely determined by the conditions

$$\begin{aligned} \text{pr}_1 \circ \phi &= p_1, \\ \text{pr}_2 \circ \phi &= p_2, \end{aligned}$$

being necessarily given by

$$\phi(x) = (p_1(x), p_2(x))$$

for each $x \in P$. □

000M Proposition 2.1.2.1.2. Let A, B, C , and X be sets.

000N (1) *Functionality.* The assignments $A, B, (A, B) \mapsto A \times B$ define functors

$$\begin{aligned} A \times -_2: \text{Sets} &\rightarrow \text{Sets}, \\ -_1 \times B: \text{Sets} &\rightarrow \text{Sets}, \\ -_1 \times -_2: \text{Sets} \times \text{Sets} &\rightarrow \text{Sets}, \end{aligned}$$

where $-_1 \times -_2$ is the functor where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $(A, B) \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets} \times \text{Sets})$, we have

$$[-_1 \times -_2](A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A \times B;$$

Cartesian product of A and B , for emphasis.

This can also be thought of as the $(\mathbb{E}_{-1}, \mathbb{E}_{-1})$ -tensor product of A and B .

⁴In other words, $A \times B$ is the set whose elements are ordered pairs (a, b) with $a \in A$ and $b \in B$ as in [Definition 2.3.4.1.1](#).

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $(A, B), (X, Y) \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\times_{(A,B),(X,Y)} : \text{Sets}(A, X) \times \text{Sets}(B, Y) \rightarrow \text{Sets}(A \times B, X \times Y)$$

of \times at $((A, B), (X, Y))$ is defined by sending (f, g) to the function

$$f \times g : A \times B \rightarrow X \times Y$$

defined by

$$[f \times g](a, b) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (f(a), g(b))$$

for each $(a, b) \in A \times B$;

and where $A \times -$ and $- \times B$ are the partial functors of $-_1 \times -_2$ at $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

000P (2) *Adjointness.* We have adjunctions

$$(A \times - \dashv \text{Sets}(A, -)): \text{Sets} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{A \times -} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\text{Sets}(A, -)} \end{array} \text{Sets},$$

$$(- \times B \dashv \text{Sets}(B, -)): \text{Sets} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{- \times B} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\text{Sets}(B, -)} \end{array} \text{Sets},$$

witnessed by bijections

$$\text{Sets}(A \times B, C) \cong \text{Sets}(A, \text{Sets}(B, C)),$$

$$\text{Sets}(A \times B, C) \cong \text{Sets}(B, \text{Sets}(A, C)),$$

natural in $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

000Q (3) *Associativity.* We have an isomorphism of sets

$$(A \times B) \times C \cong A \times (B \times C),$$

natural in $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

000R (4) *Unitality.* We have isomorphisms of sets

$$\text{pt} \times A \cong A,$$

$$A \times \text{pt} \cong A,$$

natural in $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

000S (5) *Commutativity.* We have an isomorphism of sets

$$A \times B \cong B \times A,$$

natural in $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

000T (6) *Annihilation With the Empty Set.* We have isomorphisms of sets

$$A \times \emptyset \cong \emptyset,$$

$$\emptyset \times A \cong \emptyset,$$

natural in $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

000U (7) *Distributivity Over Unions.* We have isomorphisms of sets

$$A \times (B \cup C) = (A \times B) \cup (A \times C),$$

$$(A \cup B) \times C = (A \times C) \cup (B \times C).$$

000V (8) *Distributivity Over Intersections.* We have isomorphisms of sets

$$\begin{aligned} A \times (B \cap C) &= (A \times B) \cap (A \times C), \\ (A \cap B) \times C &= (A \times C) \cap (B \times C). \end{aligned}$$

000W (9) *Middle-Four Exchange with Respect to Intersections.* We have an isomorphism of sets

$$(A \times B) \cap (C \times D) \cong (A \cap B) \times (C \cap D).$$

000X (10) *Distributivity Over Differences.* We have isomorphisms of sets

$$\begin{aligned} A \times (B \setminus C) &= (A \times B) \setminus (A \times C), \\ (A \setminus B) \times C &= (A \times C) \setminus (B \times C), \end{aligned}$$

natural in $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

000Y (11) *Distributivity Over Symmetric Differences.* We have isomorphisms of sets

$$\begin{aligned} A \times (B \Delta C) &= (A \times B) \Delta (A \times C), \\ (A \Delta B) \times C &= (A \times C) \Delta (B \times C), \end{aligned}$$

natural in $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

000Z (12) *Symmetric Monoidality.* The triple $(\text{Sets}, \times, \text{pt})$ is a symmetric monoidal category.

0010 (13) *Symmetric Bimonoidality.* The quintuple $(\text{Sets}, \coprod, \emptyset, \times, \text{pt})$ is a symmetric bimonoidal category.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* This follows by applying associativity and unitality componentwise.

Item 2, Adjointness: We prove only that there's an adjunction $X \times - \dashv \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(-, Z)$, witnessed by a bijection

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X \times Y, Z) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X, \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(Y, Z)),$$

natural in $Y, Z \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, as the proof of the existence of the adjunction $- \times Y \dashv \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(-, Z)$ follows almost exactly in the same way.⁵

- *Map I.* We define a map

$$\Phi_{Y,Z}: \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X \times Y, Z) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X, \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(Y, Z)),$$

by sending a morphism $\xi: X \times Y \rightarrow Z$ to the morphism

$$\xi^\dagger: X \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(Y, Z)$$

defined by

$$\xi^\dagger(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \xi_x$$

for each $x \in X$, where $\xi_x: Y \rightarrow Z$ is the map defined by

$$\xi_x(y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \xi(x, y)$$

for each $y \in Y$.

- *Map II.* We define a map

$$\Psi_{Y,Z}: \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X, \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(Y, Z)) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X \times Y, Z)$$

⁵Here we sometimes denote a map $f: X \rightarrow Y$ by $[x \mapsto f(x)]$, similar to the lambda notation $\lambda x.f(x)$.

given by sending a map $\xi: X \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(Y, Z)$ to the map

$$\xi^\dagger: X \times Y \rightarrow Z$$

defined by

$$\xi^\dagger(x, y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [\xi(x)](y)$$

for each $(x, y) \in X \times Y$.

- *Naturality I.* We need to show that, given a function $g: Y \rightarrow Y'$, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X \times Y', Z) & \xrightarrow{\Phi_{Y', Z}} & \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X, \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(Y', Z)), \\ \text{id}_X \times g^* \downarrow & & \downarrow (g^*)_* \\ \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X \times Y, Z) & \xrightarrow{\Phi_{Y, Z}} & \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X, \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(Y, Z)), \end{array}$$

commutes. Indeed, given a morphism $\xi: X' \times Y \rightarrow Z$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [\Phi_{Y, Z} \circ (g^* \times \text{id}_Y)](\xi) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\xi(-_1, g(-_2)))^\dagger \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \xi_{-1}(g(-_2)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (g_*)^*(\xi_{-1}(-_2)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (g_*)^*(\xi^\dagger) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [(g_*)^* \circ \Phi_{Y', Z}](\xi). \end{aligned}$$

- *Naturality II.* We need to show that, given a function $h: Z \rightarrow Z'$, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X \times Y, Z) & \xrightarrow{\Phi_{Y, Z}} & \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X, \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(Y, Z)), \\ h_* \downarrow & & \downarrow (h_*)_* \\ \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X \times Y, Z') & \xrightarrow{\Phi_{Y, Z'}} & \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X, \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(Y, Z')), \end{array}$$

commutes. Indeed, given a morphism $\xi: X \times Y \rightarrow Z$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [\Phi_{Y, Z} \circ h_*](\xi) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (h(\xi(-_1, -_2)))^\dagger \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [x \mapsto [y \mapsto h(\xi(x, y))]] \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [x \mapsto h_*([y \mapsto \xi(x, y)])] \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [x \mapsto h_*(\xi^\dagger(x))] \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} h_*(\xi^\dagger) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [(h_*)_* \circ \Phi_{Y, Z}](\xi). \end{aligned}$$

- *Invertibility I.* We claim that

$$\Psi_{X, Y} \circ \Phi_{X, Y} = \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X \times Y, Z)}.$$

Indeed, given a morphism $\xi: X \times Y \rightarrow Z$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [\Psi_{X,Y} \circ \Phi_{X,Y}](\xi) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Psi_{X,Y}(\Phi_{X,Y}(\xi)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Psi_{X,Y}([x \mapsto [y \mapsto \xi(x, y)]]) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [(x, y) \mapsto \text{ev}_x([x \mapsto \text{ev}_y([y \mapsto \xi(x, y)])])] \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [(x, y) \mapsto \text{ev}_x([x \mapsto \xi(x, y)])] \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [(x, y) \mapsto \xi(x, y)] \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \xi. \end{aligned}$$

- *Invertibility II.* We claim that

$$\Phi_{X,Y} \circ \Psi_{X,Y} = \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X, \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(Y, Z))}.$$

Indeed, given a morphism $\xi: X \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(Y, Z)$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [\Phi_{X,Y} \circ \Psi_{X,Y}](\xi) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Phi_{X,Y}(\Psi_{X,Y}(\xi)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Phi_{X,Y}(\Psi_{X,Y}([x \mapsto \xi(x)])) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Phi_{X,Y}([(x, y) \mapsto \text{ev}_x([x \mapsto \text{ev}_y(\xi(x))])]) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Phi_{X,Y}([(x, y) \mapsto \xi(x, y)]) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [x \mapsto [y \mapsto \xi(x, y)]] \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \xi. \end{aligned}$$

Item 3, Associativity: See [Pro24a].

Item 4, Unitality: Clear.

Item 5, Commutativity: See [Pro24b].

Item 6, Annihilation With the Empty Set: See [Pro24f].

Item 7, Distributivity Over Unions: See [Pro24e].

Item 8, Distributivity Over Intersections: See [Pro24g, Corollary 1].

Item 9, Middle-Four Exchange With Respect to Intersections: See [Pro24g, Corollary 1].

Item 10, Distributivity Over Differences: See [Pro24c].

Item 11, Distributivity Over Symmetric Differences: See [Pro24d].

Item 12, Symmetric Monoidality: See [MO 382264].

Item 13, Symmetric Bimonoidality: Omitted. □

2.1.3. Pullbacks. Let A , B , and C be sets and let $f: A \rightarrow C$ and $g: B \rightarrow C$ be functions.

0012 Definition 2.1.3.1.1. The **pullback of A and B over C along f and g** ⁶ is the pair⁷ $(A \times_C B, \{\text{pr}_1, \text{pr}_2\})$ consisting of

- *The Limit.* The set $A \times_C B$ defined by

$$A \times_C B \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(a, b) \in A \times B \mid f(a) = g(b)\}.$$

- *The Cone.* The maps

$$\text{pr}_1: A \times_C B \rightarrow A,$$

$$\text{pr}_2: A \times_C B \rightarrow B$$

⁶Further Terminology: Also called the **fibre product of A and B over C along f and g** .

⁷Further Notation: Also written $A \times_{f,C,g} B$.

defined by

$$\begin{aligned}\text{pr}_1(a, b) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} a, \\ \text{pr}_2(a, b) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} b\end{aligned}$$

for each $(a, b) \in A \times_C B$.

Proof. We claim that $A \times_C B$ is the categorical pullback of A and B over C with respect to (f, g) in Sets . First we need to check that the relevant pullback diagram commutes, i.e. that we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times_C B & \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_2} & B \\ f \circ \text{pr}_1 = g \circ \text{pr}_2, & \text{pr}_1 \downarrow & \downarrow g \\ & & \\ & \text{pr}_1 \downarrow & \downarrow g \\ A & \xrightarrow{f} & C. \end{array}$$

Indeed, given $(a, b) \in A \times_C B$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}[f \circ \text{pr}_1](a, b) &= f(\text{pr}_1(a, b)) \\ &= f(a) \\ &= g(b) \\ &= g(\text{pr}_2(a, b)) \\ &= [g \circ \text{pr}_2](a, b),\end{aligned}$$

where $f(a) = g(b)$ since $(a, b) \in A \times_C B$. Next, we prove that $A \times_C B$ satisfies the universal property of the pullback. Suppose we have a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} P & \xrightarrow{\quad p_2 \quad} & A \times_C B & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{pr}_2 \quad} & B \\ & \swarrow p_1 & \downarrow \lrcorner & \downarrow g & \\ & & \text{pr}_1 & & \\ & & A & \xrightarrow{f} & C \end{array}$$

in Sets . Then there exists a unique map $\phi: P \rightarrow A \times_C B$, uniquely determined by the conditions

$$\begin{aligned}\text{pr}_1 \circ \phi &= p_1, \\ \text{pr}_2 \circ \phi &= p_2,\end{aligned}$$

being necessarily given by

$$\phi(x) = (p_1(x), p_2(x))$$

for each $x \in P$, where we note that $(p_1(x), p_2(x)) \in A \times B$ indeed lies in $A \times_C B$ by the condition

$$f \circ p_1 = g \circ p_2,$$

which gives

$$f(p_1(x)) = g(p_2(x))$$

for each $x \in P$, so that $(p_1(x), p_2(x)) \in A \times_C B$. \square

0013 Example 2.1.3.1.2. Here are some examples of pullbacks of sets.

0014 (1) *Unions via Intersections.* Let $A, B \subset X$. We have a bijection of sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \cap B & \longrightarrow & B \\ \downarrow \lrcorner & & \downarrow \iota_B \\ A \cong A \times_{A \cup B} B, & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ A & \xrightarrow{\iota_A} & A \cup B. \end{array}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Unions via Intersections:* Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} A \times_{A \cup B} B &\cong \{(x, y) \in A \times B \mid x = y\} \\ &\cong A \cap B. \end{aligned}$$

This finishes the proof. \square

0015 Proposition 2.1.3.1.3. Let A, B, C , and X be sets.

0016 (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $(A, B, C, f, g) \mapsto A \times_{f, C, g} B$ defines a functor

$$-_1 \times -_3 -_1: \mathbf{Fun}(\mathcal{P}, \mathbf{Sets}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets},$$

where \mathcal{P} is the category that looks like this:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \bullet & \\ & \downarrow & \\ \bullet & \longrightarrow & \bullet. \end{array}$$

In particular, the action on morphisms of $-_1 \times -_3 -_1$ is given by sending a morphism

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A \times_C B & \longrightarrow & B & & \\ \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow g & \searrow \psi & \\ A' \times_{C'} B' & \xrightarrow{\quad} & B' & & \\ \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow & & \downarrow g' \\ A & \xrightarrow{f} & C & & \\ \phi \searrow & & \swarrow \chi & & \downarrow g' \\ A' & \xrightarrow{f'} & C' & & \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{Fun}(\mathcal{P}, \mathbf{Sets})$ to the map $\xi: A \times_C B \xrightarrow{\exists!} A' \times_{C'} B'$ given by

$$\xi(a, b) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\phi(a), \psi(b))$$

for each $(a, b) \in A \times_C B$, which is the unique map making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A \times_C B & \longrightarrow & B & & \\
 \downarrow & \lrcorner \searrow & \downarrow g & \searrow \psi & \\
 A' \times_{C'} B' & \longrightarrow & B' & & \\
 \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow & & \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & C & & \\
 \downarrow \phi & \searrow & \downarrow g' & \searrow \chi & \\
 A' & \xrightarrow{f'} & C' & &
 \end{array}$$

commute.

0017 (2) *Associativity.* Given a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & & B & & C \\
 & \searrow f & \swarrow g & \searrow h & \swarrow k \\
 & X & & Y &
 \end{array}$$

in \mathbf{Sets} , we have isomorphisms

$$(A \times_X B) \times_Y C \cong (A \times_X B) \times_B (B \times_Y C) \cong A \times_X (B \times_Y C),$$

where these pullbacks are built as in the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c}
 (A \times_X B) \times_Y C \\
 \swarrow \quad \searrow \\
 A \times_X B \quad \quad \quad C \\
 \swarrow \quad \searrow \quad \swarrow \quad \searrow \\
 A \quad B \quad \quad \quad C \\
 \downarrow f \quad \downarrow g \quad \downarrow h \quad \downarrow k \\
 X \quad Y \quad \quad \quad
 \end{array} &
 \begin{array}{c}
 (A \times_X B) \times_B (B \times_Y C) \\
 \swarrow \quad \searrow \\
 A \times_X B \quad B \times_Y C \quad C \\
 \swarrow \quad \searrow \quad \swarrow \quad \searrow \\
 A \quad B \quad \quad \quad C \\
 \downarrow f \quad \downarrow g \quad \downarrow h \quad \downarrow k \\
 X \quad Y \quad \quad \quad
 \end{array} &
 \begin{array}{c}
 A \times_X (B \times_Y C) \\
 \swarrow \quad \searrow \\
 B \times_Y C \quad C \\
 \swarrow \quad \searrow \\
 B \quad C \\
 \downarrow f \quad \downarrow g \quad \downarrow h \quad \downarrow k \\
 X \quad Y \quad \quad \quad
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

0018 (3) *Unitality.* We have isomorphisms of sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xlongequal{\quad} & A \\
 \downarrow f & \lrcorner & \downarrow f \\
 X & \xlongequal{\quad} & X
 \end{array} &
 \begin{array}{c}
 X \times_X A \cong A, \\
 A \times_X X \cong A,
 \end{array} &
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & X \\
 \parallel & \lrcorner & \parallel \\
 X & \xrightarrow{f} & X.
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

0019 (4) *Commutativity.* We have an isomorphism of sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 A \times_X B & \longrightarrow & B \\
 \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow g \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & X
 \end{array} &
 \begin{array}{c}
 A \times_X B \cong B \times_X A
 \end{array} &
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B \times_X A & \longrightarrow & A \\
 \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow f \\
 B & \xrightarrow{g} & X
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

001A (5) *Annihilation With the Empty Set.* We have isomorphisms of sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \emptyset & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \emptyset \\ \downarrow \lrcorner & & \downarrow \\ A & \xrightarrow{f} & X, \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} A \times_X \emptyset \cong \emptyset, \\ \emptyset \times_X A \cong \emptyset, \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \emptyset & \xrightarrow{\quad} & A \\ \downarrow \lrcorner & & \downarrow f \\ \emptyset & \xrightarrow{\quad} & X. \end{array}$$

001B (6) *Interaction With Products.* We have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times B & \longrightarrow & B \\ \downarrow \lrcorner & & \downarrow !_B \\ A \times_{\text{pt}} B & \cong & A \times B, \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A & \xrightarrow{!_A} & \text{pt.} \end{array}$$

001C (7) *Symmetric Monoidality.* The triple $(\text{Sets}, \times_X, X)$ is a symmetric monoidal category.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* This is a special case of functoriality of co/limits, ?? of ??, with the explicit expression for ξ following from the commutativity of the cube pullback diagram.

Item 2, Associativity: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (A \times_X B) \times_Y C &\cong \{((a, b), c) \in (A \times_X B) \times C \mid h(b) = k(c)\} \\ &\cong \{((a, b), c) \in (A \times B) \times C \mid f(a) = g(b) \text{ and } h(b) = k(c)\} \\ &\cong \{(a, (b, c)) \in A \times (B \times C) \mid f(a) = g(b) \text{ and } h(b) = k(c)\} \\ &\cong \{(a, (b, c)) \in A \times (B \times_Y C) \mid f(a) = g(b)\} \\ &\cong A \times_X (B \times_Y C) \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} (A \times_X B) \times_B (B \times_Y C) &\cong \{((a, b), (b', c)) \in (A \times_X B) \times (B \times_Y C) \mid b = b'\} \\ &\cong \left\{ ((a, b), (b', c)) \in (A \times B) \times (B \times C) \mid \begin{array}{l} f(a) = g(b), b = b', \\ \text{and } h(b') = k(c) \end{array} \right\} \\ &\cong \left\{ (a, (b, (b', c))) \in A \times (B \times (B \times C)) \mid \begin{array}{l} f(a) = g(b), b = b', \\ \text{and } h(b') = k(c) \end{array} \right\} \\ &\cong \left\{ (a, ((b, b'), c)) \in A \times ((B \times B) \times C) \mid \begin{array}{l} f(a) = g(b), b = b', \\ \text{and } h(b') = k(c) \end{array} \right\} \\ &\cong \left\{ (a, ((b, b'), c)) \in A \times ((B \times_B B) \times C) \mid \begin{array}{l} f(a) = g(b) \text{ and} \\ h(b') = k(c) \end{array} \right\} \\ &\cong \{(a, (b, c)) \in A \times (B \times C) \mid f(a) = g(b) \text{ and } h(b) = k(c)\} \\ &\cong A \times_X (B \times_Y C), \end{aligned}$$

where we have used **Item 3** for the isomorphism $B \times_B B \cong B$.

Item 3, Unitality: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X \times_X A &\cong \{(x, a) \in X \times A \mid f(a) = x\}, \\ A \times_X X &\cong \{(a, x) \in X \times A \mid f(a) = x\}, \end{aligned}$$

which are isomorphic to A via the maps $(x, a) \mapsto a$ and $(a, x) \mapsto a$.

Item 4, Commutativity: Clear.

Item 5, Annihilation With the Empty Set: Clear.

Item 6, Interaction With Products: Clear.

Item 7, Symmetric Monoidality: Omitted. \square

2.1.4. Equalisers. Let A and B be sets and let $f, g: A \rightrightarrows B$ be functions.

001E Definition 2.1.4.1.1. The **equaliser of f and g** is the pair $(\text{Eq}(f, g), \text{eq}(f, g))$ consisting of

- *The Limit.* The set $\text{Eq}(f, g)$ defined by

$$\text{Eq}(f, g) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid f(a) = g(a)\}.$$

- *The Cone.* The inclusion map

$$\text{eq}(f, g): \text{Eq}(f, g) \hookrightarrow A.$$

Proof. We claim that $\text{Eq}(f, g)$ is the categorical equaliser of f and g in **Sets**. First we need to check that the relevant equaliser diagram commutes, i.e. that we have

$$f \circ \text{eq}(f, g) = g \circ \text{eq}(f, g),$$

which indeed holds by the definition of the set $\text{Eq}(f, g)$. Next, we prove that $\text{Eq}(f, g)$ satisfies the universal property of the equaliser. Suppose we have a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \text{Eq}(f, g) & \xrightarrow{\text{eq}(f, g)} & A & \xrightleftharpoons[f]{g} & B \\ & \nearrow e & & & \\ E & & & & \end{array}$$

in **Sets**. Then there exists a unique map $\phi: E \rightarrow \text{Eq}(f, g)$, uniquely determined by the condition

$$\text{eq}(f, g) \circ \phi = e$$

being necessarily given by

$$\phi(x) = e(x)$$

for each $x \in E$, where we note that $e(x) \in A$ indeed lies in $\text{Eq}(f, g)$ by the condition

$$f \circ e = g \circ e,$$

which gives

$$f(e(x)) = g(e(x))$$

for each $x \in E$, so that $e(x) \in \text{Eq}(f, g)$. \square

001F Proposition 2.1.4.1.2. Let A , B , and C be sets.

001G (1) Associativity. We have an isomorphism of sets⁸

$$\underbrace{\text{Eq}(f \circ \text{eq}(g, h), g \circ \text{eq}(g, h))}_{= \text{Eq}(f \circ \text{eq}(g, h), h \circ \text{eq}(g, h))} \cong \text{Eq}(f, g, h) \cong \underbrace{\text{Eq}(f \circ \text{eq}(f, g), h \circ \text{eq}(f, g))}_{= \text{Eq}(g \circ \text{eq}(f, g), h \circ \text{eq}(f, g))},$$

⁸That is, the following three ways of forming “the” equaliser of (f, g, h) agree:

where $\text{Eq}(f, g, h)$ is the limit of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\ & \xrightarrow{g} & \\ & \xrightarrow{h} & \end{array}$$

in **Sets**, being explicitly given by

$$\text{Eq}(f, g, h) \cong \{a \in A \mid f(a) = g(a) = h(a)\}.$$

- 001H** (4) *Unitality.* We have an isomorphism of sets

$$\text{Eq}(f, f) \cong A.$$

- 001J** (5) *Commutativity.* We have an isomorphism of sets

$$\text{Eq}(f, g) \cong \text{Eq}(g, f).$$

- 001K** (6) *Interaction With Composition.* Let

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & B & \xrightarrow{h} & C \\ & \xrightarrow{g} & & \xrightarrow{k} & \end{array}$$

be functions. We have an inclusion of sets

$$\text{Eq}(h \circ f \circ \text{eq}(f, g), k \circ g \circ \text{eq}(f, g)) \subset \text{Eq}(h \circ f, k \circ g),$$

where $\text{Eq}(h \circ f \circ \text{eq}(f, g), k \circ g \circ \text{eq}(f, g))$ is the equaliser of the composition

$$\text{Eq}(f, g) \xrightarrow{\text{eq}(f, g)} A \xrightarrow[g]{f} B \xrightarrow[k]{h} C.$$

- (1) Take the equaliser of (f, g, h) , i.e. the limit of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\ & \xrightarrow{g} & \\ & \xrightarrow{h} & \end{array}$$

in **Sets**.

- (2) First take the equaliser of f and g , forming a diagram

$$\text{Eq}(f, g) \xrightarrow{\text{eq}(f, g)} A \xrightarrow[g]{f} B$$

and then take the equaliser of the composition

$$\text{Eq}(f, g) \xrightarrow{\text{eq}(f, g)} A \xrightarrow[h]{f} B,$$

obtaining a subset

$$\text{Eq}(f \circ \text{eq}(f, g), h \circ \text{eq}(f, g)) = \text{Eq}(g \circ \text{eq}(f, g), h \circ \text{eq}(f, g))$$

of $\text{Eq}(f, g)$.

- (3) First take the equaliser of g and h , forming a diagram

$$\text{Eq}(g, h) \xrightarrow{\text{eq}(g, h)} A \xrightarrow[h]{g} B$$

and then take the equaliser of the composition

$$\text{Eq}(g, h) \xrightarrow{\text{eq}(g, h)} A \xrightarrow[g]{f} B,$$

obtaining a subset

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Eq}(f \circ \text{eq}(g, h), g \circ \text{eq}(g, h)) &= \text{Eq}(f \circ \text{eq}(g, h), h \circ \text{eq}(g, h)) \\ \text{of } \text{Eq}(g, h). \end{aligned}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Associativity:* We first prove that $\text{Eq}(f, g, h)$ is indeed given by

$$\text{Eq}(f, g, h) \cong \{a \in A \mid f(a) = g(a) = h(a)\}.$$

Indeed, suppose we have a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Eq}(f, g, h) & \xrightarrow{\text{eq}(f, g, h)} & A \xrightarrow{\begin{smallmatrix} f \\ -g- \\ h \end{smallmatrix}} B \\ & \nearrow e & \\ E & & \end{array}$$

in **Sets**. Then there exists a unique map $\phi: E \rightarrow \text{Eq}(f, g, h)$, uniquely determined by the condition

$$\text{eq}(f, g) \circ \phi = e$$

being necessarily given by

$$\phi(x) = e(x)$$

for each $x \in E$, where we note that $e(x) \in A$ indeed lies in $\text{Eq}(f, g, h)$ by the condition

$$f \circ e = g \circ e = h \circ e,$$

which gives

$$f(e(x)) = g(e(x)) = h(e(x))$$

for each $x \in E$, so that $e(x) \in \text{Eq}(f, g, h)$.

We now check the equalities

$$\text{Eq}(f \circ \text{eq}(g, h), g \circ \text{eq}(g, h)) \cong \text{Eq}(f, g, h) \cong \text{Eq}(f \circ \text{eq}(f, g), h \circ \text{eq}(f, g)).$$

Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Eq}(f \circ \text{eq}(g, h), g \circ \text{eq}(g, h)) &\cong \{x \in \text{Eq}(g, h) \mid [f \circ \text{eq}(g, h)](a) = [g \circ \text{eq}(g, h)](a)\} \\ &\cong \{x \in \text{Eq}(g, h) \mid f(a) = g(a)\} \\ &\cong \{x \in A \mid f(a) = g(a) \text{ and } g(a) = h(a)\} \\ &\cong \{x \in A \mid f(a) = g(a) = h(a)\} \\ &\cong \text{Eq}(f, g, h). \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Eq}(f \circ \text{eq}(f, g), h \circ \text{eq}(f, g)) &\cong \{x \in \text{Eq}(f, g) \mid [f \circ \text{eq}(f, g)](a) = [h \circ \text{eq}(f, g)](a)\} \\ &\cong \{x \in \text{Eq}(f, g) \mid f(a) = h(a)\} \\ &\cong \{x \in A \mid f(a) = h(a) \text{ and } f(a) = g(a)\} \\ &\cong \{x \in A \mid f(a) = g(a) = h(a)\} \\ &\cong \text{Eq}(f, g, h). \end{aligned}$$

Item 4, Unitality: Clear.

Item 5, Commutativity: Clear.

Item 6, Interaction With Composition: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Eq}(h \circ f \circ \text{eq}(f, g), k \circ g \circ \text{eq}(f, g)) &\cong \{a \in \text{Eq}(f, g) \mid h(f(a)) = k(g(a))\} \\ &\cong \{a \in A \mid f(a) = g(a) \text{ and } h(f(a)) = k(g(a))\}. \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\text{Eq}(h \circ f, k \circ g) \cong \{a \in A \mid h(f(a)) = k(g(a))\},$$

and thus there's an inclusion from $\text{Eq}(h \circ f \circ \text{eq}(f, g), k \circ g \circ \text{eq}(f, g))$ to $\text{Eq}(h \circ f, k \circ g)$. \square

2.2. Colimits of Sets

2.2.1. Coproducts of Families of Sets. Let $\{A_i\}_{i \in I}$ be a family of sets.

001N Definition 2.2.1.1.1. The **disjoint union** of the family $\{A_i\}_{i \in I}$ is the pair $(\coprod_{i \in I} A_i, \{\text{inj}_i\}_{i \in I})$ consisting of

- *The Colimit.* The set $\coprod_{i \in I} A_i$ defined by

$$\coprod_{i \in I} A_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ (i, x) \in I \times \left(\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i \right) \mid x \in A_i \right\}.$$

- *The Cocone.* The collection

$$\left\{ \text{inj}_i : A_i \rightarrow \coprod_{i \in I} A_i \right\}_{i \in I}$$

of maps given by

$$\text{inj}_i(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (i, x)$$

for each $x \in A_i$ and each $i \in I$.

Proof. We claim that $\coprod_{i \in I} A_i$ is the categorical coproduct of $\{A_i\}_{i \in I}$ in **Sets**. Indeed, suppose we have, for each $i \in I$, a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & C \\ & \nearrow i_i & \\ A_i & \xrightarrow{\text{inj}_i} & \coprod_{i \in I} A_i \end{array}$$

in **Sets**. Then there exists a unique map $\phi : \coprod_{i \in I} A_i \rightarrow C$, uniquely determined by the condition $\phi \circ \text{inj}_i = i_i$ for each $i \in I$, being necessarily given by

$$\phi(i, x) = i_i(x)$$

for each $(i, x) \in \coprod_{i \in I} A_i$. □

001P Proposition 2.2.1.1.2. Let $\{A_i\}_{i \in I}$ be a family of sets.

001Q (1) Functoriality. The assignment $\{A_i\}_{i \in I} \mapsto \coprod_{i \in I} A_i$ defines a functor

$$\coprod_{i \in I} : \mathbf{Fun}(I_{\text{disc}}, \mathbf{Sets}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $(A_i)_{i \in I} \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Fun}(I_{\text{disc}}, \mathbf{Sets}))$, we have

$$\left[\coprod_{i \in I} \right] ((A_i)_{i \in I}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{i \in I} A_i$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $(A_i)_{i \in I}, (B_i)_{i \in I} \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Fun}(I_{\text{disc}}, \mathbf{Sets}))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\left(\coprod_{i \in I} \right)_{(A_i)_{i \in I}, (B_i)_{i \in I}} : \text{Nat}((A_i)_{i \in I}, (B_i)_{i \in I}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets} \left(\coprod_{i \in I} A_i, \coprod_{i \in I} B_i \right)$$

of $\coprod_{i \in I}$ at $((A_i)_{i \in I}, (B_i)_{i \in I})$ is defined by sending a map

$$\{f_i: A_i \rightarrow B_i\}_{i \in I}$$

in $\text{Nat}((A_i)_{i \in I}, (B_i)_{i \in I})$ to the map of sets

$$\coprod_{i \in I} f_i: \coprod_{i \in I} A_i \rightarrow \coprod_{i \in I} B_i$$

defined by

$$\left[\coprod_{i \in I} f_i \right] (i, a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f_i(a)$$

for each $(i, a) \in \coprod_{i \in I} A_i$.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Clear. \square

2.2.2. Binary Coproducts.

Let A and B be sets.

001S Definition 2.2.2.1.1. The **coproduct**⁹ of A and B is the pair $(A \coprod B, \{\text{inj}_1, \text{inj}_2\})$ consisting of

- *The Colimit.* The set $A \coprod B$ defined by

$$\begin{aligned} A \coprod B &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{z \in \{A, B\}} z \\ &\cong \{(0, a) \mid a \in A\} \cup \{(1, b) \mid b \in B\}. \end{aligned}$$

- *The Cocone.* The maps

$$\begin{aligned} \text{inj}_1: A &\rightarrow A \coprod B, \\ \text{inj}_2: B &\rightarrow A \coprod B, \end{aligned}$$

given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{inj}_1(a) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (0, a), \\ \text{inj}_2(b) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (1, b), \end{aligned}$$

for each $a \in A$ and each $b \in B$.

Proof. We claim that $A \coprod B$ is the categorical coproduct of A and B in **Sets**. Indeed, suppose we have a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & C & & \\ & i_A \nearrow & & \swarrow i_B & \\ A & \xrightarrow{\text{inj}_A} & A \coprod B & \xleftarrow{\text{inj}_B} & B \end{array}$$

in **Sets**. Then there exists a unique map $\phi: A \coprod B \rightarrow C$, uniquely determined by the conditions

$$\begin{aligned} \phi \circ \text{inj}_A &= i_A, \\ \phi \circ \text{inj}_B &= i_B, \end{aligned}$$

⁹*Further Terminology:* Also called the **disjoint union of A and B** , or the **binary disjoint union of A and B** , for emphasis.

being necessarily given by

$$\phi(x) = \begin{cases} i_A(x) & \text{if } x \in A, \\ i_B(x) & \text{if } x \in B \end{cases}$$

for each $x \in C$. □

001T Proposition 2.2.2.1.2. Let A, B, C , and X be sets.

001U (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $A, B, (A, B) \mapsto A \coprod B$ defines functors

$$\begin{aligned} A \coprod -_2 : \mathbf{Sets} &\rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}, \\ -_1 \coprod B : \mathbf{Sets} &\rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}, \\ -_1 \coprod -_2 : \mathbf{Sets} \times \mathbf{Sets} &\rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}, \end{aligned}$$

where $-_1 \coprod -_2$ is the functor where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $(A, B) \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets} \times \mathbf{Sets})$, we have

$$[-_1 \coprod -_2](A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A \coprod B;$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $(A, B), (X, Y) \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\coprod_{(A, B), (X, Y)} : \mathbf{Sets}(A, X) \times \mathbf{Sets}(B, Y) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}(A \coprod B, X \coprod Y)$$

of \coprod at $((A, B), (X, Y))$ is defined by sending (f, g) to the function

$$f \coprod g : A \coprod B \rightarrow X \coprod Y$$

defined by

$$[f \coprod g](x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} f(x) & \text{if } x \in A, \\ g(x) & \text{if } x \in B \end{cases}$$

for each $x \in A \coprod B$;

and where $A \coprod -$ and $- \coprod B$ are the partial functors of $-_1 \coprod -_2$ at $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$.

001V (2) *Associativity.* We have an isomorphism of sets

$$(A \coprod B) \coprod C \cong A \coprod (B \coprod C),$$

natural in $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$.

001W (3) *Unitality.* We have isomorphisms of sets

$$\begin{aligned} A \coprod \emptyset &\cong A, \\ \emptyset \coprod A &\cong A, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$.

001X (4) *Commutativity.* We have an isomorphism of sets

$$A \coprod B \cong B \coprod A,$$

natural in $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$.

001Y (5) *Symmetric Monoidality.* The triple $(\mathbf{Sets}, \coprod, \emptyset)$ is a symmetric monoidal category.

Proof. *Item 1, Functionality:* Clear.

Item 2, Associativity: Clear.

Item 3, Unitality: Clear.

Item 4, Commutativity: Clear.

Item 5, Symmetric Monoidality: Omitted. \square

2.2.3. Pushouts. Let A , B , and C be sets and let $f: C \rightarrow A$ and $g: C \rightarrow B$ be functions.

0020 Definition 2.2.3.1.1. The **pushout of A and B over C along f and g** ¹⁰ is the pair $(A \coprod_C B, \{\text{inj}_1, \text{inj}_2\})$ consisting of

- *The Colimit.* The set $A \coprod_C B$ defined by

$$A \coprod_C B \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A \coprod B / \sim_C,$$

where \sim_C is the equivalence relation on $A \coprod B$ generated by $(0, f(c)) \sim_C (1, g(c))$.

- *The Cocone.* The maps

$$\text{inj}_1: A \rightarrow A \coprod_C B,$$

$$\text{inj}_2: B \rightarrow A \coprod_C B$$

given by

$$\text{inj}_1(a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [(0, a)]$$

$$\text{inj}_2(b) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [(1, b)]$$

for each $a \in A$ and each $b \in B$.

Proof. We claim that $A \coprod_C B$ is the categorical pushout of A and B over C with respect to (f, g) in **Sets**. First we need to check that the relevant pushout diagram commutes, i.e. that we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A \coprod_C B & \xleftarrow{\text{inj}_2} B \\ \text{inj}_1 \circ f = \text{inj}_2 \circ g, & \uparrow \text{inj}_1 & \uparrow g \\ & A & \xleftarrow{f} C. \end{array}$$

Indeed, given $c \in C$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [\text{inj}_1 \circ f](c) &= \text{inj}_1(f(c)) \\ &= [(0, f(c))] \\ &= [(1, g(c))] \\ &= \text{inj}_2(g(c)) \\ &= [\text{inj}_2 \circ g](c), \end{aligned}$$

where $[(0, f(c))] = [(1, g(c))]$ by the definition of the relation \sim on B . Next, we prove that $A \coprod_C B$ satisfies the universal property of the pushout. Suppose

¹⁰Further Terminology: Also called the **fibre coproduct of A and B over C along f and g** .

we have a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & P & \leftarrow & \\
 & & i_2 \curvearrowleft & & \\
 & & A \coprod_C B & \leftarrow \text{inj}_2 - & B \\
 & & \uparrow \text{inj}_1 & \lrcorner & \uparrow g \\
 & & A & \xleftarrow{f} & C
 \end{array}$$

in **Sets**. Then there exists a unique map $\phi: A \coprod_C B \rightarrow P$, uniquely determined by the conditions

$$\begin{aligned}
 \phi \circ \text{inj}_1 &= i_1, \\
 \phi \circ \text{inj}_2 &= i_2,
 \end{aligned}$$

being necessarily given by

$$\phi(x) = \begin{cases} i_1(a) & \text{if } x = [(0, a)], \\ i_2(b) & \text{if } x = [(1, b)] \end{cases}$$

for each $x \in A \coprod_C B$, where the well-definedness of ϕ is guaranteed by the equality $i_1 \circ f = i_2 \circ g$ and the definition of the relation \sim on $A \coprod B$ as follows.

- (1) *Case 1:* Suppose we have $x = [(0, a)] = [(0, a')]$ for some $a, a' \in A$. Then, by Remark 2.2.3.1.2, we have a sequence

$$(0, a) \sim' x_1 \sim' \cdots \sim' x_n \sim' (0, a').$$

- (2) *Case 2:* Suppose we have $x = [(1, b)] = [(1, b')]$ for some $b, b' \in B$. Then, by Remark 2.2.3.1.2, we have a sequence

$$(1, b) \sim' x_1 \sim' \cdots \sim' x_n \sim' (1, b').$$

- (3) *Case 3:* Suppose we have $x = [(0, a)] = [(1, b)]$ for some $a \in A$ and $b \in B$. Then, by Remark 2.2.3.1.2, we have a sequence

$$(0, a) \sim' x_1 \sim' \cdots \sim' x_n \sim' (1, b).$$

In all these cases, we declare $x \sim' y$ iff there exists some $c \in C$ such that $x = (0, f(c))$ and $y = (1, g(c))$ or $x = (1, g(c))$ and $y = (0, f(c))$. Then, the equality $i_1 \circ f = i_2 \circ g$ gives

$$\begin{aligned}
 \phi([x]) &= \phi([(0, f(c))]) \\
 &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} i_1(f(c)) \\
 &= i_2(g(c)) \\
 &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \phi([(1, g(c))]) \\
 &= \phi([y]),
 \end{aligned}$$

with the case where $x = (1, g(c))$ and $y = (0, f(c))$ similarly giving $\phi([x]) = \phi([y])$. Thus, if $x \sim' y$, then $\phi([x]) = \phi([y])$. Applying this equality pairwise

to the sequences

$$\begin{aligned}(0, a) &\sim' x_1 \sim' \dots \sim' x_n \sim' (0, a'), \\ (1, b) &\sim' x_1 \sim' \dots \sim' x_n \sim' (1, b'), \\ (0, a) &\sim' x_1 \sim' \dots \sim' x_n \sim' (1, b)\end{aligned}$$

gives

$$\begin{aligned}\phi([(0, a)]) &= \phi([(0, a')]), \\ \phi([(1, b)]) &= \phi([(1, b')]), \\ \phi([(0, a)]) &= \phi([(1, b)]),\end{aligned}$$

showing ϕ to be well-defined. \square

0021 Remark 2.2.3.1.2. In detail, by ??, the relation \sim of Definition 2.2.3.1.1 is given by declaring $a \sim b$ iff one of the following conditions is satisfied:

- We have $a, b \in A$ and $a = b$;
 - We have $a, b \in B$ and $a = b$;
 - There exist $x_1, \dots, x_n \in A \coprod B$ such that $a \sim' x_1 \sim' \dots \sim' x_n \sim' b$, where we declare $x \sim' y$ if one of the following conditions is satisfied:
 - (1) There exists $c \in C$ such that $x = (0, f(c))$ and $y = (1, g(c))$.
 - (2) There exists $c \in C$ such that $x = (1, g(c))$ and $y = (0, f(c))$.
- That is: we require the following condition to be satisfied:
- (*) There exist $x_1, \dots, x_n \in A \coprod B$ satisfying the following conditions:
- (1) There exists $c_0 \in C$ satisfying one of the following conditions:
 - (a) We have $a = f(c_0)$ and $x_1 = g(c_0)$.
 - (b) We have $a = g(c_0)$ and $x_1 = f(c_0)$.
 - (2) For each $1 \leq i \leq n - 1$, there exists $c_i \in C$ satisfying one of the following conditions:
 - (a) We have $x_i = f(c_i)$ and $x_{i+1} = g(c_i)$.
 - (b) We have $x_i = g(c_i)$ and $x_{i+1} = f(c_i)$.
 - (3) There exists $c_n \in C$ satisfying one of the following conditions:
 - (a) We have $x_n = f(c_n)$ and $b = g(c_n)$.
 - (b) We have $x_n = g(c_n)$ and $b = f(c_n)$.

0022 Example 2.2.3.1.3. Here are some examples of pushouts of sets.

0023 (1) *Wedge Sums of Pointed Sets.* The wedge sum of two pointed sets of ?? is an example of a pushout of sets.

0024 (2) *Intersections via Unions.* Let $A, B \subset X$. We have a bijection of sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc}A \cup B & \xhookleftarrow{\quad} & B \\ A \cup B \cong A \coprod_{A \cap B} B, & \uparrow \lrcorner & \uparrow \\ & \downarrow & \\ A & \xhookleftarrow{\quad} & A \cap B.\end{array}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Wedge Sums of Pointed Sets:* Follows by definition.

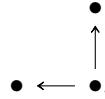
Item 2, Intersections via Unions: Indeed, $A \coprod_{A \cap B} B$ is the quotient of $A \coprod B$ by the equivalence relation obtained by declaring $(0, a) \sim (1, b)$ iff $a = b \in A \cap B$, which is in bijection with $A \cup B$ via the map with $[(0, a)] \mapsto a$ and $[(1, b)] \mapsto b$. \square

0025 Proposition 2.2.3.1.4. Let A, B, C , and X be sets.

0026 (1) Functoriality. The assignment $(A, B, C, f, g) \mapsto A \coprod_{f, C, g} B$ defines a functor

$$-1 \coprod_{-3} -1 : \text{Fun}(\mathcal{P}, \text{Sets}) \rightarrow \text{Sets},$$

where \mathcal{P} is the category that looks like this:



In particular, the action on morphisms of $-1 \coprod_{-3} -1$ is given by sending a morphism

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A \coprod_C B & \xleftarrow{\quad \lrcorner \quad} & B & & \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \psi & & \\ A' \coprod_{C'} B' & \xleftarrow{\quad \lrcorner \quad} & B' & & \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow g & & \\ A & \xleftarrow{\quad f \quad} & C & \xrightarrow{\quad g' \quad} & B' \\ \downarrow \phi & & \downarrow \chi & & \uparrow g' \\ A' & \xleftarrow{\quad f' \quad} & C' & & \end{array}$$

in $\text{Fun}(\mathcal{P}, \text{Sets})$ to the map $\xi: A \coprod_C B \xrightarrow{\exists!} A' \coprod_{C'} B'$ given by

$$\xi(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \phi(a) & \text{if } x = [(0, a)], \\ \psi(b) & \text{if } x = [(1, b)] \end{cases}$$

for each $x \in A \coprod_C B$, which is the unique map making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A \coprod_C B & \xleftarrow{\quad \lrcorner \quad} & B & & \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \psi & & \\ A' \coprod_{C'} B' & \xleftarrow{\quad \lrcorner \quad} & B' & & \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow g & & \\ A & \xleftarrow{\quad f \quad} & C & \xrightarrow{\quad g' \quad} & B' \\ \downarrow \phi & & \downarrow \chi & & \uparrow g' \\ A' & \xleftarrow{\quad f' \quad} & C' & & \end{array}$$

commute.

0027 (2) *Associativity.* Given a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & A & & B & & C \\ & \swarrow f & & \nearrow g & & \swarrow h \\ X & & Y & & & \nearrow k \\ & & & & & \end{array}$$

in Sets , we have isomorphisms

$$(A \coprod_X B) \coprod_Y C \cong (A \coprod_X B) \coprod_B (B \coprod_Y C) \cong A \coprod_X (B \coprod_Y C),$$

where these pullbacks are built as in the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} (A \coprod_X B) \coprod_Y C \\ \uparrow \wedge \quad \swarrow \wedge \\ A \coprod_X B \\ \uparrow \wedge \quad \swarrow \wedge \\ A \quad B \quad C, \\ \downarrow f \quad \downarrow g \quad \downarrow h \quad \downarrow k \\ X \quad Y \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} (A \coprod_X B) \coprod_B (B \coprod_Y C) \\ \uparrow \wedge \quad \swarrow \wedge \quad \uparrow \wedge \quad \swarrow \wedge \\ A \coprod_X B \quad B \coprod_Y C \\ \uparrow \wedge \quad \swarrow \wedge \quad \uparrow \wedge \quad \swarrow \wedge \\ A \quad B \quad C, \\ \downarrow f \quad \downarrow g \quad \downarrow h \quad \downarrow k \\ X \quad Y \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} A \coprod_X (B \coprod_Y C) \\ \uparrow \wedge \quad \swarrow \wedge \\ A \quad B \quad C \\ \uparrow \wedge \quad \swarrow \wedge \\ A \quad B \quad C, \\ \downarrow f \quad \downarrow g \quad \downarrow h \quad \downarrow k \\ X \quad Y \end{array} \end{array}$$

0028 (3) *Unitality.* We have isomorphisms of sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \xlongequal{\Gamma} A & X \coprod_X A \cong A, & A \xleftarrow{f} X \\ \uparrow f \qquad \uparrow f & A \coprod_X X \cong A, & \parallel \Gamma \parallel \\ X \xlongequal{\Gamma} X & & X \xleftarrow{f} X. \end{array}$$

0029 (4) *Commutativity.* We have an isomorphism of sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \coprod_X B \leftarrow B & & B \coprod_X A \leftarrow A \\ \uparrow \Gamma \qquad \uparrow g & A \coprod_X B \cong B \coprod_X A & \uparrow \Gamma \qquad \uparrow f \\ A \xleftarrow{f} X, & & B \xleftarrow{g} X. \end{array}$$

002A (5) *Interaction With Coproducts.* We have

$$\begin{array}{c} A \coprod B \leftarrow B \\ \uparrow \Gamma \qquad \uparrow \iota_B \\ A \coprod_{\emptyset} B \cong A \coprod B, \\ \uparrow \iota_A \qquad \uparrow \emptyset. \end{array}$$

002B (6) *Symmetric Monoidality.* The triple $(\text{Sets}, \coprod_X, \emptyset)$ is a symmetric monoidal category.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* This is a special case of functoriality of co/limits, ?? of ??, with the explicit expression for ξ following from the commutativity of the cube pushout diagram.

Item 2, Associativity: Omitted.

Item 3, Unitality: Omitted.

Item 4, Commutativity: Clear.

Item 5, Interaction With Coproducts: Clear.

Item 6, Symmetric Monoidality: Omitted. □

2.2.4. Coequalisers. Let A and B be sets and let $f, g: A \rightrightarrows B$ be functions.

002D Definition 2.2.4.1.1. The **coequaliser of f and g** is the pair $(\text{CoEq}(f, g), \text{coeq}(f, g))$ consisting of

- *The Colimit.* The set $\text{CoEq}(f, g)$ defined by

$$\text{CoEq}(f, g) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} B/\sim,$$

where \sim is the equivalence relation on B generated by $f(a) \sim g(a)$.

- *The Cocone.* The map

$$\text{coeq}(f, g): B \rightarrow \text{CoEq}(f, g)$$

given by the quotient map $\pi: B \twoheadrightarrow B/\sim$ with respect to the equivalence relation generated by $f(a) \sim g(a)$.

Proof. We claim that $\text{CoEq}(f, g)$ is the categorical coequaliser of f and g in **Sets**. First we need to check that the relevant coequaliser diagram commutes, i.e. that we have

$$\text{coeq}(f, g) \circ f = \text{coeq}(f, g) \circ g.$$

Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [\text{coeq}(f, g) \circ f](a) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [\text{coeq}(f, g)](f(a)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [f(a)] \\ &= [g(a)] \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [\text{coeq}(f, g)](g(a)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [\text{coeq}(f, g) \circ g](a) \end{aligned}$$

for each $a \in A$. Next, we prove that $\text{CoEq}(f, g)$ satisfies the universal property of the coequaliser. Suppose we have a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & f & & \\ & A & \xrightarrow{\quad g \quad} & B & \xrightarrow{\text{coeq}(f,g)} \text{CoEq}(f, g) \\ & & & \searrow c & \\ & & & & C \end{array}$$

in **Sets**. Then, since $c(f(a)) = c(g(a))$ for each $a \in A$, it follows from **????** of **??** that there exists a unique map $\text{CoEq}(f, g) \xrightarrow{\exists!} C$ making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & f & & \\ & A & \xrightarrow{\quad g \quad} & B & \xrightarrow{\text{coeq}(f,g)} \text{CoEq}(f, g) \\ & & & \searrow c & \downarrow \exists! \\ & & & & C \end{array}$$

commutes. □

002E Remark 2.2.4.1.2. In detail, by **??**, the relation \sim of **Definition 2.2.4.1.1** is given by declaring $a \sim b$ iff one of the following conditions is satisfied:

- We have $a = b$;
- There exist $x_1, \dots, x_n \in B$ such that $a \sim' x_1 \sim' \dots \sim' x_n \sim' b$, where we declare $x \sim' y$ if one of the following conditions is satisfied:
 - (1) There exists $z \in A$ such that $x = f(z)$ and $y = g(z)$.

(2) There exists $z \in A$ such that $x = g(z)$ and $y = f(z)$.

That is: we require the following condition to be satisfied:

(\star) There exist $x_1, \dots, x_n \in B$ satisfying the following conditions:

(1) There exists $z_0 \in A$ satisfying one of the following conditions:

- (a) We have $a = f(z_0)$ and $x_1 = g(z_0)$.
- (b) We have $a = g(z_0)$ and $x_1 = f(z_0)$.

(2) For each $1 \leq i \leq n - 1$, there exists $z_i \in A$ satisfying one of the following conditions:

- (a) We have $x_i = f(z_i)$ and $x_{i+1} = g(z_i)$.
- (b) We have $x_i = g(z_i)$ and $x_{i+1} = f(z_i)$.

(3) There exists $z_n \in A$ satisfying one of the following conditions:

- (a) We have $x_n = f(z_n)$ and $b = g(z_n)$.
- (b) We have $x_n = g(z_n)$ and $b = f(z_n)$.

002F Example 2.2.4.1.3. Here are some examples of coequalisers of sets.

002G (1) *Quotients by Equivalence Relations.* Let R be an equivalence relation on a set X . We have a bijection of sets

$$X/\sim_R \cong \text{CoEq}\left(R \hookrightarrow X \times X \xrightarrow[\text{pr}_2]{\text{pr}_1} X\right).$$

Proof. *Item 1, Quotients by Equivalence Relations:* See [Pro24z]. \square

002H Proposition 2.2.4.1.4. Let A , B , and C be sets.

002J (1) *Associativity.* We have an isomorphism of sets¹¹

$$\begin{aligned} & \underbrace{\text{CoEq}(\text{coeq}(f, g) \circ f, \text{coeq}(f, g) \circ h)}_{= \text{CoEq}(\text{coeq}(f, g) \circ g, \text{coeq}(f, g) \circ h)} \cong \text{CoEq}(f, g, h) \cong \underbrace{\text{CoEq}(\text{coeq}(g, h) \circ f, \text{coeq}(g, h) \circ g)}_{= \text{CoEq}(\text{coeq}(g, h) \circ f, \text{coeq}(g, h) \circ h)}, \end{aligned}$$

where $\text{CoEq}(f, g, h)$ is the colimit of the diagram

$$A \xrightarrow[\substack{f \\ g \\ h}]{} B$$

in **Sets**.

¹¹That is, the following three ways of forming “the” coequaliser of (f, g, h) agree:

(1) Take the coequaliser of (f, g, h) , i.e. the colimit of the diagram

$$A \xrightarrow[\substack{f \\ g \\ h}]{} B$$

in **Sets**.

(2) First take the coequaliser of f and g , forming a diagram

$$A \xrightarrow[\substack{f \\ g}]{} B \xrightarrow{\text{coeq}(f, g)} \text{CoEq}(f, g)$$

and then take the coequaliser of the composition

$$A \xrightarrow[\substack{f \\ g \\ h}]{} B \xrightarrow{\text{coeq}(f, g)} \text{CoEq}(f, g),$$

obtaining a quotient

$$\text{CoEq}(\text{coeq}(f, g) \circ f, \text{coeq}(f, g) \circ h) = \text{CoEq}(\text{coeq}(f, g) \circ g, \text{coeq}(f, g) \circ h)$$

of $\text{CoEq}(f, g)$

002K (4) *Unitality.* We have an isomorphism of sets

$$\text{CoEq}(f, f) \cong B.$$

002L (5) *Commutativity.* We have an isomorphism of sets

$$\text{CoEq}(f, g) \cong \text{CoEq}(g, f).$$

002M (6) *Interaction With Composition.* Let

$$A \xrightarrow[g]{f} B \xrightarrow[k]{h} C$$

be functions. We have a surjection

$$\text{CoEq}(h \circ f, k \circ g) \twoheadrightarrow \text{CoEq}(\text{coeq}(h, k) \circ h \circ f, \text{coeq}(h, k) \circ k \circ g)$$

exhibiting $\text{CoEq}(\text{coeq}(h, k) \circ h \circ f, \text{coeq}(h, k) \circ k \circ g)$ as a quotient of $\text{CoEq}(h \circ f, k \circ g)$ by the relation generated by declaring $h(y) \sim k(y)$ for each $y \in B$.

Proof. *Item 1, Associativity:* Omitted.

Item 4, Unitality: Clear.

Item 5, Commutativity: Clear.

Item 6, Interaction With Composition: Omitted. □

2.3. Operations With Sets

2.3.1. The Empty Set.

002Q **Definition 2.3.1.1.1.** The **empty set** is the set \emptyset defined by

$$\emptyset \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{x \in X \mid x \neq x\},$$

where A is the set in the set existence axiom, ?? of ??.

2.3.2. Singleton Sets. Let X be a set.

002S **Definition 2.3.2.1.1.** The **singleton set containing X** is the set $\{X\}$ defined by

$$\{X\} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{X, X\},$$

where $\{X, X\}$ is the pairing of X with itself ([Definition 2.3.3.1.1](#)).

2.3.3. Pairings of Sets. Let X and Y be sets.

002U **Definition 2.3.3.1.1.** The **pairing of X and Y** is the set $\{X, Y\}$ defined by

$$\{X, Y\} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{x \in A \mid x = X \text{ or } x = Y\},$$

(3) First take the coequaliser of g and h , forming a diagram

$$A \xrightarrow[g]{h} B \xrightarrow{\text{coeq}(g, h)} \text{CoEq}(g, h)$$

and then take the coequaliser of the composition

$$A \xrightarrow[g]{f} B \xrightarrow{\text{coeq}(g, h)} \text{CoEq}(g, h),$$

obtaining a quotient

$$\begin{aligned} \text{CoEq}(\text{coeq}(g, h) \circ f, \text{coeq}(g, h) \circ g) &= \text{CoEq}(\text{coeq}(g, h) \circ f, \text{coeq}(g, h) \circ h) \\ &\text{of } \text{CoEq}(g, h). \end{aligned}$$

where A is the set in the axiom of pairing, ?? of ??.

2.3.4. Ordered Pairs. Let A and B be sets.

002W Definition 2.3.4.1.1. The **ordered pair associated to A and B** is the set (A, B) defined by

$$(A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\{A\}, \{A, B\}\}.$$

002X Proposition 2.3.4.1.2. Let A and B be sets.

- 002Y (1) Uniqueness.** Let A, B, C , and D be sets. The following conditions are equivalent:
- (a) We have $(A, B) = (C, D)$.
 - (b) We have $A = C$ and $B = D$.

Proof. *Item 1, Uniqueness:* See [Cie97, Theorem 1.2.3]. □

2.3.5. Unions of Families. Let $\{A_i\}_{i \in I}$ be a family of sets.

0030 Definition 2.3.5.1.1. The **union of the family $\{A_i\}_{i \in I}$** is the set $\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$ defined by

$$\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{x \in F \mid \text{there exists some } i \in I \text{ such that } x \in A_i\},$$

where F is the set in the axiom of union, ?? of ??.

2.3.6. Binary Unions. Let A and B be sets.

0032 Definition 2.3.6.1.1. The **union¹² of A and B** is the set $A \cup B$ defined by

$$A \cup B \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{z \in \{A, B\}} z.$$

0033 Proposition 2.3.6.1.2. Let X be a set.

0034 (1) Functoriality. The assignments $U, V, (U, V) \mapsto U \cup V$ define functors

$$\begin{aligned} U \cup - &: (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset), \\ - \cup V &: (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset), \\ -_1 \cup -_2 &: (\mathcal{P}(X) \times \mathcal{P}(X), \subset \times \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset), \end{aligned}$$

where $-_1 \cup -_2$ is the functor where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $(U, V) \in \mathcal{P}(X) \times \mathcal{P}(X)$, we have

$$[-_1 \cup -_2](U, V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} U \cup V;$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each pair of morphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \iota_U &: U \hookrightarrow U', \\ \iota_V &: V \hookrightarrow V' \end{aligned}$$

of $\mathcal{P}(X) \times \mathcal{P}(X)$, the image

$$\iota_U \cup \iota_V: U \cup V \hookrightarrow U' \cup V'$$

of (ι_U, ι_V) by \cup is the inclusion

$$U \cup V \subset U' \cup V'$$

¹²*Further Terminology:* Also called the **binary union of A and B** , for emphasis.

i.e. where we have

(\star) If $U \subset U'$ and $V \subset V'$, then $U \cup V \subset U' \cup V'$;

and where $U \cup -$ and $- \cup V$ are the partial functors of $-_1 \cup -_2$ at $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 0035** (2) *Via Intersections and Symmetric Differences.* We have an equality of sets

$$U \cup V = (U \Delta V) \Delta (U \cap V)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 0036** (3) *Associativity.* We have an equality of sets

$$(U \cup V) \cup W = U \cup (V \cup W)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 0037** (4) *Unitality.* We have equalities of sets

$$U \cup \emptyset = U,$$

$$\emptyset \cup U = U$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 0038** (5) *Commutativity.* We have an equality of sets

$$U \cup V = V \cup U$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 0039** (6) *Idempotency.* We have an equality of sets

$$U \cup U = U$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 003A** (7) *Distributivity Over Intersections.* We have equalities of sets

$$U \cup (V \cap W) = (U \cup V) \cap (U \cup W),$$

$$(U \cap V) \cup W = (U \cup W) \cap (V \cup W)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 003B** (8) *Interaction With Characteristic Functions I.* We have

$$\chi_{U \cup V} = \max(\chi_U, \chi_V)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 003C** (9) *Interaction With Characteristic Functions II.* We have

$$\chi_{U \cup V} = \chi_U + \chi_V - \chi_{U \cap V}$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 003D** (10) *Interaction With Powersets and Semirings.* The quintuple $(\mathcal{P}(X), \cup, \cap, \emptyset, X)$ is an idempotent commutative semiring.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* See [Pro24an].

Item 2, Via Intersections and Symmetric Differences: See [Pro24ay].

Item 3, Associativity: See [Pro24ba].

Item 4, Unitality: This follows from [Pro24bd] and Item 5.

Item 5, Commutativity: See [Pro24bb].

Item 6, Idempotency: See [Pro24am].

Item 7, Distributivity Over Intersections: See [Pro24az].

Item 8, Interaction With Characteristic Functions I: See [Pro24k].

Item 9, Interaction With Characteristic Functions II: See [Pro24k].

Item 10, Interaction With Powersets and Semirings: This follows from Items 3 to 6 and Items 3 to 5, 7 and 8 of Proposition 2.3.8.1.2. \square

2.3.7. Intersections of Families. Let \mathcal{F} be a family of sets.

003F Definition 2.3.7.1.1. The **intersection of a family \mathcal{F} of sets** is the set $\bigcap_{X \in \mathcal{F}} X$ defined by

$$\bigcap_{X \in \mathcal{F}} X \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ z \in \bigcup_{X \in \mathcal{F}} X \mid \text{for each } X \in \mathcal{F}, \text{ we have } z \in X \right\}.$$

2.3.8. Binary Intersections. Let X and Y be sets.

003H Definition 2.3.8.1.1. The **intersection¹³ of X and Y** is the set $X \cap Y$ defined by

$$X \cap Y \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcap_{z \in \{X, Y\}} z.$$

003J Proposition 2.3.8.1.2. Let X be a set.

003K (1) Functoriality. The assignments $U, V, (U, V) \mapsto U \cap V$ define functors

$$\begin{aligned} U \cap -: (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset) &\rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset), \\ - \cap V: (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset) &\rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset), \\ -_1 \cap -_2: (\mathcal{P}(X) \times \mathcal{P}(X), \subset \times \subset) &\rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset), \end{aligned}$$

where $-_1 \cap -_2$ is the functor where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $(U, V) \in \mathcal{P}(X) \times \mathcal{P}(X)$, we have

$$[-_1 \cap -_2](U, V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} U \cap V;$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each pair of morphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \iota_U: U &\hookrightarrow U', \\ \iota_V: V &\hookrightarrow V' \end{aligned}$$

of $\mathcal{P}(X) \times \mathcal{P}(X)$, the image

$$\iota_U \cap \iota_V: U \cap V \hookrightarrow U' \cap V'$$

of (ι_U, ι_V) by \cap is the inclusion

$$U \cap V \subset U' \cap V'$$

i.e. where we have

(*) If $U \subset U'$ and $V \subset V'$, then $U \cap V \subset U' \cap V'$;

and where $U \cap -$ and $- \cap V$ are the partial functors of $-_1 \cap -_2$ at $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

003L (2) Adjointness. We have adjunctions

$$\begin{aligned} (U \cap - \dashv \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(U, -)): \quad \mathcal{P}(X) &\xrightleftharpoons[\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(U, -)]{U \cap -} \mathcal{P}(X), \\ (- \cap V \dashv \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(V, -)): \quad \mathcal{P}(X) &\xrightleftharpoons[\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(V, -)]{- \cap V} \mathcal{P}(X), \end{aligned}$$

¹³Further Terminology: Also called the **binary intersection of X and Y** , for emphasis.

where

$$\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(-_1, -_2) : \mathcal{P}(X)^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{P}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(X)$$

is the bifunctor defined by¹⁴

$$\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(U, V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (X \setminus U) \cup V$$

witnessed by bijections

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(U \cap V, W) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}\left(U, \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(V, W)\right),$$

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(U \cap V, W) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}\left(V, \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(U, W)\right),$$

natural in $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$, i.e. where:

(a) The following conditions are equivalent:

- (i) We have $U \cap V \subset W$.
- (ii) We have $U \subset \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(V, W)$.
- (iii) We have $U \subset (X \setminus V) \cup W$.

(b) The following conditions are equivalent:

- (i) We have $V \cap U \subset W$.
- (ii) We have $V \subset \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(U, W)$.
- (iii) We have $V \subset (X \setminus U) \cup W$.

003M (3) *Associativity.* We have an equality of sets

$$(U \cap V) \cap W = U \cap (V \cap W)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

003N (4) *Unitality.* Let X be a set and let $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$. We have equalities of sets

$$X \cap U = U,$$

$$U \cap X = U$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

003P (5) *Commutativity.* We have an equality of sets

$$U \cap V = V \cap U$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

003Q (6) *Idempotency.* We have an equality of sets

$$U \cap U = U$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

003R (7) *Distributivity Over Unions.* We have equalities of sets

$$U \cap (V \cup W) = (U \cap V) \cup (U \cap W),$$

$$(U \cup V) \cap W = (U \cap W) \cup (V \cap W)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

¹⁴*Intuition:* Since intersections are the products in $\mathcal{P}(X)$, the left adjoint $\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(U, V)$ works as a function type $U \rightarrow V$.

Now, under the Curry–Howard correspondence, the function type $U \rightarrow V$ corresponds to implication $U \implies V$, which is logically equivalent to the statement $\neg U \vee V$, which in turn corresponds to the set $U^c \vee V \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (X \setminus U) \cup V$.

003S (8) *Annihilation With the Empty Set.* We have an equality of sets

$$\emptyset \cap X = \emptyset,$$

$$X \cap \emptyset = \emptyset$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

003T (9) *Interaction With Characteristic Functions I.* We have

$$\chi_{U \cap V} = \chi_U \chi_V$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

003U (10) *Interaction With Characteristic Functions II.* We have

$$\chi_{U \cap V} = \min(\chi_U, \chi_V)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

003V (11) *Interaction With Powersets and Monoids With Zero.* The quadruple $((\mathcal{P}(X), \emptyset), \cap, X)$ is a commutative monoid with zero.

003W (12) *Interaction With Powersets and Semirings.* The quintuple $(\mathcal{P}(X), \cup, \cap, \emptyset, X)$ is an idempotent commutative semiring.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* See [Pro24al].

Item 2, Adjointness: See [MSE 267469].

Item 3, Associativity: See [Pro24t].

Item 4, Unitality: This follows from [Pro24x] and *Item 5*.

Item 5, Commutativity: See [Pro24u].

Item 6, Idempotency: See [Pro24ak].

Item 7, Distributivity Over Unions: See [Pro24aj].

Item 8, Annihilation With the Empty Set: This follows from [Pro24v] and *Item 5*.

Item 9, Interaction With Characteristic Functions I: See [Pro24h].

Item 10, Interaction With Characteristic Functions II: See [Pro24h].

Item 11, Interaction With Powersets and Monoids With Zero: This follows from *Items 3 to 5 and 8*.

Item 12, Interaction With Powersets and Semirings: This follows from *Items 3 to 6 and Items 3 to 5, 7 and 8* of Proposition 2.3.8.1.2. \square

2.3.9. Differences. Let X and Y be sets.

003Y **Definition 2.3.9.1.1.** The **difference of X and Y** is the set $X \setminus Y$ defined by

$$X \setminus Y \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in X \mid a \notin Y\}.$$

003Z **Proposition 2.3.9.1.2.** Let X be a set.

0040 (1) *Functoriality.* The assignments $U, V, (U, V) \mapsto U \cap V$ define functors

$$U \setminus -: (\mathcal{P}(X), \supset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset),$$

$$- \setminus V: (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset),$$

$$-_1 \setminus -_2: (\mathcal{P}(X) \times \mathcal{P}(X), \subset \times \supset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset),$$

where $-_1 \setminus -_2$ is the functor where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $(U, V) \in \mathcal{P}(X) \times \mathcal{P}(X)$, we have

$$[-_1 \setminus -_2](U, V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} U \setminus V;$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each pair of morphisms

$$\iota_A: A \hookrightarrow B,$$

$$\iota_U: U \hookrightarrow V$$

of $\mathcal{P}(X) \times \mathcal{P}(X)$, the image

$$\iota_U \setminus \iota_V: A \setminus V \hookrightarrow B \setminus U$$

of (ι_U, ι_V) by \setminus is the inclusion

$$A \setminus V \subset B \setminus U$$

i.e. where we have

(★) If $A \subset B$ and $U \subset V$, then $A \setminus V \subset B \setminus U$;

and where $U \setminus -$ and $- \setminus V$ are the partial functors of $-_1 \setminus -_2$ at $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 0041** (2) *De Morgan's Laws.* We have equalities of sets

$$X \setminus (U \cup V) = (X \setminus U) \cap (X \setminus V),$$

$$X \setminus (U \cap V) = (X \setminus U) \cup (X \setminus V)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 0042** (3) *Interaction With Unions I.* We have equalities of sets

$$U \setminus (V \cup W) = (U \setminus V) \cap (U \setminus W)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 0043** (4) *Interaction With Unions II.* We have equalities of sets

$$(U \setminus V) \cup W = (U \cup W) \setminus (V \setminus W)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 0044** (5) *Interaction With Unions III.* We have equalities of sets

$$\begin{aligned} U \setminus (V \cup W) &= (U \cup W) \setminus (V \cup W) \\ &= (U \setminus V) \cup W \\ &= (U \setminus W) \cup V \end{aligned}$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 0045** (6) *Interaction With Unions IV.* We have equalities of sets

$$(U \cup V) \setminus W = (U \setminus W) \cup (V \setminus W)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 0046** (7) *Interaction With Intersections.* We have equalities of sets

$$\begin{aligned} (U \setminus V) \cap W &= (U \cap W) \setminus V \\ &= U \cap (W \setminus V) \end{aligned}$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 0047** (8) *Interaction With Complements.* We have an equality of sets

$$U \setminus V = U \cap V^c$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 0048** (9) *Interaction With Symmetric Differences.* We have an equality of sets

$$U \setminus V = U \Delta (U \cap V)$$

- for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.
 0049 (10) *Triple Differences.* We have

$$U \setminus (V \setminus W) = (U \cap W) \cup (U \setminus V)$$

- for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.
 004A (11) *Left Annihilation.* We have

$$\emptyset \setminus U = \emptyset$$

- for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.
 004B (12) *Right Unitality.* We have

$$U \setminus \emptyset = U$$

- for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.
 004C (13) *Invertibility.* We have
- $$U \setminus U = \emptyset$$
- for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.
 004D (14) *Interaction With Containment.* The following conditions are equivalent:
- (a) We have $V \setminus U \subset W$.
 - (b) We have $V \setminus W \subset U$.
- 004E (15) *Interaction With Characteristic Functions.* We have

$$\chi_{U \setminus V} = \chi_U - \chi_{U \cap V}$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* See [Pro24ad] and [Pro24ah].

Item 2, De Morgan's Laws: See [Pro24p].

Item 3, Interaction With Unions I: See [Pro24q].

Item 4, Interaction With Unions II: Omitted.

Item 5, Interaction With Unions III: See [Pro24ai].

Item 6, Interaction With Unions IV: See [Pro24ac].

Item 7, Interaction With Intersections: See [Pro24w].

Item 8, Interaction With Complements: See [Pro24aa].

Item 9, Interaction With Symmetric Differences: See [Pro24ab].

Item 10, Triple Differences: See [Pro24ag].

Item 11, Left Annihilation: Clear.

Item 12, Right Unitality: See [Pro24ae].

Item 13, Invertibility: See [Pro24af].

Item 14, Interaction With Containment: Omitted.

Item 15, Interaction With Characteristic Functions: See [Pro24i]. □

2.3.10. Complements. Let X be a set and let $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

- 004G **Definition 2.3.10.1.1.** The **complement** of U is the set U^c defined by

$$\begin{aligned} U^c &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X \setminus U \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in X \mid a \notin U\}. \end{aligned}$$

- 004H **Proposition 2.3.10.1.2.** Let X be a set.

004J (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $U \mapsto U^c$ defines a functor

$$(-)^c : \mathcal{P}(X)^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(X),$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$, we have

$$[(-)^c](U) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} U^c;$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each morphism $\iota_U : U \hookrightarrow V$ of $\mathcal{P}(X)$, the image

$$\iota_U^c : V^c \hookrightarrow U^c$$

of ι_U by $(-)^c$ is the inclusion

$$V^c \subset U^c$$

i.e. where we have

$$(*) \text{ If } U \subset V, \text{ then } V^c \subset U^c.$$

004K (2) *De Morgan's Laws.* We have equalities of sets

$$(U \cup V)^c = U^c \cap V^c,$$

$$(U \cap V)^c = U^c \cup V^c$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

004L (3) *Involutority.* We have

$$(U^c)^c = U$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

004M (4) *Interaction With Characteristic Functions.* We have

$$\chi_{U^c} = 1 - \chi_U$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

Proof. *Item 1, Functionality:* This follows from Item 1 of Proposition 2.3.9.1.2.

Item 2, De Morgan's Laws: See [Pro24p].

Item 3, Involutority: See [Pro24l].

Item 4, Interaction With Characteristic Functions: Clear. □

2.3.11. Symmetric Differences.

Let A and B be sets.

004P **Definition 2.3.11.1.1.** The **symmetric difference of A and B** is the set $A \triangle B$ defined by

$$A \triangle B \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (A \setminus B) \cup (B \setminus A).$$

004Q **Proposition 2.3.11.1.2.** Let X be a set.

004R (1) *Lack of Functionality.* The assignment $(U, V) \mapsto U \triangle V$ **need not** define functors

$$U \triangle -_2 : (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset),$$

$$-_1 \triangle V : (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset),$$

$$-_1 \triangle -_2 : (\mathcal{P}(X) \times \mathcal{P}(X), \subset \times \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X), \subset).$$

004S (2) *Via Unions and Intersections.* We have¹⁵

$$U \Delta V = (U \cup V) \setminus (U \cap V)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

004T (3) *Associativity.* We have¹⁶

$$(U \Delta V) \Delta W = U \Delta (V \Delta W)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

004U (4) *Commutativity.* We have

$$U \Delta V = V \Delta U$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

004V (5) *Unitality.* We have

$$U \Delta \emptyset = U,$$

$$\emptyset \Delta U = U$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

004W (6) *Invertibility.* We have

$$U \Delta U = \emptyset$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

004X (7) *Interaction With Unions.* We have

$$(U \Delta V) \cup (V \Delta T) = (U \cup V \cup W) \setminus (U \cap V \cap W)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

004Y (8) *Interaction With Complements I.* We have

$$U \Delta U^c = X$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

004Z (9) *Interaction With Complements II.* We have

$$U \Delta X = U^c,$$

$$X \Delta U = U^c$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

0050 (10) *Interaction With Complements III.* We have

$$U^c \Delta V^c = U \Delta V$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

0051 (11) “Transitivity”. We have

$$(U \Delta V) \Delta (V \Delta W) = U \Delta W$$

¹⁵Illustration:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{O} \end{array}} = \boxed{\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{O} \end{array}} \setminus \boxed{\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{O} \end{array}}.$$

¹⁶Illustration:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{O} \\ \text{O} \end{array}} \Delta \boxed{\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{O} \\ \text{O} \end{array}} = \boxed{\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{O} \\ \text{O} \end{array}} = \boxed{\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{O} \\ \text{O} \end{array}} \Delta \boxed{\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{O} \\ \text{O} \end{array}}.$$

- for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.
0052 (12) *The Triangle Inequality for Symmetric Differences.* We have

$$U \Delta W \subset U \Delta V \cup V \Delta W$$

- for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.
0053 (13) *Distributivity Over Intersections.* We have

$$\begin{aligned} U \cap (V \Delta W) &= (U \cap V) \Delta (U \cap W), \\ (U \Delta V) \cap W &= (U \cap W) \Delta (V \cap W) \end{aligned}$$

- for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V, W \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.
0054 (14) *Interaction With Characteristic Functions.* We have

$$\chi_{U \Delta V} = \chi_U + \chi_V - 2\chi_{U \cap V}$$

and thus, in particular, we have

$$\chi_{U \Delta V} \equiv \chi_U + \chi_V \pmod{2}$$

- for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.
0055 (15) *Bijectivity.* Given $A, B \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$, the maps

$$\begin{aligned} A \Delta - &: \mathcal{P}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(X), \\ - \Delta B &: \mathcal{P}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(X) \end{aligned}$$

are bijections with inverses given by

$$\begin{aligned} (A \Delta -)^{-1} &= - \cup (A \cap -), \\ (- \Delta B)^{-1} &= - \cup (B \cap -). \end{aligned}$$

Moreover, the map

$$C \mapsto C \Delta (A \Delta B)$$

is a bijection of $\mathcal{P}(X)$ onto itself sending A to B and B to A .

- 0056 (16) *Interaction With Powersets and Groups.* Let X be a set.
0057 (a) The quadruple $(\mathcal{P}(X), \Delta, \emptyset, \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(X)})$ is an abelian group. ¹⁷
0058 (b) Every element of $\mathcal{P}(X)$ has order 2 with respect to Δ , and
thus $\mathcal{P}(X)$ is a *Boolean group* (i.e. an abelian 2-group).
0059 (4) *Interaction With Powersets and Vector Spaces I.* The pair $(\mathcal{P}(X), \alpha_{\mathcal{P}(X)})$ consisting of
• The group $\mathcal{P}(X)$ of ??;

¹⁷Here are some examples:

- (1) When $X = \emptyset$, we have an isomorphism of groups between $\mathcal{P}(\emptyset)$ and the trivial group:
 $(\mathcal{P}(\emptyset), \Delta, \emptyset, \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(\emptyset)}) \cong \text{pt}.$
- (2) When $X = \text{pt}$, we have an isomorphism of groups between $\mathcal{P}(\text{pt})$ and $\mathbb{Z}/2$:
 $(\mathcal{P}(\text{pt}), \Delta, \emptyset, \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(\text{pt})}) \cong \mathbb{Z}/2.$
- (3) When $X = \{0, 1\}$, we have an isomorphism of groups between $\mathcal{P}(\{0, 1\})$ and $\mathbb{Z}/2 \times \mathbb{Z}/2$:
 $(\mathcal{P}(\{0, 1\}), \Delta, \emptyset, \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(\{0, 1\})}) \cong \mathbb{Z}/2 \times \mathbb{Z}/2.$

- The map $\alpha_{\mathcal{P}(X)}: \mathbb{F}_2 \times \mathcal{P}(X) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(X)$ defined by

$$0 \cdot U \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \emptyset,$$

$$1 \cdot U \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} U;$$

is an \mathbb{F}_2 -vector space.

005A (5) *Interaction With Powersets and Vector Spaces II.* If X is finite, then:

- The set of singletons sets on the elements of X forms a basis for the \mathbb{F}_2 -vector space $(\mathcal{P}(X), \alpha_{\mathcal{P}(X)})$ of [Item 4](#).
- We have

$$\dim(\mathcal{P}(X)) = \#\mathcal{P}(X).$$

005B (6) *Interaction With Powersets and Rings.* The quintuple $(\mathcal{P}(X), \Delta, \cap, \emptyset, X)$ is a commutative ring.¹⁸

Proof. [Item 1](#), *Lack of Functoriality*: Omitted.

[Item 2](#), *Via Unions and Intersections*: See [[Pro24r](#)].

[Item 3](#), *Associativity*: See [[Pro24ao](#)].

[Item 4](#), *Commutativity*: See [[Pro24ap](#)].

[Item 5](#), *Unitality*: This follows from [Item 4](#) and [[Pro24at](#)].

[Item 6](#), *Invertibility*: See [[Pro24av](#)].

[Item 7](#), *Interaction With Unions*: See [[Pro24bc](#)].

[Item 8](#), *Interaction With Complements I*: See [[Pro24as](#)].

[Item 9](#), *Interaction With Complements II*: This follows from [Item 4](#) and [[Pro24ax](#)].

[Item 10](#), *Interaction With Complements III*: See [[Pro24aq](#)].

[Item 11](#), “Transitivity”: We have

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{by Item 3}) \quad (U \Delta V) \Delta (V \Delta W) &= U \Delta (V \Delta (V \Delta W)) \\ (\text{by Item 3}) &= U \Delta ((V \Delta V) \Delta W) \\ (\text{by Item 6}) &= U \Delta (\emptyset \Delta W) \\ (\text{by Item 5}) &= U \Delta W \end{aligned}$$

[Item 12](#), *The Triangle Inequality for Symmetric Differences*: This follows from [Items 2](#) and [11](#).

[Item 13](#), *Distributivity Over Intersections*: See [[Pro24s](#)].

[Item 14](#), *Interaction With Characteristic Functions*: See [[Pro24j](#)].

[Item 15](#), *Bijectivity*: Clear.

[Item 16](#), *Interaction With Powersets and Groups*: [Item 16a](#) follows from¹⁹ [Items 3 to 6](#), while [Item 3b](#) follows from [Item 6](#).

[Item 4](#), *Interaction With Powersets and Vector Spaces I*: Clear.

[Item 5](#), *Interaction With Powersets and Vector Spaces II*: Omitted.

[Item 6](#), *Interaction With Powersets and Rings*: This follows from [Items 8](#) and [11](#) of [Proposition 2.3.8.1.2](#) and [Items 13](#) and [16](#).²⁰ \square

¹⁸  *Warning:* The analogous statement replacing intersections by unions (i.e. that the quintuple $(\mathcal{P}(X), \Delta, \cap, \emptyset, X)$ is a ring) is false, however. See [[Pro24aw](#)] for a proof.

END TEXTDBEND

¹⁹ Reference: [[Pro24ar](#)].

²⁰ Reference: [[Pro24au](#)].

2.4. Powersets

2.4.1. Characteristic Functions. Let X be a set.

005E **Definition 2.4.1.1.1.** Let $U \subset X$ and let $x \in X$.

005F (1) The **characteristic function of U** ²¹ is the function²²

$$\chi_U: X \rightarrow \{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$$

defined by

$$\chi_U(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{true} & \text{if } x \in U, \\ \text{false} & \text{if } x \notin U \end{cases}$$

for each $x \in X$.

005G (2) The **characteristic function of x** is the function²³

$$\chi_x: X \rightarrow \{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$$

defined by

$$\chi_x \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \chi_{\{x\}},$$

i.e. by

$$\chi_x(y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{true} & \text{if } x = y, \\ \text{false} & \text{if } x \neq y \end{cases}$$

for each $y \in X$.

005H (3) The **characteristic relation on X** ²⁴ is the relation²⁵

$$\chi_X(-_1, -_2): X \times X \rightarrow \{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$$

on X defined by²⁶

$$\chi_X(x, y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{true} & \text{if } x = y, \\ \text{false} & \text{if } x \neq y \end{cases}$$

for each $x, y \in X$.

005J (4) The **characteristic embedding**²⁷ of X into $\mathcal{P}(X)$ is the function

$$\chi_{(-)}: X \hookrightarrow \mathcal{P}(X)$$

defined by

$$\chi_{(-)}(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \chi_x$$

for each $x \in X$.

²¹Further Terminology: Also called the **indicator function of U** .

²²Further Notation: Also written $\chi_X(U, -)$ or $\chi_X(-, U)$.

²³Further Notation: Also written χ_x , $\chi_X(x, -)$, or $\chi_X(-, x)$.

²⁴Further Terminology: Also called the **identity relation on X** .

²⁵Further Notation: Also written χ_{-2}^{-1} , or \sim_{id} in the context of relations.

²⁶As a subset of $X \times X$, the relation χ_X corresponds to the diagonal $\Delta_X \subset X \times X$ of X .

²⁷The name “characteristic embedding” comes from the fact that there is an analogue of fully faithfulness for $\chi_{(-)}$: given a set X , we have

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(\chi_x, \chi_y) = \chi_X(x, y),$$

for each $x, y \in X$.

005K Remark 2.4.1.1.2. The definitions in [Definition 2.4.1.1.1](#) are decategorifications of co/presheaves, representable co/presheaves, Hom profunctors, and the Yoneda embedding:²⁸

- (1) A function

$$f: X \rightarrow \{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$$

is a decategorification of a presheaf

$$\mathcal{F}: \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Sets},$$

with the characteristic functions χ_U of the subsets of X being the primordial examples (and, in fact, all examples) of these.

- (2) The characteristic function

$$\chi_x: X \rightarrow \{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$$

of an *element* x of X is a decategorification of the representable presheaf

$$h_X: \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$$

of an *object* x of a category \mathcal{C} .

- (3) The characteristic relation

$$\chi_X(-_1, -_2): X \times X \rightarrow \{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$$

of X is a decategorification of the Hom profunctor

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(-_1, -_2): \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$$

of a category \mathcal{C} .

- (4) The characteristic embedding

$$\chi_{(-)}: X \hookrightarrow \mathcal{P}(X)$$

of X into $\mathcal{P}(X)$ is a decategorification of the Yoneda embedding

$$\mathfrak{J}: \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \hookrightarrow \text{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$$

of a category \mathcal{C} into $\text{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$.

- (5) There is also a direct parallel between unions and colimits:

²⁸These statements can be made precise by using the embeddings

$$(-)_{\text{disc}}: \text{Sets} \hookrightarrow \text{Cats},$$

$$(-)_{\text{disc}}: \{\text{t}, \text{f}\}_{\text{disc}} \hookrightarrow \text{Sets}$$

of sets into categories and of classical truth values into sets.

For instance, in this approach the characteristic function

$$\chi_x: X \rightarrow \{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$$

of an element x of X , defined by

$$\chi_x(y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{true} & \text{if } x = y, \\ \text{false} & \text{if } x \neq y \end{cases}$$

for each $y \in X$, is recovered as the representable presheaf

$$\text{Hom}_{X_{\text{disc}}}(-, x): X_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$$

of the corresponding object x of X_{disc} , defined on objects by

$$\text{Hom}_{X_{\text{disc}}}(y, x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{pt} & \text{if } x = y, \\ \emptyset & \text{if } x \neq y \end{cases}$$

for each $y \in \text{Obj}(X_{\text{disc}})$.

- An element of $\mathcal{P}(X)$ is a union of elements of X , viewed as one-point subsets $\{x\} \in \mathcal{P}(A)$;
- An object of $\text{PSh}(C)$ is a colimit of objects of C , viewed as representable presheaves $h_X \in \text{Obj}(\text{PSh}(C))$.

005L Proposition 2.4.1.1.3. Let X be a set.

(1) *The Inclusion of Characteristic Relations Associated to a Function.*

005M Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function. We have an inclusion²⁹

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times A & \xrightarrow{f \times f} & B \times B \\ \chi_B \circ (f \times f) \subset \chi_A, & \swarrow \curvearrowright \searrow & \chi_B \\ & \{t, f\}. & \end{array}$$

005N (2) *Interaction With Unions I.* We have

$$\chi_{U \cup V} = \max(\chi_U, \chi_V)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

005P (3) *Interaction With Unions II.* We have

$$\chi_{U \cup V} = \chi_U + \chi_V - \chi_{U \cap V}$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

005Q (4) *Interaction With Intersections I.* We have

$$\chi_{U \cap V} = \chi_U \chi_V$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

005R (5) *Interaction With Intersections II.* We have

$$\chi_{U \cap V} = \min(\chi_U, \chi_V)$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

005S (6) *Interaction With Differences.* We have

$$\chi_{U \setminus V} = \chi_U - \chi_{U \cap V}$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

005T (7) *Interaction With Complements.* We have

$$\chi_{U^c} = 1 - \chi_U$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

005U (8) *Interaction With Symmetric Differences.* We have

$$\chi_{U \Delta V} = \chi_U + \chi_V - 2\chi_{U \cap V}$$

and thus, in particular, we have

$$\chi_{U \Delta V} \equiv \chi_U + \chi_V \pmod{2}$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(X)$.

Proof. *Item 1, The Inclusion of Characteristic Relations Associated to a Function:* The inclusion $\chi_B(f(a), f(b)) \subset \chi_A(a, b)$ is equivalent to the statement “if $a = b$, then $f(a) = f(b)$ ”, which is true.

²⁹This is the 0-categorical version of ??.

Item 2, Interaction With Unions I: This is a repetition of [Item 8](#) of [Proposition 2.3.6.1.2](#) and is proved there.

Item 3, Interaction With Unions II: This is a repetition of [Item 9](#) of [Proposition 2.3.6.1.2](#) and is proved there.

Item 4, Interaction With Intersections I: This is a repetition of [Item 9](#) of [Proposition 2.3.8.1.2](#) and is proved there.

Item 5, Interaction With Intersections II: This is a repetition of [Item 10](#) of [Proposition 2.3.8.1.2](#) and is proved there.

Item 6, Interaction With Differences: This is a repetition of [Item 15](#) of [Proposition 2.3.9.1.2](#) and is proved there.

Item 7, Interaction With Complements: This is a repetition of [Item 4](#) of [Proposition 2.3.10.1.2](#) and is proved there.

Item 8, Interaction With Symmetric Differences: This is a repetition of [Item 14](#) of [Proposition 2.3.11.1.2](#) and is proved there. \square

2.4.2. The Yoneda Lemma for Sets. Let X be a set and let $U \subset X$ be a subset of X .

005W Proposition 2.4.2.1.1. We have

$$\chi_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(\chi_x, \chi_U) = \chi_U(x)$$

for each $x \in X$, giving an equality of functions

$$\chi_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(\chi_{(-)}, \chi_U) = \chi_U.$$

Proof. Clear. \square

005X Corollary 2.4.2.1.2. The characteristic embedding is fully faithful, i.e., we have

$$\chi_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(\chi_x, \chi_y) = \chi_X(x, y)$$

for each $x, y \in X$.

Proof. This follows from [Proposition 2.4.2.1.1](#). \square

2.4.3. Powersets. Let X be a set.

005Z Definition 2.4.3.1.1. The **powerset of X** is the set $\mathcal{P}(X)$ defined by

$$\mathcal{P}(X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{U \in P \mid U \subset X\},$$

where P is the set in the axiom of powerset, ?? of ??.

006O Remark 2.4.3.1.2. The powerset of a set is a decategorification of the category of presheaves of a category: while³⁰

³⁰This parallel is based on the following comparison:

- A category is enriched over the category

$$\text{Sets} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Cats}_0$$

of sets (i.e. “0-categories”), with presheaves taking values on it;

- A set is enriched over the set

$$\{t, f\} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Cats}_{-1}$$

of classical truth values (i.e. “(-1)-categories”), with characteristic functions taking values on it.

- The powerset of a set X is equivalently (Item 6 of Proposition 2.4.3.1.3) the set

$$\text{Sets}(X, \{\text{t}, \text{f}\})$$

of functions from X to the set $\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$ of classical truth values;

- The category of presheaves on a category C is the category

$$\text{Fun}(C^{\text{op}}, \text{Sets})$$

of functors from C^{op} to the category Sets of sets.

0061 Proposition 2.4.3.1.3. Let X be a set.

0062 (1) Functoriality. The assignment $X \mapsto \mathcal{P}(X)$ defines functors

$$\mathcal{P}_*: \text{Sets} \rightarrow \text{Sets},$$

$$\mathcal{P}^{-1}: \text{Sets}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Sets},$$

$$\mathcal{P}_!: \text{Sets} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, we have

$$\mathcal{P}_*(A) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathcal{P}(A),$$

$$\mathcal{P}^{-1}(A) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathcal{P}(A),$$

$$\mathcal{P}_!(A) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathcal{P}(A);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ of Sets , the images

$$\mathcal{P}_*(f): \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B),$$

$$\mathcal{P}^{-1}(f): \mathcal{P}(B) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A),$$

$$\mathcal{P}_!(f): \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$$

of f by \mathcal{P}_* , \mathcal{P}^{-1} , and $\mathcal{P}_!$ are defined by

$$\mathcal{P}_*(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f_*,$$

$$\mathcal{P}^{-1}(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f^{-1},$$

$$\mathcal{P}_!(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f_!,$$

as in Definitions 2.4.4.1.1, 2.4.5.1.1 and 2.4.6.1.1.

0063 (2) Adjointness I. We have an adjunction

$$(\mathcal{P}^{-1} \dashv \mathcal{P}^{-1,\text{op}}): \text{Sets}^{\text{op}} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\mathcal{P}^{-1}} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\mathcal{P}^{-1,\text{op}}} \end{array} \text{Sets},$$

witnessed by a bijection

$$\underbrace{\text{Sets}^{\text{op}}(\mathcal{P}(X), Y)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Sets}(Y, \mathcal{P}(X))} \cong \text{Sets}(X, \mathcal{P}(Y)),$$

natural in $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and $Y \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets}^{\text{op}})$.

0064 (3) Adjointness II. We have an adjunction

$$(\text{Gr} \dashv \mathcal{P}_*): \text{Sets} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\text{Gr}} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\mathcal{P}_*} \end{array} \text{Rel},$$

witnessed by a bijection of sets

$$\text{Rel}(\text{Gr}(A), B) \cong \text{Sets}(A, \mathcal{P}(B))$$

natural in $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and $B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Rel})$, where Gr is the graph functor of ?? of ??.

- 0065 (4) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Coproducts.* The powerset functor \mathcal{P}_* of Item 1 has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$\left(\mathcal{P}_*, \mathcal{P}_*^{\coprod}, \mathcal{P}_{*\sqcup}^{\coprod} \right): (\text{Sets}, \coprod, \emptyset) \rightarrow (\text{Sets}, \times, \text{pt})$$

being equipped with isomorphisms

$$\mathcal{P}_{*|X,Y}^{\coprod}: \mathcal{P}(X) \times \mathcal{P}(Y) \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathcal{P}(X \coprod Y),$$

$$\mathcal{P}_{*\sqcup}^{\coprod}: \text{pt} \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathcal{P}(\emptyset),$$

natural in $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

- 0066 (5) *Symmetric Lax Monoidality With Respect to Products.* The powerset functor \mathcal{P}_* of Item 1 has a symmetric lax monoidal structure

$$\left(\mathcal{P}_*, \mathcal{P}_*^{\otimes}, \mathcal{P}_{*\sqcup}^{\otimes} \right): (\text{Sets}, \times, \text{pt}) \rightarrow (\text{Sets}, \times, \text{pt})$$

being equipped with isomorphisms

$$\mathcal{P}_{*|X,Y}^{\otimes}: \mathcal{P}(X) \times \mathcal{P}(Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(X \times Y),$$

$$\mathcal{P}_{*\sqcup}^{\otimes}: \text{pt} \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathcal{P}(\emptyset),$$

natural in $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, where $\mathcal{P}_{*|X,Y}^{\otimes}$ is given by

$$\mathcal{P}_{*|X,Y}^{\otimes}(U, V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} U \times V$$

for each $(U, V) \in \mathcal{P}(X) \times \mathcal{P}(Y)$.

- 0067 (6) *Powersets as Sets of Functions.* The assignment $U \mapsto \chi_U$ defines a bijection³¹

$$\chi_{(-)}: \mathcal{P}(X) \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{Sets}(X, \{\text{t}, \text{f}\}),$$

natural in $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

- 0068 (7) *Powersets as Sets of Relations.* We have bijections

$$\mathcal{P}(X) \cong \text{Rel}(\text{pt}, X),$$

$$\mathcal{P}(X) \cong \text{Rel}(X, \text{pt}),$$

natural in $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

- 0069 (8) *As a Free Cocompletion: Universal Property.* The pair $(\mathcal{P}(X), \chi_{(-)})$ consisting of

- The powerset $\mathcal{P}(X)$ of X ;

³¹This bijection is a decategorified form of the equivalence

$$\text{PSh}(C) \xrightarrow{\text{eq.}} \text{DFib}(C)$$

of ?? of ??, with $\chi_{(-)}$ being a decategorified version of the category of elements construction of ??.

See also ?? of ??.

- The characteristic embedding $\chi_{(-)}: X \hookrightarrow \mathcal{P}(X)$ of X into $\mathcal{P}(X)$;

satisfies the following universal property:

- (*) Given another pair (Y, f) consisting of

- A cocomplete poset (Y, \preceq) ;
- A function $f: X \rightarrow Y$;

there exists a unique cocontinuous morphism of posets $(\mathcal{P}(X), \subset) \xrightarrow{\exists!} (Y, \preceq)$ making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \mathcal{P}(X) & \\ \chi_X \nearrow & & \downarrow \exists! \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

commute.

006A (9) *As a Free Cocompletion: Adjointness.* We have an adjunction³²

$$(\chi_{(-)} \dashv \text{忘}): \text{Sets} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\chi_{(-)}} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\text{忘}} \end{array} \text{Pos}^{\text{cocomp}},$$

witnessed by a bijection

$$\text{Pos}^{\text{cocomp}}((\mathcal{P}(X), \subset), (Y, \preceq)) \cong \text{Sets}(X, Y),$$

natural in $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and $(Y, \preceq) \in \text{Obj}(\text{Pos})$, where

- We have a natural map

$$\chi_X^*: \text{Pos}^{\text{cocomp}}((\mathcal{P}(X), \subset), (Y, \preceq)) \rightarrow \text{Sets}(X, Y)$$

defined by

$$\chi_X^*(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f \circ \chi_X,$$

i.e. by sending a cocontinuous morphism of posets $f: \mathcal{P}(X) \rightarrow Y$ to the composition

$$X \xrightarrow{\chi_X} \mathcal{P}(X) \xrightarrow{f} Y;$$

- We have a natural map

$$\text{Lan}_{\chi_X}: \text{Sets}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Pos}^{\text{cocomp}}((\mathcal{P}(X), \subset), (Y, \preceq))$$

computed by

$$\begin{aligned} [\text{Lan}_{\chi_X}(f)](U) &\cong \int^{x \in X} \chi_{\mathcal{P}(X)}(\chi_x, U) \odot f(x) \\ (\text{by Proposition 2.4.2.1.1}) &\cong \int^{x \in X} \chi_U(x) \odot f(x) \\ &\cong \bigvee_{x \in X} (\chi_U(x) \odot f(x)) \end{aligned}$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(X)$, where:

- \bigvee is the join in (Y, \preceq) ;

³²In this sense, $\mathcal{P}(A)$ is the free cocompletion of A . (Note that, despite its name, however, this is not an idempotent operation, as we have $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{P}(A)) \neq \mathcal{P}(A)$.)

– We have

$$\begin{aligned}\text{true} \odot f(x) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f(x), \\ \text{false} \odot f(x) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \emptyset_Y,\end{aligned}$$

where \emptyset_Y is the minimal element of (Y, \preceq) .

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* This follows from Items 3 and 4 of Proposition 2.4.4.1.4, Items 3 and 4 of Proposition 2.4.5.1.4, and Items 3 and 4 of Proposition 2.4.6.1.6.

Item 2, Adjointness I: Omitted.

Item 3, Adjointness II: We have

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Rel}(\text{Gr}(A), B) &= \mathcal{P}(A \times B) \\ (\text{by Item 6}) \quad &= \text{Sets}(A \times B, \{\text{t}, \text{f}\}) \\ (\text{by Item 2 of Proposition 2.1.2.1.2}) \quad &= \text{Sets}(A, \text{Sets}(B, \{\text{t}, \text{f}\})) \\ (\text{by Item 6}) \quad &= \text{Sets}(A, \mathcal{P}(B))\end{aligned}$$

with all bijections natural in A and B .

Item 4, Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Coproducts: Omitted.

Item 5, Symmetric Lax Monoidality With Respect to Products: Omitted.

Item 6, Powersets as Sets of Functions: Omitted.

Item 7, Powersets as Sets of Relations: Omitted.

Item 8, As a Free Cocompletion: Universal Property: This is a rephrasing of ??.

Item 9, As a Free Cocompletion: Adjointness: Omitted. \square

2.4.4. Direct Images. Let A and B be sets and let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

006C Definition 2.4.4.1.1. The direct image function associated to f is the function³³

$$f_*: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$$

defined by^{34,35}

$$\begin{aligned}f_*(U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f(U) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ b \in B \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{there exists some } a \in U \\ \text{such that } b = f(a) \end{array} \right\} \\ &= \{f(a) \in B \mid a \in U\}\end{aligned}$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

006D Remark 2.4.4.1.2. Identifying subsets of A with functions from A to $\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$ via Item 6 of Proposition 2.4.3.1.3, we see that the direct image

³³Further Notation: Also written $\exists_f: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$. This notation comes from the fact that the following statements are equivalent, where $b \in B$ and $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$:

- We have $b \in \exists_f(U)$.
- There exists some $a \in U$ such that $f(a) = b$.

³⁴Further Terminology: The set $f(U)$ is called the **direct image of U by f** .

³⁵We also have

$$f_*(U) = B \setminus f_!(A \setminus U);$$

see Item 7 of Proposition 2.4.4.1.3.

function associated to f is equivalently the function

$$f_*: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$$

defined by

$$\begin{aligned} f_*(\chi_U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Lan}_f(\chi_U) \\ &= \text{colim} \left(\left(f \times \underline{(-1)} \right) \xrightarrow{\text{pr}} A \xrightarrow{\chi_U} \{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\} \right) \\ &= \underset{\substack{a \in A \\ f(a) = -1}}{\text{colim}} (\chi_U(a)) \\ &= \bigvee_{\substack{a \in A \\ f(a) = -1}} (\chi_U(a)). \end{aligned}$$

So, in other words, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [f_*(\chi_U)](b) &= \bigvee_{\substack{a \in A \\ f(a) = b}} (\chi_U(a)) \\ &= \begin{cases} \text{true} & \text{if there exists some } a \in A \text{ such} \\ & \quad \text{that } f(a) = b \text{ and } a \in U, \\ \text{false} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \\ &= \begin{cases} \text{true} & \text{if there exists some } a \in U \\ & \quad \text{such that } f(a) = b, \\ \text{false} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

for each $b \in B$.

006E Proposition 2.4.4.1.3. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

006F (1) Functoriality. The assignment $U \mapsto f_*(U)$ defines a functor

$$f_*: (\mathcal{P}(A), \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \subset)$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$, we have

$$[f_*](U) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f_*(U);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$:

(*) If $U \subset V$, then $f_*(U) \subset f_*(V)$.

006G (2) Triple Adjointness. We have a triple adjunction

$$(f_* \dashv f^{-1} \dashv f_!): \mathcal{P}(A) \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{f_*} \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\perp} \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{f^{-1}} \end{array} \mathcal{P}(B), \quad \mathcal{P}(B) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{f^{-1}} \\[-1ex] \xrightarrow{\perp} \\[-1ex] \xrightarrow{f_!} \end{array} \mathcal{P}(A),$$

witnessed by bijections of sets

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(B)}(f_*(U), V) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(U, f^{-1}(V)),$$

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(f^{-1}(U), V) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(B)}(U, f_!(V)),$$

natural in $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ and $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$ and (respectively) $V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ and $U \in \mathcal{P}(B)$, i.e. where:

- (a) The following conditions are equivalent:
 - (i) We have $f_*(U) \subset V$.
 - (ii) We have $U \subset f^{-1}(V)$.
- (b) The following conditions are equivalent:
 - (i) We have $f^{-1}(U) \subset V$.
 - (ii) We have $U \subset f_!(V)$.

006H (3) *Preservation of Colimits.* We have an equality of sets

$$f_* \left(\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i \right) = \bigcup_{i \in I} f_*(U_i),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(A)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have equalities

$$\begin{aligned} f_*(U) \cup f_*(V) &= f_*(U \cup V), \\ f_*(\emptyset) &= \emptyset, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

006J (4) *Oplax Preservation of Limits.* We have an inclusion of sets

$$f_* \left(\bigcap_{i \in I} U_i \right) \subset \bigcap_{i \in I} f_*(U_i),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(A)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have inclusions

$$\begin{aligned} f_*(U \cap V) &\subset f_*(U) \cap f_*(V), \\ f_*(A) &\subset B, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

006K (5) *Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Unions.* The direct image function of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric strict monoidal structure

$$(f_*, f_*^\otimes, f_{*\mid\mathbb{P}}^\otimes): (\mathcal{P}(A), \cup, \emptyset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \cup, \emptyset),$$

being equipped with equalities

$$\begin{aligned} f_{*|U,V}^\otimes: f_*(U) \cup f_*(V) &\xrightarrow{\sim} f_*(U \cup V), \\ f_{*\mid\mathbb{P}}^\otimes: \emptyset &\xrightarrow{\sim} \emptyset, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

006L (6) *Symmetric Oplax Monoidality With Respect to Intersections.* The direct image function of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric oplax monoidal structure

$$(f_*, f_*^\otimes, f_{*\mid\mathbb{P}}^\otimes): (\mathcal{P}(A), \cap, A) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \cap, B),$$

being equipped with inclusions

$$\begin{aligned} f_{*|U,V}^\otimes: f_*(U \cap V) &\hookrightarrow f_*(U) \cap f_*(V), \\ f_{*\mid\mathbb{P}}^\otimes: f_*(A) &\hookrightarrow B, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

006M (7) *Relation to Direct Images With Compact Support.* We have

$$f_*(U) = B \setminus f_!(A \setminus U)$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Clear.

Item 2, Triple Adjunction: This follows from ?? of ??.

Item 3, Preservation of Colimits: This follows from Item 2 and ?? of ??.

Item 4, Oplax Preservation of Limits: Omitted.

Item 5, Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Unions: This follows from Item 3.

Item 6, Symmetric Oplax Monoidality With Respect to Intersections: This follows from ??.

Item 7, Relation to Direct Images With Compact Support: Applying ?? of ?? to $A \setminus U$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f_!(A \setminus U) &= B \setminus f_*(A \setminus (A \setminus U)) \\ &= B \setminus f_*(U). \end{aligned}$$

Taking complements, we then obtain

$$\begin{aligned} f_*(U) &= B \setminus (B \setminus f_*(U)), \\ &= B \setminus f_!(A \setminus U), \end{aligned}$$

which finishes the proof. \square

006N Proposition 2.4.4.1.4. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

006P (1) *Functionality I.* The assignment $f \mapsto f_*$ defines a function

$$(-)_{*|A,B}: \mathbf{Sets}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}(\mathcal{P}(A), \mathcal{P}(B)).$$

006Q (2) *Functionality II.* The assignment $f \mapsto f_*$ defines a function

$$(-)_{*|A,B}: \mathbf{Sets}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Pos}((\mathcal{P}(A), \subset), (\mathcal{P}(B), \subset)).$$

006R (3) *Interaction With Identities.* For each $A \in \mathbf{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$, we have

$$(\text{id}_A)_* = \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(A)};$$

006S (4) *Interaction With Composition.* For each pair of composable functions $f: A \rightarrow B$ and $g: B \rightarrow C$, we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}(A) & \xrightarrow{f_*} & \mathcal{P}(B) \\ (g \circ f)_* = g_* \circ f_*, & \searrow & \downarrow g_* \\ & & \mathcal{P}(C). \end{array}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functionality I:* Clear.

Item 2, Functionality II: Clear.

Item 3, Interaction With Identities: This follows from ?? of ??.

Item 4, Interaction With Composition: This follows from ?? of ??.

\square

2.4.5. Inverse Images. Let A and B be sets and let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

006U Definition 2.4.5.1.1. The **inverse image function associated to f** is the function³⁶

$$f^{-1}: \mathcal{P}(B) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$$

defined by³⁷

$$f^{-1}(V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid \text{we have } f(a) \in V\}$$

for each $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

006V Remark 2.4.5.1.2. Identifying subsets of B with functions from B to $\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$ via Item 6 of Proposition 2.4.3.1.3, we see that the inverse image function associated to f is equivalently the function

$$f^*: \mathcal{P}(B) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$$

defined by

$$f^*(\chi_V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \chi_V \circ f$$

for each $\chi_V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$, where $\chi_V \circ f$ is the composition

$$A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{\chi_V} \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$$

in Sets.

006W Proposition 2.4.5.1.3. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

006X (1) Functoriality. The assignment $V \mapsto f^{-1}(V)$ defines a functor

$$f^{-1}: (\mathcal{P}(B), \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(A), \subset)$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$, we have

$$[f^{-1}](V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f^{-1}(V);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$:

(*) If $U \subset V$, then $f^{-1}(U) \subset f^{-1}(V)$.

006Y (2) Triple Adjointness. We have a triple adjunction

$$(f_* \dashv f^{-1} \dashv f_!): \quad \mathcal{P}(A) \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{f_*} \\[-1ex] \perp \\[-1ex] \xrightarrow{f^{-1}} \\[-1ex] \perp \\[-1ex] \xrightarrow{f_!} \end{array} \mathcal{P}(B),$$

witnessed by bijections of sets

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(B)}(f_*(U), V) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(U, f^{-1}(V)),$$

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(f^{-1}(U), V) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(B)}(U, f_!(V)),$$

natural in $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ and $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$ and (respectively) $V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ and $U \in \mathcal{P}(B)$, i.e. where:

- (a) The following conditions are equivalent:

- (i) We have $f_*(U) \subset V$;
- (ii) We have $U \subset f^{-1}(V)$;

- (b) The following conditions are equivalent:

³⁶Further Notation: Also written $f^*: \mathcal{P}(B) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$.

³⁷Further Terminology: The set $f^{-1}(V)$ is called the **inverse image of V by f** .

- (i) We have $f^{-1}(U) \subset V$.
- (ii) We have $U \subset f_!(V)$.

006Z (3) *Preservation of Colimits.* We have an equality of sets

$$f^{-1}\left(\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i\right) = \bigcup_{i \in I} f^{-1}(U_i),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(B)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have equalities

$$\begin{aligned} f^{-1}(U) \cup f^{-1}(V) &= f^{-1}(U \cup V), \\ f^{-1}(\emptyset) &= \emptyset, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

0070 (4) *Preservation of Limits.* We have an equality of sets

$$f^{-1}\left(\bigcap_{i \in I} U_i\right) = \bigcap_{i \in I} f^{-1}(U_i),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(B)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have equalities

$$\begin{aligned} f^{-1}(U) \cap f^{-1}(V) &= f^{-1}(U \cap V), \\ f^{-1}(B) &= A, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

0071 (5) *Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Unions.* The inverse image function of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric strict monoidal structure

$$(f^{-1}, f^{-1,\otimes}, f_{\mathbb{1}}^{-1,\otimes}) : (\mathcal{P}(B), \cup, \emptyset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(A), \cup, \emptyset),$$

being equipped with equalities

$$\begin{aligned} f_{U,V}^{-1,\otimes} : f^{-1}(U) \cup f^{-1}(V) &\rightrightarrows f^{-1}(U \cup V), \\ f_{\mathbb{1}}^{-1,\otimes} : \emptyset &\rightrightarrows f^{-1}(\emptyset), \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

0072 (6) *Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Intersections.* The inverse image function of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric strict monoidal structure

$$(f^{-1}, f^{-1,\otimes}, f_{\mathbb{1}}^{-1,\otimes}) : (\mathcal{P}(B), \cap, B) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(A), \cap, A),$$

being equipped with equalities

$$\begin{aligned} f_{U,V}^{-1,\otimes} : f^{-1}(U) \cap f^{-1}(V) &\rightrightarrows f^{-1}(U \cap V), \\ f_{\mathbb{1}}^{-1,\otimes} : A &\rightrightarrows f^{-1}(B), \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

Proof. [Item 1](#), *Functionality:* Clear.

[Item 2](#), *Triple Adjunctions:* This follows from ?? of ??.

[Item 3](#), *Preservation of Colimits:* This follows from [Item 2](#) and ?? of ??.

[Item 4](#), *Preservation of Limits:* This follows from [Item 2](#) and ?? of ??.

[Item 5](#), *Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Unions:* This follows from [Item 3](#).

Item 6, Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Intersections: This follows from Item 4. \square

0073 **Proposition 2.4.5.1.4.** Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

0074 (1) *Functionality I.* The assignment $f \mapsto f^{-1}$ defines a function

$$(-)_{A,B}^{-1}: \mathbf{Sets}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}(\mathcal{P}(B), \mathcal{P}(A)).$$

0075 (2) *Functionality II.* The assignment $f \mapsto f^{-1}$ defines a function

$$(-)_{A,B}^{-1}: \mathbf{Sets}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Pos}((\mathcal{P}(B), \subset), (\mathcal{P}(A), \subset)).$$

0076 (3) *Interaction With Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$, we have

$$\text{id}_A^{-1} = \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(A)};$$

0077 (4) *Interaction With Composition.* For each pair of composable functions $f: A \rightarrow B$ and $g: B \rightarrow C$, we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}(C) & \xrightarrow{g^{-1}} & \mathcal{P}(B) \\ (g \circ f)^{-1} = f^{-1} \circ g^{-1}, & \searrow^{(g \circ f)^{-1}} & \downarrow f^{-1} \\ & & \mathcal{P}(A). \end{array}$$

Proof. Item 1, Functionality I: Clear.

Item 2, Functionality II: Clear.

Item 3, Interaction With Identities: This follows from ?? of ??.

Item 4, Interaction With Composition: This follows from ?? of ??.

\square

2.4.6. Direct Images With Compact Support. Let A and B be sets and let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

0079 **Definition 2.4.6.1.1.** The **direct image with compact support function associated to f** is the function³⁸

$$f_!: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$$

defined by^{39,40}

$$\begin{aligned} f_!(U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ b \in B \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{for each } a \in A, \text{ if we have} \\ f(a) = b, \text{ then } a \in U \end{array} \right\} \\ &= \left\{ b \in B \mid \text{we have } f^{-1}(b) \subset U \right\} \end{aligned}$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

³⁸Further Notation: Also written $\forall_f: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$. This notation comes from the fact that the following statements are equivalent, where $b \in B$ and $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$:

- We have $b \in \forall_f(U)$.
- For each $a \in A$, if $b = f(a)$, then $a \in U$.

³⁹Further Terminology: The set $f_!(U)$ is called the **direct image with compact support of U by f** .

⁴⁰We also have

$$f_!(U) = B \setminus f_*(A \setminus U);$$

see Item 7 of Proposition 2.4.6.1.5.

007A Remark 2.4.6.1.2. Identifying subsets of A with functions from A to $\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$ via Item 6 of Proposition 2.4.3.1.3, we see that the direct image with compact support function associated to f is equivalently the function

$$f_! : \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$$

defined by

$$\begin{aligned} f_!(\chi_U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Ran}_f(\chi_U) \\ &= \lim \left(\left(\underline{(-1)} \xrightarrow{\rightarrow} f \right) \xrightarrow{\text{pr}} A \xrightarrow{\chi_U} \{\text{true}, \text{false}\} \right) \\ &= \lim_{\substack{a \in A \\ f(a) = -1}} (\chi_U(a)) \\ &= \bigwedge_{\substack{a \in A \\ f(a) = -1}} (\chi_U(a)). \end{aligned}$$

So, in other words, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [f_!(\chi_U)](b) &= \bigwedge_{\substack{a \in A \\ f(a) = b}} (\chi_U(a)) \\ &= \begin{cases} \text{true} & \text{if, for each } a \in A \text{ such that} \\ & f(a) = b, \text{ we have } a \in U, \\ \text{false} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \\ &= \begin{cases} \text{true} & \text{if } f^{-1}(b) \subset U \\ \text{false} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

for each $b \in B$.

007B Definition 2.4.6.1.3. Let U be a subset of A .^{41,42}

- (1) The **image part of the direct image with compact support** $f_!(U)$ **of** U is the set $f_{!,\text{im}}(U)$ defined by

$$\begin{aligned} f_{!,\text{im}}(U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f_!(U) \cap \text{Im}(f) \\ &= \left\{ b \in B \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{we have } f^{-1}(b) \subset \\ U \text{ and } f^{-1}(b) \neq \emptyset \end{array} \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

⁴¹Note that we have

$$f_!(U) = f_{!,\text{im}}(U) \cup f_{!,\text{cp}}(U),$$

as

$$\begin{aligned} f_!(U) &= f_!(U) \cap B \\ &= f_!(U) \cap (\text{Im}(f) \cup (B \setminus \text{Im}(f))) \\ &= (f_!(U) \cap \text{Im}(f)) \cup (f_!(U) \cap (B \setminus \text{Im}(f))) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f_{!,\text{im}}(U) \cup f_{!,\text{cp}}(U). \end{aligned}$$

⁴²In terms of the meet computation of $f_!(U)$ of Remark 2.4.6.1.2, namely

$$f_!(\chi_U) = \bigwedge_{\substack{a \in A \\ f(a) = -1}} (\chi_U(a)),$$

we see that $f_{!,\text{im}}$ corresponds to meets indexed over nonempty sets, while $f_{!,\text{cp}}$ corresponds to meets indexed over the empty set.

- (2) The **complement part of the direct image with compact support** $f_!(U)$ of U is the set $f_{!,cp}(U)$ defined by

$$\begin{aligned} f_{!,cp}(U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f_!(U) \cap (B \setminus \text{Im}(f)) \\ &= B \setminus \text{Im}(f) \\ &= \left\{ b \in B \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{we have } f^{-1}(b) \subset \\ U \text{ and } f^{-1}(b) = \emptyset \end{array} \right\} \\ &= \left\{ b \in B \mid f^{-1}(b) = \emptyset \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

007C Example 2.4.6.1.4. Here are some examples of direct images with compact support.

- (1) *The Multiplication by Two Map on the Natural Numbers.* Consider the function $f: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ given by

$$f(n) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 2n$$

for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Since f is injective, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f_{!,im}(U) &= f_*(U) \\ f_{!,cp}(U) &= \{\text{odd natural numbers}\} \end{aligned}$$

for any $U \subset \mathbb{N}$.

- (2) *Parabolas.* Consider the function $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$f(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} x^2$$

for each $x \in \mathbb{R}$. We have

$$f_{!,cp}(U) = \mathbb{R}_{<0}$$

for any $U \subset \mathbb{R}$. Moreover, since $f^{-1}(x) = \{-\sqrt{x}, \sqrt{x}\}$, we have e.g.:

$$\begin{aligned} f_{!,im}([0, 1]) &= \{0\}, \\ f_{!,im}([-1, 1]) &= [0, 1], \\ f_{!,im}([1, 2]) &= \emptyset, \\ f_{!,im}([-2, -1] \cup [1, 2]) &= [1, 4]. \end{aligned}$$

- (3) *Circles.* Consider the function $f: \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$f(x, y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} x^2 + y^2$$

for each $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$. We have

$$f_{!,cp}(U) = \mathbb{R}_{<0}$$

for any $U \subset \mathbb{R}^2$, and since

$$f^{-1}(r) = \begin{cases} \text{a circle of radius } r \text{ about the origin} & \text{if } r > 0, \\ \{(0, 0)\} & \text{if } r = 0, \\ \emptyset & \text{if } r < 0, \end{cases}$$

we have e.g.:

$$\begin{aligned} f_{!,im}([-1, 1] \times [-1, 1]) &= [0, 1], \\ f_{!,im}(([-1, 1] \times [-1, 1]) \setminus [-1, 1] \times \{0\}) &= \emptyset. \end{aligned}$$

007D Proposition 2.4.6.1.5. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

007E

- (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $U \mapsto f_!(U)$ defines a functor

$$f_! : (\mathcal{P}(A), \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \subset)$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$, we have

$$[f_!](U) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f_!(U);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$:

(*) If $U \subset V$, then $f_!(U) \subset f_!(V)$.

007F

- (2) *Triple Adjointness.* We have a triple adjunction

$$(f_* \dashv f^{-1} \dashv f_!): \mathcal{P}(A) \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{\quad \perp \quad} \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\quad f^{-1} \quad} \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\quad \perp \quad} \end{array} \mathcal{P}(B), \quad f_!$$

witnessed by bijections of sets

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(B)}(f_*(U), V) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(U, f^{-1}(V)),$$

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(f^{-1}(U), V) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(U, f_!(V)),$$

natural in $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ and $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$ and (respectively) $V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ and $U \in \mathcal{P}(B)$, i.e. where:

- (a) The following conditions are equivalent:

- (i) We have $f_*(U) \subset V$;
- (ii) We have $U \subset f^{-1}(V)$;

- (b) The following conditions are equivalent:

- (i) We have $f^{-1}(U) \subset V$.
- (ii) We have $U \subset f_!(V)$.

007G

- (3) *Lax Preservation of Colimits.* We have an inclusion of sets

$$\bigcup_{i \in I} f_!(U_i) \subset f_! \left(\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i \right),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(A)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have inclusions

$$f_!(U) \cup f_!(V) \hookrightarrow f_!(U \cup V),$$

$$\emptyset \hookrightarrow f_!(\emptyset),$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

007H

- (4) *Preservation of Limits.* We have an equality of sets

$$f_! \left(\bigcap_{i \in I} U_i \right) = \bigcap_{i \in I} f_!(U_i),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(A)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have equalities

$$f^{-1}(U \cap V) = f_!(U) \cap f^{-1}(V),$$

$$f_!(A) = B,$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

007J

- (5) *Symmetric Lax Monoidality With Respect to Unions.* The direct image with compact support function of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric

lax monoidal structure

$$(f_!, f_!^\otimes, f_{!|\wp}^\otimes) : (\mathcal{P}(A), \cup, \emptyset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \cup, \emptyset),$$

being equipped with inclusions

$$\begin{aligned} f_{!|U,V}^\otimes &: f_!(U) \cup f_!(V) \hookrightarrow f_!(U \cup V), \\ f_{!|\wp}^\otimes &: \emptyset \hookrightarrow f_!(\emptyset), \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

- 007K** (6) *Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Intersections.* The direct image function of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric strict monoidal structure

$$(f_!, f_!^\otimes, f_{!|\wp}^\otimes) : (\mathcal{P}(A), \cap, A) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \cap, B),$$

being equipped with equalities

$$\begin{aligned} f_{!|U,V}^\otimes &: f_!(U \cap V) \xrightarrow{\cong} f_!(U) \cap f_!(V), \\ f_{!|\wp}^\otimes &: f_!(A) \xrightarrow{\cong} B, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

- 007L** (7) *Relation to Direct Images.* We have

$$f_!(U) = B \setminus f_*(A \setminus U)$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

- 007M** (8) *Interaction With Injections.* If f is injective, then we have

$$\begin{aligned} f_{!,\text{im}}(U) &= f_*(U), \\ f_{!,\text{cp}}(U) &= B \setminus \text{Im}(f), \\ f_!(U) &= f_{!,\text{im}}(U) \cup f_{!,\text{cp}}(U) \\ &= f_*(U) \cup (B \setminus \text{Im}(f)) \end{aligned}$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

- 007N** (9) *Interaction With Surjections.* If f is surjective, then we have

$$\begin{aligned} f_{!,\text{im}}(U) &\subset f_*(U), \\ f_{!,\text{cp}}(U) &= \emptyset, \\ f_!(U) &\subset f_*(U) \end{aligned}$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

Proof. [Item 1](#), *Functionality:* Clear.

[Item 2](#), *Triple Adjunctions:* This follows from ?? of ??.

[Item 3](#), *Lax Preservation of Colimits:* Omitted.

[Item 4](#), *Preservation of Limits:* Omitted. This follows from [Item 2](#) and ?? of ??.

[Item 5](#), *Symmetric Lax Monoidality With Respect to Unions:* This follows from ??.

[Item 6](#), *Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Intersections:* This follows from [Item 4](#).

[Item 7](#), *Relation to Direct Images:* We claim that $f_!(U) = B \setminus f_*(A \setminus U)$.

- *The First Implication.* We claim that

$$f_!(U) \subset B \setminus f_*(A \setminus U).$$

Let $b \in f_!(U)$. We need to show that $b \notin f_*(A \setminus U)$, i.e. that there is no $a \in A \setminus U$ such that $f(a) = b$.

This is indeed the case, as otherwise we would have $a \in f^{-1}(b)$ and $a \notin U$, contradicting $f^{-1}(b) \subset U$ (which holds since $b \in f_!(U)$).

Thus $b \in B \setminus f_*(A \setminus U)$.

- *The Second Implication.* We claim that

$$B \setminus f_*(A \setminus U) \subset f_!(U).$$

Let $b \in B \setminus f_*(A \setminus U)$. We need to show that $b \in f_!(U)$, i.e. that $f^{-1}(b) \subset U$.

Since $b \notin f_*(A \setminus U)$, there exists no $a \in A \setminus U$ such that $b = f(a)$, and hence $f^{-1}(b) \subset U$.

Thus $b \in f_!(U)$.

This finishes the proof of [Item 7](#).

[Item 8, Interaction With Injections:](#) Clear.

[Item 9, Interaction With Surjections:](#) Clear. \square

007P Proposition 2.4.6.1.6. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

007Q (1) *Functionality I.* The assignment $f \mapsto f_!$ defines a function

$$(-)_{!|A,B}: \mathbf{Sets}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}(\mathcal{P}(A), \mathcal{P}(B)).$$

007R (2) *Functionality II.* The assignment $f \mapsto f_!$ defines a function

$$(-)_{!|A,B}: \mathbf{Sets}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Pos}((\mathcal{P}(A), \subset), (\mathcal{P}(B), \subset)).$$

007S (3) *Interaction With Identities.* For each $A \in \mathbf{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$, we have

$$(\text{id}_A)_! = \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(A)};$$

007T (4) *Interaction With Composition.* For each pair of composable functions $f: A \rightarrow B$ and $g: B \rightarrow C$, we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}(A) & \xrightarrow{f_!} & \mathcal{P}(B) \\ (g \circ f)_! = g_! \circ f_!, & \searrow & \downarrow g_! \\ & & \mathcal{P}(C). \end{array}$$

Proof. [Item 1, Functionality I:](#) Clear.

[Item 2, Functionality II:](#) Clear.

[Item 3, Interaction With Identities:](#) This follows from ?? of ??.

[Item 4, Interaction With Composition:](#) This follows from ?? of ??.

\square

Appendices

2.A. Other Chapters

Sets	(1) Sets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
	(2) Constructions With Sets	Monoids With Zero
	(3) Pointed Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
	(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
	(5) Relations	Groups
	(6) Spans	(29) Groups
	(7) Posets	(30) Constructions With Groups
Indexed and Fibred Sets	(7) Indexed Sets	Hyper Algebra
	(8) Fibred Sets	(31) Hypermonoids
	(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(32) Hypergroups
Category Theory	(11) Categories	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
	(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(34) Quantales
	(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	Near-Rings
	(14) Constructions With Categories	(35) Near-Semirings
	(15) Profunctors	(36) Near-Rings
	(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	Real Analysis
	(17) Kan Extensions	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
Bicategories	(18) Bicategories	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
	(19) Internal Adjunctions	Measure Theory
Internal Category Theory	(20) Internal Categories	(39) Measurable Spaces
Cyclic Stuff	(21) The Cycle Category	(40) Measures and Integration
Cubical Stuff	(22) The Cube Category	Probability Theory
Globular Stuff	(23) The Globe Category	(40) Probability Theory
Cellular Stuff	(24) The Cell Category	Stochastic Analysis
Monoids	(25) Monoids	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
		(42) Itô Calculus
		(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
		Differential Geometry
		(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
		Schemes
		(45) Schemes

2.2. Other Chapters

Sets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
(1) Sets	
(2) Constructions With Sets	Monoids With Zero
(3) Pointed Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
(5) Relations	Groups
(6) Spans	(29) Groups
(7) Posets	(30) Constructions With Groups
Indexed and Fibred Sets	Hyper Algebra
(7) Indexed Sets	(31) Hypermonoids
(8) Fibred Sets	(32) Hypergroups
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
Category Theory	(34) Quantales
(11) Categories	Near-Rings
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(35) Near-Semirings
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	(36) Near-Rings
(14) Constructions With Categories	Real Analysis
(15) Profunctors	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
(17) Kan Extensions	Measure Theory
Bicategories	(39) Measurable Spaces
(18) Bicategories	(40) Measures and Integration
(19) Internal Adjunctions	Probability Theory
Internal Category Theory	(40) Probability Theory
(20) Internal Categories	Stochastic Analysis
Cyclic Stuff	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
(21) The Cycle Category	(42) Itô Calculus
Cubical Stuff	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
(22) The Cube Category	Differential Geometry
Globular Stuff	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
(23) The Globe Category	Schemes
Cellular Stuff	(45) Schemes
(24) The Cell Category	
Monoids	
(25) Monoids	

CHAPTER 3

Pointed Sets

007U This chapter contains some foundational material on pointed sets.

3.1. Pointed Sets

3.1.1. Foundations.

007X **Definition 3.1.1.1.1.** A **pointed set**¹ is equivalently

- An \mathbb{E}_0 -monoid in $(N_\bullet(\text{Sets}), \text{pt})$;
- A pointed object in (Sets, pt) .

007Y **Remark 3.1.1.1.2.** In detail, a **pointed set** is a pair (X, x_0) consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* A set X , called the **underlying set of** (X, x_0) ;
- *The Basepoint.* A morphism

$$[x_0]: \text{pt} \rightarrow X$$

in Sets , determining an element $x_0 \in X$, called the **basepoint of** X .

007Z **Example 3.1.1.1.3.** The **0-sphere**² is the pointed set $(S^0, 0)$ ³ consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The set S^0 defined by

$$S^0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{0, 1\};$$
- *The Basepoint.* The element 0 of S^0 .

0080 **Example 3.1.1.1.4.** The **trivial pointed set** is the pointed set (pt, \star) consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The punctual set $\text{pt} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\star\}$;
- *The Basepoint.* The element \star of pt .

0081 **Example 3.1.1.1.5.** The **underlying pointed set** of a semimodule (M, α_M) is the pointed set $(M, 0_M)$.

0082 **Example 3.1.1.1.6.** The **underlying pointed set** of a module (M, α_M) is the pointed set $(M, 0_M)$.

3.1.2. Morphisms of Pointed Sets.

0084 **Definition 3.1.2.1.1.** A **morphism of pointed sets**⁴ is equivalently

- A morphism of \mathbb{E}_0 -monoids in $(N_\bullet(\text{Sets}), \text{pt})$.

¹*Further Terminology:* Also called an **\mathbb{F}_1 -module**.

²*Further Terminology:* Also called the **underlying pointed set of the field with one element**.

³*Further Notation:* Also denoted $(\mathbb{F}_1, 0)$.

⁴*Further Terminology:* Also called a **pointed function** or a **morphism of \mathbb{F}_1 -modules**.

- A morphism of pointed objects in (Sets, pt) .

0085 Remark 3.1.2.1.2. In detail, a **morphism of pointed sets** $f: (X, x_0) \rightarrow (Y, y_0)$ is a morphism of sets $f: X \rightarrow Y$ such that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \text{pt} & \\ [x_0] & \swarrow & \searrow [y_0] \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. such that

$$f(x_0) = y_0.$$

3.1.3. The Category of Pointed Sets.

0087 Definition 3.1.3.1.1. The **category of pointed sets** is the category Sets_* defined equivalently as

- The homotopy category of the ∞ -category $\text{Mon}_{\mathbb{E}_0}(N_{\bullet}(\text{Sets}), \text{pt})$ of ??;
- The category Sets_* of ??.

0088 Remark 3.1.3.1.2. In detail, the **category of pointed sets** is the category Sets_* where

- *Objects.* The objects of Sets_* are pointed sets;
- *Morphisms.* The morphisms of Sets_* are morphisms of pointed sets;
- *Identities.* For each $(X, x_0) \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets}_*)$, the unit map

$$\text{id}_{(X, x_0)}^{\text{Sets}_*}: \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Sets}_*((X, x_0), (X, x_0))$$

of Sets_* at (X, x_0) is defined by⁵

$$\text{id}_{(X, x_0)}^{\text{Sets}_*} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_X;$$

- *Composition.* For each $(X, x_0), (Y, y_0), (Z, z_0) \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets}_*)$, the composition map

$$\circ_{(X, x_0), (Y, y_0), (Z, z_0)}^{\text{Sets}_*}: \text{Sets}_*((Y, y_0), (Z, z_0)) \times \text{Sets}_*((X, x_0), (Y, y_0)) \rightarrow \text{Sets}_*((X, x_0), (Z, z_0))$$

of Sets_* at $((X, x_0), (Y, y_0), (Z, z_0))$ is defined by⁶

$$g \circ_{(X, x_0), (Y, y_0), (Z, z_0)}^{\text{Sets}_*} f \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} g \circ f.$$

3.1.4. Elementary Properties of Pointed Sets.

⁵Note that id_X is indeed a morphism of pointed sets, as we have $\text{id}_X(x_0) = x_0$.

⁶Note that the composition of two morphisms of pointed sets is indeed a morphism of pointed sets, as we have

$$\begin{aligned} g(f(x_0)) &= g(y_0) \\ &= z_0, \end{aligned}$$

or

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \text{pt} & & \\ & [x_0] & \swarrow & \searrow [y_0] & [z_0] \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y & \xrightarrow{g} & Z \end{array}$$

in terms of diagrams.

008A Proposition 3.1.4.1.1. Let (X, x_0) be a pointed set.

008B (1) *Completeness.* The category Sets_* of pointed sets and morphisms between them is complete, having in particular products (Definition 3.2.1.1.1), pullbacks (Definition 3.2.3.1.1), and equalisers (Definition 3.2.2.1.1).

008C (2) *Cocompleteness.* The category Sets_* of pointed sets and morphisms between them is cocomplete, having in particular coproducts (Definition 3.3.1.1.1), pushouts (Definition 3.3.2.1.1), and coequalisers (Definition 3.3.3.1.1).

008D (3) *Failure To Be Cartesian Closed.* The category Sets_* is not Cartesian closed.

008E (4) *Relation to Partial Functions.* We have an equivalence of categories⁷

$$\text{Sets}_* \xrightarrow{\text{eq.}} \text{Sets}^{\text{part.}}$$

between the category of pointed sets and pointed functions between them and the category of sets and partial functions between them.

Proof. *Item 1, Completeness:* Omitted.

Item 2, Cocompleteness: Omitted.

Item 3, Failure To Be Cartesian Closed: See [MSE2855868].

Item 4, Relation to Partial Functions: Omitted. \square

3.2. Limits of Pointed Sets

3.2.1. Products. Let (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) be pointed sets.

008H Definition 3.2.1.1.1. The **product of** (X, x_0) **and** (Y, y_0) is the pointed set $(X \times Y, (x_0, y_0))$.

3.2.2. Equalisers. Let $f, g: (X, x_0) \rightrightarrows (Y, y_0)$ be morphisms of pointed sets.

008K Definition 3.2.2.1.1. The **equaliser of** (f, g) is the pointed set $(\text{Eq}_*(f, g), x_0)$ consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $\text{Eq}_*(f, g)$ defined by

$$\text{Eq}_*(f, g) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{x \in X \mid f(x) = y_0 = g(x)\};$$

- *The Basepoint.* The element x_0 of $\text{Eq}_*(f, g)$.

3.2.3. Pullbacks. Let (X, x_0) , (Y, y_0) , and (Z, z_0) be pointed sets and let $f: (X, x_0) \rightarrow (Z, z_0)$ and $g: (Y, y_0) \rightarrow (Z, z_0)$ be morphisms of pointed sets.

008M Definition 3.2.3.1.1. The **pullback of** (X, x_0) **and** (Y, y_0) **over** (Z, z_0) **along** (f, g) is the pointed set $((X, x_0) \times_{(z, z_0)} (Y, y_0), p_0)$ consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $(X, x_0) \times_{(z, z_0)} (Y, y_0)$ defined by

$$(X, x_0) \times_{(z, z_0)} (Y, y_0) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(x, y) \in X \times Y \mid f(x) = z_0 = g(y)\};$$

- *The Basepoint.* The element (x_0, y_0) of $(X, x_0) \times_{(z, z_0)} (Y, y_0)$.



Warning: This is not an isomorphism of categories, only an equivalence.

END TEXTDBEND

3.3. Colimits of Pointed Sets

3.3.1. Coproducts. Let (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) be pointed sets.

008Q Definition 3.3.1.1.1. The **coproduct of (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0)** is their wedge sum $(X \vee Y, p_0)$ of [Definition 3.4.3.1.1](#).

3.3.2. Pushouts. Let (X, x_0) , (Y, y_0) , and (Z, z_0) be pointed sets and let $f: (Z, z_0) \rightarrow (X, x_0)$ and $g: (Z, z_0) \rightarrow (Y, y_0)$ be morphisms of pointed sets.

008S Definition 3.3.2.1.1. The **pushout of (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) over (Z, z_0) along (f, g)** is the pointed set $(X \coprod_{f, Z, g} Y, p_0)$, where $p_0 = [x_0] = [y_0]$.

3.3.3. Coequalisers. Let $f, g: (X, x_0) \rightrightarrows (Y, y_0)$ be morphisms of pointed sets.

008U Definition 3.3.3.1.1. The **coequaliser of (f, g)** is the pointed set $(\text{CoEq}(f, g), x_0)$.

3.4. Constructions With Pointed Sets

3.4.1. Internal Hom. Let (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) be pointed sets.

008X Definition 3.4.1.1.1. The **pointed set of morphisms of pointed sets from (X, x_0) to (Y, y_0)** is the pointed set $\mathbf{Sets}_*((X, x_0), (Y, y_0))$ consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $\mathbf{Sets}_*((X, x_0), (Y, y_0))$ of morphisms of pointed sets from (X, x_0) to (Y, y_0) ;
- *The Basepoint.* The element

$$\Delta_{y_0}: (X, x_0) \rightarrow (Y, y_0)$$

of $\mathbf{Sets}_*((X, x_0), (Y, y_0))$.

3.4.2. Free Pointed Sets. Let X be a set.

008Z Definition 3.4.2.1.1. The **free pointed set on X** is the pointed set X^+ consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The set X^+ defined by
- $$X^+ \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X \coprod \text{pt};$$
- *The Basepoint.* The element \star of X^+ .

0090 Proposition 3.4.2.1.2. Let X be a set.

0091 (1) Functoriality. The assignment $X \mapsto X^+$ defines a functor

$$(-)^+: \mathbf{Sets} \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}_*,$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$, we have

$$[(-)^+](X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X_+,$$

where X_+ is the pointed set of [Definition 3.4.2.1.1](#);

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each morphism $f: X \rightarrow Y$ of \mathbf{Sets} , the image

$$f_+: X_+ \rightarrow Y_+$$

of f by $(-)^+$ is the map of pointed sets defined by

$$f^+(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} f(x) & \text{if } x \in X, \\ \star & \text{if } x = \star. \end{cases}$$

0092 (2) *Adjointness.* We have an adjunction

$$\left((-)^+ \dashv \text{忘} \right): \text{Sets} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{(-)^+} \\[-1ex] \perp \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\text{忘}} \end{array} \text{Sets}_*,$$

witnessed by a bijection of sets

$$\text{Sets}_*((X_+, \star), (Y, y_0)) \cong \text{Sets}(X, Y),$$

natural in $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and $(Y, y_0) \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets}_*)$.

0093 (3) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Wedge Sums.* The free pointed set functor of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$\left((-)^+, (-)^+, \coprod, (-)_{\not\approx}^+, \coprod \right): (\text{Sets}, \coprod, \emptyset) \rightarrow (\text{Sets}_*, \vee, \text{pt}),$$

being equipped with isomorphisms of pointed sets

$$\begin{aligned} (-)_{X,Y}^{+, \coprod}: X^+ \vee Y^+ &\xrightarrow{\cong} (X \coprod Y)^+, \\ (-)_{\not\approx}^+, \coprod: \text{pt} &\xrightarrow{\cong} \emptyset^+, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

(4) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Smash Products.*

0094 The free pointed set functor of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$\left((-)^+, (-)^{+, \times}, (-)_{\not\approx}^{+, \times} \right): (\text{Sets}, \times, \text{pt}) \rightarrow (\text{Sets}_*, \wedge, S^0),$$

being equipped with isomorphisms of pointed sets

$$\begin{aligned} (-)_{X,Y}^{+, \times}: X^+ \wedge Y^+ &\xrightarrow{\cong} (X \times Y)^+, \\ (-)_{\not\approx}^{+, \times}: S^0 &\xrightarrow{\cong} \text{pt}^+, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

Proof. [Item 1](#), *Functionality:* Clear.

[Item 2](#), *Adjointness:* Clear.

[Item 3](#), *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Wedge Sums:* Omitted.

[Item 4](#), *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Smash Products:* Omitted. \square

3.4.3. Wedge Sums of Pointed Sets. Let (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) be pointed sets.

0096 **Definition 3.4.3.1.1.** The **wedge sum of X and Y** is the pointed set $(X \vee Y, p_0)$ consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $X \vee Y$ defined by⁸

$$(X \vee Y, p_0) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (X, x_0) \coprod (Y, y_0) \cong (X \coprod_{\text{pt}} Y, p_0) \cong (X \coprod Y / \sim, p_0),$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \vee Y & \xleftarrow{\lrcorner} & Y \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow [y_0] \\ X & \xleftarrow{[x_0]} & \text{pt}, \end{array}$$

where \sim is the equivalence relation on $X \coprod Y$ given by $x_0 \sim y_0$;

- *The Basepoint.* The element p_0 of $X \vee Y$ defined by

$$\begin{aligned} p_0 &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [x_0] \\ &= [y_0]. \end{aligned}$$

0097 Proposition 3.4.3.1.2. Let (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) be pointed sets.

0098 (1) *Functionality.* The assignments $(X, x_0), (Y, y_0), ((X, x_0), (Y, y_0)) \mapsto (X \vee Y, p_0)$ define functors

$$\begin{aligned} X \vee - &: \mathbf{Sets}_* \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}_*, \\ - \vee Y &: \mathbf{Sets}_* \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}_*, \\ -_1 \vee -_2 &: \mathbf{Sets}_* \times \mathbf{Sets}_* \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}_*. \end{aligned}$$

0099 (2) *Associativity.* We have an isomorphism of pointed sets

$$(X \vee Y) \vee Z \cong X \vee (Y \vee Z),$$

natural in $(X, x_0), (Y, y_0), (Z, z_0) \in \mathbf{Sets}_*$.

009A (3) *Unitality.* We have isomorphisms of pointed sets

$$\begin{aligned} \text{pt} \vee X &\cong X, \\ X \vee \text{pt} &\cong X, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $(X, x_0) \in \mathbf{Sets}_*$.

009B (4) *Commutativity.* We have an isomorphism of pointed sets

$$X \vee Y \cong Y \vee X,$$

natural in $(X, x_0), (Y, y_0) \in \mathbf{Sets}_*$.

009C (5) *Symmetric Monoidality.* The triple $(\mathbf{Sets}_*, \vee, \text{pt})$ is a symmetric monoidal category.

(6) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Free Pointed Sets.*

009D The free pointed set functor of Item 1 of Proposition 3.4.2.1.2 has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$\left((-)^+, (-)^+, \coprod, (-)_{\not\models}^+ \coprod \right) : (\mathbf{Sets}, \coprod, \emptyset) \rightarrow (\mathbf{Sets}_*, \vee, \text{pt}),$$

being equipped with isomorphisms of pointed sets

$$(-)_{X,Y}^{+, \coprod} : X^+ \vee Y^+ \xrightarrow{\cong} (X \coprod Y)^+,$$

$$(-)_{\not\models}^{+, \coprod} : \text{pt} \xrightarrow{\cong} \emptyset^+,$$

natural in $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$.

⁸Here $(X, x_0) \coprod (Y, y_0)$ is the coproduct of (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) in \mathbf{Sets}_* .

009E (7) *The Fold Map.* We have a natural transformation

$$\nabla : \vee \circ \Delta_{\text{Sets}_*}^{\text{Cats}} \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*},$$

called the **fold map**, whose component

$$\nabla_X : X \vee X \rightarrow X$$

at X is given by the composition

$$\begin{aligned} X &\xrightarrow{\Delta_X} X \times X \\ &\longrightarrow X \times X / \sim \\ &\xrightarrow{\text{def}} X \vee X. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Omitted.

Item 2, Associativity: Omitted.

Item 3, Unitality: Omitted.

Item 4, Commutativity: Omitted.

Item 5, Symmetric Monoidality: Omitted.

Item 6, Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Free Pointed Sets: Omitted.

Item 7, The Fold Map: Omitted. □

Appendices

3.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories

(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma

(14) Constructions With Categories

(15) Profunctors

(16) Cartesian Closed Categories

(17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

(18) Bicategories

(19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

(20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

(21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

(22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

(23) The Globe Category		Real Analysis
Cellular Stuff		(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(24) The Cell Category		(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
Monoids		With Measure Theory
(25) Monoids		(39) Measurable Spaces
(26) Constructions	With	(40) Measures and Integration
Monoids		Probability Theory
Monoids With Zero		(40) Probability Theory
(27) Monoids With Zero		Stochastic Analysis
(28) Constructions	With	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
Monoids With Zero		(42) Itô Calculus
Groups		(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
(29) Groups		Differential Geometry
(30) Constructions With Groups		(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
Hyper Algebra		Schemes
(31) Hypermonoids		(45) Schemes
(32) Hypergroups		
(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings		
(34) Quantales		
Near-Rings		
(35) Near-Semirings		
(36) Near-Rings		

3.2. Other Chapters

Sets	(14) Constructions With Categories
(1) Sets	(15) Profunctors
(2) Constructions With Sets	(16) Cartesian Closed Categories
(3) Pointed Sets	(17) Kan Extensions
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	Bicategories
(5) Relations	(18) Bicategories
(6) Spans	(19) Internal Adjunctions
(7) Posets	Internal Category Theory
Indexed and Fibred Sets	(20) Internal Categories
(7) Indexed Sets	Cyclic Stuff
(8) Fibred Sets	(21) The Cycle Category
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	Cubical Stuff
Category Theory	(22) The Cube Category
(11) Categories	Globular Stuff
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(23) The Globe Category
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	Cellular Stuff
	(24) The Cell Category

Monoids		(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(25) Monoids		(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
(26) Constructions With Monoids		Measure Theory
Monoids With Zero		(39) Measurable Spaces
(27) Monoids With Zero		(40) Measures and Integration
(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero		Probability Theory
Groups		(40) Probability Theory
(29) Groups		Stochastic Analysis
(30) Constructions With Groups		(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
Hyper Algebra		(42) Itô Calculus
(31) Hypermonoids		(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
(32) Hypergroups		Differential Geometry
(33) Hypersemirings and Hyper-rings		(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
(34) Quantales		Schemes
Near-Rings		(45) Schemes
(35) Near-Semirings		
(36) Near-Rings		
Real Analysis		

CHAPTER 4

Tensor Products of Pointed Sets

009F This chapter contains some material on tensor products of pointed sets.

4.1. Bilinear Morphisms of Pointed Sets

4.1.1. Left Bilinear Morphisms of Pointed Sets. Let (X, x_0) , (Y, y_0) , and (Z, z_0) be pointed sets.

009J Definition 4.1.1.1.1. A left bilinear morphism of pointed sets from $(X \times Y, (x_0, y_0))$ to (Z, z_0) is a map of sets

$$f: (X \times Y, (x_0, y_0)) \rightarrow (Z, z_0)$$

satisfying the following condition:^{1,2}

(*) *Left Unital Bilinearity.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \text{pt} \times \text{pt} & \\ \text{id}_{\text{pt}} \times \epsilon_Y \nearrow & \curvearrowright & \\ \text{pt} \times Y & & \text{pt} \\ \downarrow [x_0] \times \text{id}_Y & & \downarrow [z_0] \\ X \times Y & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. for each $y \in Y$, we have

$$f(x_0, y) = z_0.$$

009K Definition 4.1.1.1.2. The set of left bilinear morphisms of pointed sets from $(X \times Y, (x_0, y_0))$ to (Z, z_0) is the set $\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}_*}^{\otimes, L}(X \times Y, Z)$ defined by

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}_*}^{\otimes, L}(X \times Y, Z) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{f \in \text{Sets}_*(A \times B, C) \mid f \text{ is left bilinear}\}.$$

4.1.2. Right Bilinear Morphisms of Pointed Sets. Let (X, x_0) , (Y, y_0) , and (Z, z_0) be pointed sets.

009M Definition 4.1.2.1.1. A right bilinear morphism of pointed sets from $(X \times Y, (x_0, y_0))$ to (Z, z_0) is a map of sets

$$f: (X \times Y, (x_0, y_0)) \rightarrow (Z, z_0)$$

¹Slogan: f is left bilinear if it preserves basepoints in its first argument.

²Succinctly, f is bilinear if we have

$$f(x_0, y) = z_0$$

for each $y \in Y$.

satisfying the following condition:^{3,4}

(\star) *Right Unital Bilinearity.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \text{pt} \times \text{pt} & \\
 \epsilon_X \times \text{id}_{\text{pt}} \nearrow & \curvearrowright & \\
 X \times \text{pt} & & \text{pt} \\
 \downarrow \text{id}_X \times [y_0] & & \downarrow [z_0] \\
 X \times Y & \xrightarrow{f} & Z
 \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. for each $x \in X$, we have

$$f(x, y_0) = z_0.$$

009N Definition 4.1.2.1.2. The **set of right bilinear morphisms of pointed sets from $(X \times Y, (x_0, y_0))$ to (Z, z_0)** is the set $\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}_*}^{\otimes, R}(X \times Y, Z)$ defined by

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}_*}^{\otimes, R}(X \times Y, Z) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{f \in \text{Sets}_*(A \times B, C) \mid f \text{ is right bilinear}\}.$$

4.1.3. Bilinear Morphisms of Pointed Sets. Let (X, x_0) , (Y, y_0) , and (Z, z_0) be pointed sets.

009Q Definition 4.1.3.1.1. A **bilinear morphism of pointed sets from $(X \times Y, (x_0, y_0))$ to (Z, z_0)** is a map of sets

$$f: (X \times Y, (x_0, y_0)) \rightarrow (Z, z_0)$$

that is both left bilinear and right bilinear.

009R Remark 4.1.3.1.2. In detail, a **bilinear morphism of pointed sets from $(X \times Y, (x_0, y_0))$ to (Z, z_0)** is a map of sets

$$f: (X \times Y, (x_0, y_0)) \rightarrow (Z, z_0)$$

satisfying the following conditions:^{5,6}

³Slogan: f is right bilinear if it preserves basepoints in its second argument.

⁴Succinctly, f is bilinear if we have

$$f(x, y_0) = z_0$$

for each $x \in X$.

⁵Slogan: f is bilinear if it preserves basepoints in each argument.

⁶Succinctly, f is bilinear if we have

$$f(x_0, y) = z_0,$$

$$f(x, y_0) = z_0$$

for each $x \in X$ and each $y \in Y$.

(1) *Left Unital Bilinearity.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \text{pt} \times \text{pt} & \\
 \text{id}_{\text{pt}} \times \epsilon_Y \nearrow & \curvearrowright & \\
 \text{pt} \times Y & & \text{pt} \\
 \downarrow [x_0] \times \text{id}_Y & & \downarrow [z_0] \\
 X \times Y & \xrightarrow{f} & Z
 \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. for each $y \in Y$, we have

$$f(x_0, y) = z_0.$$

(2) *Right Unital Bilinearity.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \text{pt} \times \text{pt} & \\
 \epsilon_X \times \text{id}_{\text{pt}} \nearrow & \curvearrowright & \\
 X \times \text{pt} & & \text{pt} \\
 \downarrow \text{id}_X \times [y_0] & & \downarrow [z_0] \\
 X \times Y & \xrightarrow{f} & Z
 \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. for each $x \in X$, we have

$$f(x, y_0) = z_0.$$

009S Definition 4.1.3.1.3. The **set of bilinear morphisms of pointed sets from** $(X \times Y, (x_0, y_0))$ **to** (Z, z_0) is the set $\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}_*}^\otimes(X \times Y, Z)$ defined by

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}_*}^\otimes(X \times Y, Z) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{f \in \text{Sets}_*(A \times B, C) \mid f \text{ is bilinear}\}.$$

4.2. Tensors and Cotensors of Pointed Sets by Sets

4.2.1. Tensors of Pointed Sets by Sets. Let (X, x_0) be a pointed set and let A be a set.

009V Definition 4.2.1.1.1. The **tensor of** (X, x_0) **by** A is the pointed set $A \odot (X, x_0)$ satisfying the following universal property:

(UP) We have a bijection

$$\text{Sets}_*(A \odot X, K) \cong \text{Sets}(A, \text{Sets}_*(X, K)),$$

natural in $(K, k_0) \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets}_*)$.

009W Remark 4.2.1.1.2. The tensor of (X, x_0) by A satisfies the following universal property:

$$\text{Sets}_*(A \odot X, K) \cong \text{Sets}_{\mathbb{E}_0}^\otimes(A \times X, K),$$

where $\text{Sets}_{\mathbb{E}_0}^\otimes(A \times X, K)$ is the set defined by

$$\text{Sets}_{\mathbb{E}_0}^\otimes(A \times X, K) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ f \in \text{Sets}(A \times X, K) \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{for each } a \in A, \text{ we} \\ \text{have } f(a, x_0) = k_0 \end{array} \right\}.$$

009X Construction 4.2.1.1.3. Concretely, the **tensor of** (X, x_0) **by** A is the pointed set $A \odot (X, x_0)$ consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $A \odot X$ given by

$$A \odot X \cong \bigvee_{a \in A} (X, x_0);$$

- *The Basepoint.* The point $[x_0]$ of $\bigvee_{a \in A} (X, x_0)$.

4.2.2. Cotensors of Pointed Sets by Sets. Let (X, x_0) be a pointed set and let A be a set.

009Z Definition 4.2.2.1.1. The **cotensor of** (X, x_0) **by** A is the pointed set $A \pitchfork (X, x_0)$ satisfying the following universal property:

- (UP) We have a bijection

$$\text{Sets}_*(K, A \pitchfork X) \cong \text{Sets}(A, \text{Sets}_*(K, X)),$$

natural in $(K, k_0) \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets}_*)$.

00A0 Remark 4.2.2.1.2. The cotensor of (X, x_0) by A satisfies the following universal property:

$$\text{Sets}_*(K, A \pitchfork X) \cong \text{Sets}_{\mathbb{E}_0}^{\otimes}(A \times K, X),$$

where $\text{Sets}_{\mathbb{E}_0}^{\otimes}(A \times K, X)$ is the set defined by

$$\text{Sets}_{\mathbb{E}_0}^{\otimes}(A \times K, X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ f \in \text{Sets}(A \times K, X) \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{for each } a \in A, \text{ we} \\ \text{have } f(a, k_0) = x_0 \end{array} \right\}.$$

00A1 Construction 4.2.2.1.3. Concretely, the **cotensor of** (X, x_0) **by** A is the pointed set $A \pitchfork (X, x_0)$ consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $A \pitchfork X$ given by

$$A \pitchfork X \cong \bigwedge_{a \in A} (X, x_0);$$

- *The Basepoint.* The point $[(x_0, x_0, x_0, \dots)]$ of $\bigwedge_{a \in A} (X, x_0)$.

4.3. The Left Tensor Product of Pointed Sets

4.3.1. Foundations. Let (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) be pointed sets.

00A4 Definition 4.3.1.1.1. The **left tensor product of pointed sets** is the functor

$$\triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} : \text{Sets}_* \times \text{Sets}_* \rightarrow \text{Sets}_*$$

defined as the composition

$$\text{Sets}_* \times \text{Sets}_* \xrightarrow{\text{id} \times \text{忘}} \text{Sets}_* \times \text{Sets} \xrightarrow{\beta_{\text{Sets}_*, \text{Sets}}^{\text{Cats}_2}} \text{Sets} \times \text{Sets}_* \xrightarrow{\odot} \text{Sets}_*.$$

00A5 Remark 4.3.1.1.2. The left tensor product of pointed sets satisfies the following universal property:⁷

$$\text{Sets}_*(X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Y, Z) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}_*}^{\otimes, L}(X \times Y, Z).$$

⁷Namely, a pointed map $f: X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Y \rightarrow Z$ is the same as a map $f^\dagger: X \times Y \rightarrow Z$ such that

$$f^\dagger(x_0, y) = z_0$$

for each $y \in Y$.

00A6 Remark 4.3.1.1.3. In detail, the **left tensor product** of (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) is the pointed set $(X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Y, [x_0])$ consisting of⁸

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Y$ defined by

$$\begin{aligned} X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Y &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |Y| \odot X \\ &\cong \bigvee_{y \in Y} (X, x_0); \end{aligned}$$

- *The Underlying Basepoint.* The point $[x_0]$ of $\bigvee_{y \in Y} (X, x_0)$.

00A7 Proposition 4.3.1.1.4. Let (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) be pointed sets.

00A8 (1) *Functionality.* The assignments $X, Y, (X, Y) \mapsto X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Y$ define functors

$$\begin{aligned} X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} - : \text{Sets}_* &\rightarrow \text{Sets}_*, \\ - \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Y : \text{Sets}_* &\rightarrow \text{Sets}_*, \\ -_1 \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} -_2 : \text{Sets}_* \times \text{Sets}_* &\rightarrow \text{Sets}_*. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functionality:* Omitted. □

4.3.2. The Skew Associator.

00AA Definition 4.3.2.1.1. The **skew associator** of the left tensor product of pointed sets is the natural isomorphism

$$\alpha^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft} : \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} \times \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*}) \xrightarrow{\cong} \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*} \times \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*}),$$

whose component

$$\alpha_{X,Y,Z}^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft} : (X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Y) \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Z \xrightarrow{\cong} X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} (Y \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Z)$$

⁸*Further Notation:* We write $x \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} y$ for the image of (x, y) under the map

$$X \times Y \rightarrow \underbrace{X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Y}_{\cong \bigvee_{y \in Y} (X, x_0)}.$$

sending (x, y) to the element $x \in X$ in the y th copy of X in $\bigvee_{y \in Y} (X, x_0)$. Note that we have

$$x_0 \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} y = x_0 \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} y',$$

for each $y, y' \in Y$.

at (X, Y, Z) is given by the composition⁹

$$\begin{aligned}
 (X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Y) \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Z &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |Z| \odot (X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Y) \\
 &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |Z| \odot (|Y| \odot X) \\
 &\cong \bigvee_{z \in Z} (|Y| \odot X, [x_0]) \\
 &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{z \in Z} \left(\bigvee_{y \in Y} (X, x_0) \right) \\
 &\cong \bigvee_{(z,y) \in \bigvee_{z \in Z} (Y, y_0)} (X, x_0) \\
 &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{(z,y) \in |Z| \odot Y} (X, x_0) \\
 &\cong ||Z| \odot Y| \odot X \\
 &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |Y \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Z| \odot X \\
 &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} (Y \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Z),
 \end{aligned}$$

where the isomorphism

$$\bigvee_{z \in Z} \left(\bigvee_{y \in Y} (X, x_0) \right) \cong \bigvee_{(y,z) \in \bigvee_{z \in Z} (Y, y_0)} (X, x_0)$$

is given by $[(z, (y, x))] \mapsto [(z, y), x]$.

4.3.3. The Skew Left Unitor.

00AC **Definition 4.3.3.1.1.** The **skew left unitor of the left tensor product of pointed sets** is the natural transformation

$$\lambda^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft} : \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\mathbb{M}^{\text{Sets}_*} \times \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*}) \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*},$$

whose component

$$\lambda_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft} : S^0 \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} X \rightarrow X$$

at X is given by the composition¹⁰

$$\begin{aligned}
 S^0 \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} X &\cong |X| \odot S^0 \\
 &\cong \bigvee_{x \in X} S^0 \\
 &\rightarrow X
 \end{aligned}$$

⁹In other words, $\alpha_{X,Y,Z}^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft}$ acts on elements as

$$\alpha_{X,Y,Z}^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft} ((x \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} y) \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} z) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} x \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} (y \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} z)$$

for each $(x \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} y) \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} z \in (X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Y) \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Z$.

¹⁰In other words, $\lambda_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft}$ acts on elements as

$$\begin{aligned}
 \lambda_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft} (x \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} 0) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} x, \\
 \lambda_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft} (x \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} 1) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} x,
 \end{aligned}$$

for each $x \in X$.

where $\bigvee_{x \in X} S^0 \rightarrow X$ is the map given by

$$\begin{aligned}(x, 0) &\mapsto x, \\ (x, 1) &\mapsto x.\end{aligned}$$

4.3.4. The Skew Right Unit.

00AE **Definition 4.3.4.1.1.** The **skew right unit of the left tensor product of pointed sets** is the natural transformation

$$\rho^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft} : \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*} \Rightarrow \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*} \times \mathbb{1}^{\text{Sets}_*}),$$

whose component

$$\rho_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft} : X \rightarrow X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} S^0$$

at X is given by the composition¹¹

$$\begin{aligned}X &\rightarrow X \vee X \\ &\cong |S^0| \odot X \\ &\cong S^0 \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} X,\end{aligned}$$

where $X \rightarrow X \vee X$ is the map sending X to the first factor of X in $X \vee X$.

4.3.5. The Left-Skew Monoidal Category Structure on Pointed Sets.

00AG **Proposition 4.3.5.1.1.** The category Sets_* admits a left-skew monoidal category structure consisting of¹²

- *The Skew Monoidal Product.* The left tensor product functor

$$\triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} : \text{Sets}_* \times \text{Sets}_* \rightarrow \text{Sets}_*,$$

of [Proposition 4.3.1.1.4](#);

- *The Skew Monoidal Unit.* The functor

$$\mathbb{1}^{\text{Sets}_*} : \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Sets}_*$$

defined by

$$\mathbb{1}_{\text{Sets}_*} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S^0;$$

- *The Skew Associators.* The natural isomorphism

$$\alpha^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft} : \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} \times \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*}) \xrightarrow{\cong} \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*} \times \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*}),$$

of [Definition 4.3.2.1.1](#);

- *The Skew Left Units.* The natural transformation

$$\lambda^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft} : \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\mathbb{1}^{\text{Sets}_*} \times \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*}) \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*},$$

of [Definition 4.3.3.1.1](#);

- *The Skew Right Units.* The natural transformation

$$\rho^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft} : \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*} \Rightarrow \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*} \times \mathbb{1}^{\text{Sets}_*}),$$

¹¹In other words, $\rho_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft}$ acts on elements as

$$\rho_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft}(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} x \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} 0$$

for each $x \in X$.

¹²Note in particular that, differently from general left-skew monoidal categories, the skew associator of $(\text{Sets}_*, \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*}, S^0)$ is a natural isomorphism.

of Definition 4.3.4.1.1.

Proof. Omitted. □

4.4. The Right Tensor Product of Pointed Sets

4.4.1. Foundations. Let (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) be pointed sets.

00AK **Definition 4.4.1.1.1.** The **right tensor product of pointed sets** is the functor

$$\triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} : \text{Sets}_* \times \text{Sets}_* \rightarrow \text{Sets}_*$$

defined as the composition

$$\text{Sets}_* \times \text{Sets}_* \xrightarrow{\cong \text{id} \times \text{id}} \text{Sets} \times \text{Sets}_* \xrightarrow{\odot} \text{Sets}_*.$$

00AL **Remark 4.4.1.1.2.** The right tensor product of pointed sets satisfies the following universal property:¹³

$$\text{Sets}_*(X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Y, Z) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}_*}^{\otimes, R}(X \times Y, Z).$$

00AM **Remark 4.4.1.1.3.** In detail, the **right tensor product of** (X, x_0) **and** (Y, y_0) is the pointed set $(X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Y, [y_0])$ consisting of ¹⁴

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Y$ defined by

$$\begin{aligned} X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Y &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |X| \odot Y \\ &\cong \bigvee_{x \in X} (Y, y_0); \end{aligned}$$

- *The Underlying Basepoint.* The point $[y_0]$ of $\bigvee_{x \in X} (Y, y_0)$.

00AN **Proposition 4.4.1.1.4.** Let (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) be pointed sets.

00AP (1) *Functionality.* The assignments $X, Y, (X, Y) \mapsto X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Y$ define functors

$$\begin{aligned} X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} - &: \text{Sets}_* \rightarrow \text{Sets}_*, \\ - \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Y &: \text{Sets}_* \rightarrow \text{Sets}_*, \\ -_1 \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} -_2 &: \text{Sets}_* \times \text{Sets}_* \rightarrow \text{Sets}_*. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functionality:* Omitted. □

4.4.2. The Skew Associator.

¹³Namely, a pointed map $f: X \triangleleft_{\text{Sets}_*} Y \rightarrow Z$ is the same as a map $f^\dagger: X \times Y \rightarrow Z$ such that

$$f^\dagger(x, y_0) = z_0$$

for each $y \in Y$.

¹⁴Further Notation: We write $x \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} y$ for the image of (x, y) under the map

$$X \times Y \rightarrow \underbrace{X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Y}_{\cong \bigvee_{x \in X} (Y, y_0)}.$$

sending (x, y) to the element $y \in Y$ in the x th copy of Y in $\bigvee_{x \in X} (Y, y_0)$. Note that we have

$$x \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} y_0 = x' \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} y_0,$$

for each $x, x' \in X$.

00AR Definition 4.4.2.1.1. The **skew associator of the right tensor product of pointed sets** is the natural isomorphism

$$\alpha^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright} : \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*} \times \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*}) \xrightarrow{\cong} \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} \times \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*}),$$

whose component

$$\alpha_{X,Y,Z}^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright} : X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} (Y \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Z) \xrightarrow{\cong} (X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Y) \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Z$$

at (X, Y, Z) is given by the composition¹⁵

$$\begin{aligned} X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} (Y \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Z) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |X| \odot (Y \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Z) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |X| \odot (|Y| \odot Z) \\ &\cong |X| \odot \left(\bigvee_{y \in Y} (Z, z_0) \right) \\ &\cong \bigvee_{x \in X} \left(\bigvee_{y \in Y} (Z, z_0) \right) \\ &\cong \bigvee_{(x,y) \in \bigvee_{x \in X} (Y, y_0)} (Z, z_0) \\ &\cong \left| \bigvee_{x \in X} (Y, y_0) \right| \odot Z \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |X \odot Y| \odot Z \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Y| \odot Z \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Y) \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Z \end{aligned}$$

where the isomorphism

$$\bigvee_{x \in X} \left(\bigvee_{y \in Y} (Z, z_0) \right) \cong \bigvee_{(x,y) \in \bigvee_{x \in X} (Y, y_0)} (Z, z_0)$$

is given by $[(x, (y, z))] \mapsto [(x, y), z]$.

4.4.3. The Skew Left Unitor.

00AT Definition 4.4.3.1.1. The **skew left unitor of the right tensor product of pointed sets** is the natural transformation

$$\lambda^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright} : \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*} \Longrightarrow \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\not\triangleright^{\text{Sets}_*} \times \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*}),$$

whose component

$$\lambda_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright} : X \rightarrow S^0 \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} X$$

¹⁵In other words, $\alpha_{X,Y,Z}^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright}$ acts on elements as

$$\alpha_{X,Y,Z}^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright} (x \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} (y \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} z)) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (x \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} y) \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} z$$

for each $x \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} (y \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} z) \in X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} (Y \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} Z)$.

at X is given by the composition¹⁶

$$\begin{aligned} X &\rightarrow X \vee X \\ &\cong |S^0| \odot X \\ &\cong S^0 \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} X, \end{aligned}$$

where $X \rightarrow X \vee X$ is the map sending X to the first factor of X in $X \vee X$.

4.4.4. The Skew Right Unit.

00AV **Definition 4.4.4.1.1.** The **skew right unit of the right tensor product of pointed sets** is the natural transformation

$$\rho^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright} : \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*} \times \mathbb{1}^{\text{Sets}_*}) \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*},$$

whose component¹⁷

$$\rho_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright} : X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} S^0 \rightarrow X$$

at X is given by the composition

$$\begin{aligned} X \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} S^0 &\cong |X| \odot S^0 \\ &\cong \bigvee_{x \in X} S^0 \\ &\rightarrow X \end{aligned}$$

where $\bigvee_{x \in X} S^0 \rightarrow X$ is the map given by

$$\begin{aligned} (x, 0) &\mapsto x, \\ (x, 1) &\mapsto x. \end{aligned}$$

4.4.5. The Right-Skew Monoidal Category Structure on Pointed Sets.

00AX **Proposition 4.4.5.1.1.** The category Sets_* admits a right-skew monoidal category structure consisting of¹⁸

- *The Skew Monoidal Product.* The right tensor product functor

$$\triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} : \text{Sets}_* \times \text{Sets}_* \rightarrow \text{Sets}_*,$$

of **Item 1**;

- *The Skew Monoidal Unit.* The functor

$$\mathbb{1}^{\text{Sets}_*} : \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Sets}_*$$

defined by

$$\mathbb{1}_{\text{Sets}_*} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S^0;$$

¹⁶In other words, $\lambda_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright}$ acts on elements as

$$\lambda_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright}(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 0 \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} x$$

for each $x \in X$.

¹⁷In other words, $\rho_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright}$ acts on elements as

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright}(x \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} 0) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} x, \\ \rho_X^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright}(x \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} 1) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} x \end{aligned}$$

for each $x \in X$.

¹⁸Note in particular that, differently from general right-skew monoidal categories, the skew associator of $(\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*}, S^0)$ is a natural isomorphism.

- *The Skew Associators.* The natural isomorphism

$$\alpha^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright} : \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} \times \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*}) \xrightarrow{\cong} \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*} \times \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*}),$$

of [Definition 4.4.2.1.1](#);

- *The Skew Left Unitors.* The natural transformation

$$\lambda^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright} : \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*} \Rightarrow \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\not\triangleright^{\text{Sets}_*} \times \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*}),$$

of [Definition 4.3.3.1.1](#);

- *The Skew Right Unitors.* The natural transformation

$$\rho^{\text{Sets}_*, \triangleright} : \triangleright_{\text{Sets}_*} \circ (\text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*} \times \not\triangleright^{\text{Sets}_*}) \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\text{Sets}_*},$$

of [Definition 4.3.4.1.1](#).

Proof. Omitted. □

4.5. Smash Products of Pointed Sets

4.5.1. Foundations. Let (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) be pointed sets.

00B0 Definition 4.5.1.1.1. The **smash product of (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0)** ¹⁹ is the pointed set $X \wedge Y$ ²⁰ such that we have a bijection

$$\text{Sets}_*(X \wedge Y, Z) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}_*}^\otimes(X \times Y, Z),$$

natural in $(X, x_0), (Y, y_0), (Z, z_0) \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets}_*)$.

00B1 Remark 4.5.1.1.2. In detail, the **smash product of (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0)** is the pair $((X \wedge Y, [(x_0, y_0)]), \iota)$ consisting of

- A pointed set $(X \wedge Y, [(x_0, y_0)])$;
- A bilinear morphism of pointed sets $\iota : (X \times Y, (x_0, y_0)) \rightarrow X \wedge Y$;

satisfying the following universal property:

(UP) Given another such pair $((Z, z_0), f)$ consisting of

- A pointed set (Z, z_0) ;
- A bilinear morphism of pointed sets $f : (X \times Y, (x_0, y_0)) \rightarrow Z$;

there exists a unique morphism of pointed sets $X \wedge Y \xrightarrow{\exists!} Z$ making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & X \wedge Y & \\ \iota \nearrow & & \downarrow \exists! \\ X \times Y & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

commute.

¹⁹Further Terminology: Also called the **tensor product of \mathbb{F}_1 -modules of (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0)** or the **tensor product of (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) over \mathbb{F}_1** .

²⁰Further Notation: Also written $X \otimes_{\mathbb{F}_1} Y$.

00B2 Construction 4.5.1.1.3. Concretely, the **smash product** of (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) is the pointed set $(X \wedge Y, [(x_0, y_0)])$ consisting of²¹

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $X \wedge Y$ defined by

$$\begin{aligned} X \wedge Y &\cong \text{pt} \coprod_{X \vee Y} (X \times Y) & X \wedge Y &\leftarrow X \times Y \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{X \times Y}{X \vee Y} & \uparrow \lrcorner & \uparrow \\ &\cong X \times Y / \sim, & \text{pt} &\xleftarrow{!} X \vee Y, \end{aligned}$$

where \sim is the equivalence relation of $X \times Y$ obtained by declaring $(x, y) \sim (x', y')$ iff $(x, y), (x', y') \in X \vee Y$, i.e. by declaring

$$\begin{aligned} (x_0, y) &\sim (x_0, y'), \\ (x, y_0) &\sim (x', y_0) \end{aligned}$$

for all $x \in X$ and all $y \in Y$;

- *The Basepoint.* The element $[(x_0, y_0)]$ of $X \wedge Y$ given by the equivalence class of (x_0, y_0) under the equivalence relation \sim on $X \times Y$.

Proof. Clear. \square

00B3 Example 4.5.1.1.4. Here are some examples of smash products of pointed sets.

- (1) *Smashing With S^0 .* For any pointed set X , we have isomorphisms of pointed sets

$$\begin{aligned} S^0 \wedge X &\cong X, \\ X \wedge S^0 &\cong X. \end{aligned}$$

00B4 Proposition 4.5.1.1.5. Let (X, x_0) and (Y, y_0) be pointed sets.

- (1) *Functionality.* The assignments $(X, x_0), (Y, y_0), ((X, x_0), (Y, y_0)) \mapsto X \wedge Y$ define functors

$$\begin{aligned} X \wedge - &: \mathbf{Sets}_* \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}_*, \\ - \wedge Y &: \mathbf{Sets}_* \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}_*, \\ -_1 \wedge -_2 &: \mathbf{Sets}_* \times \mathbf{Sets}_* \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}_*. \end{aligned}$$

- (2) *Adjointness.* We have adjunctions

$$\begin{aligned} (X \wedge - \dashv \mathbf{Sets}_*(X, -)): \quad & \mathbf{Sets}_* \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{X \wedge -} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\mathbf{Sets}_*(X, -)} \end{array} \mathbf{Sets}_*, \\ (- \wedge Y \dashv \mathbf{Sets}_*(Y, -)): \quad & \mathbf{Sets}_* \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{- \wedge Y} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\mathbf{Sets}_*(Y, -)} \end{array} \mathbf{Sets}_*, \end{aligned}$$

²¹Further Notation: We write $x \wedge y$ for the image of (x, y) under the quotient map

$$X \times Y \rightarrow \frac{X \times Y}{\begin{array}{c} X \vee Y \\ \xrightarrow{\text{def}} \\ = X \wedge Y \end{array}}$$

witnessed by bijections

$$\mathbf{Sets}_*(X \wedge Y, Z) \cong \mathbf{Sets}_*(X, \mathbf{Sets}_*(Y, Z)),$$

$$\mathbf{Sets}_*(X \wedge Y, Z) \cong \mathbf{Sets}_*(X, \mathbf{Sets}_*(A, Z)),$$

natural in $(X, x_0), (Y, y_0), (Z, z_0) \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets}_*)$, which internalise to isomorphisms of pointed sets

$$\mathbf{Sets}_*(X \wedge Y, Z) \cong \mathbf{Sets}_*(X, \mathbf{Sets}_*(Y, Z)),$$

$$\mathbf{Sets}_*(X \wedge Y, Z) \cong \mathbf{Sets}_*(X, \mathbf{Sets}_*(A, Z)),$$

again natural in $(X, x_0), (Y, y_0), (Z, z_0) \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets}_*)$.

00B7 (3) *Closed Symmetric Monoidality.* The quadruple $(\mathbf{Sets}_*, \wedge, S^0, \mathbf{Sets}_*)$

is a closed symmetric monoidal category.

00B8 (4) *Morphisms From the Monoidal Unit.* We have a bijection of sets²²

$$\mathbf{Sets}_*(S^0, X) \cong X,$$

natural in $(X, x_0) \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets}_*)$, internalising also to an isomorphism of pointed sets

$$\mathbf{Sets}_*(S^0, X) \cong (X, x_0),$$

again natural in $(X, x_0) \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets}_*)$.

00B9 (5) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Free Pointed Sets.*

The free pointed set functor of ?? of ?? has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$\left((-)^+, (-)^{+,\times}, (-)_{\mathbb{M}}^{+,\times} \right): (\mathbf{Sets}, \times, \text{pt}) \rightarrow (\mathbf{Sets}_*, \wedge, S^0),$$

being equipped with isomorphisms of pointed sets

$$(-)_{X,Y}^{+,\times}: X^+ \wedge Y^+ \xrightarrow{\cong} (X \times Y)^+,$$

$$(-)_{\mathbb{M}}^{+,\times}: S^0 \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{pt}^+,$$

natural in $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$.

00BA (6) *Distributivity Over Wedge Sums.* We have isomorphisms of pointed sets

$$X \wedge (Y \vee Z) \cong (X \wedge Y) \vee (X \wedge Z),$$

$$(X \vee Y) \wedge Z \cong (X \wedge Z) \vee (Y \wedge Z),$$

natural in $(X, x_0), (Y, y_0), (Z, z_0) \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets}_*)$.

00BB (7) *Universal Property I.* The symmetric monoidal structure on the category \mathbf{Sets}_* is uniquely determined by the following requirements:

Note that we have

$$x \wedge y_0 = x' \wedge y_0,$$

$$x_0 \wedge y = x_0 \wedge y'$$

for each $x, x' \in X$ and each $y, y' \in Y$.

²²In other words, the forgetful functor

$$\mathfrak{U}: \mathbf{Sets}_* \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}$$

defined on objects by sending a pointed set to its underlying set is corepresentable by S^0 .

- (a) *Two-Sided Preservation of Colimits.* The smash product

$$\wedge: \mathbf{Sets}_* \times \mathbf{Sets}_* \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}_*$$

of \mathbf{Sets}_* preserves colimits separately in each variable.

- (b) *The Unit Object Is S^0 .* We have $\mathbb{1}_{\mathbf{Sets}_*} = S^0$.

- 00BC** (8) *Universal Property II.* The symmetric monoidal structure on the category \mathbf{Sets}_* is the unique symmetric monoidal structure on \mathbf{Sets}_* such that the free pointed set functor

$$(-)^+: \mathbf{Sets} \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}_*$$

admits a symmetric monoidal structure.

- 00BD** (9) *Existence of Monoidal Diagonals.* The triple $(\mathbf{Sets}_*, \wedge, S^0)$ is a monoidal category with diagonals:

- (a) *Monoidal Diagonals.* The natural transformation

$$\Delta: \text{id}_{\mathbf{Sets}_*} \Longrightarrow \wedge \circ \Delta_{\mathbf{Sets}_*}^{\mathbf{Cats}_2},$$

whose component

$$\Delta_X: (X, x_0) \rightarrow (X \wedge X, [(x_0, x_0)])$$

at $(X, x_0) \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets}_*)$ is given by the composition

$$\begin{aligned} (X, x_0) &\xrightarrow{\Delta_X} (X \times X, (x_0, x_0)) \\ &\xrightarrow{\quad\quad\quad} (\frac{X \times X}{X \vee X}, [(x_0, x_0)]) \\ &\xrightarrow{\text{def}} (X \wedge X, [(x_0, x_0)]) \end{aligned}$$

in \mathbf{Sets}_* , is a monoidal natural transformation:

- (i) *Naturality.* For each morphism $f: X \rightarrow Y$ of pointed sets, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ \Delta_X \downarrow & & \downarrow \Delta_Y \\ X \wedge X & \xrightarrow{f \wedge f} & Y \wedge Y \end{array}$$

commutes.

- (ii) *Compatibility With Strong Monoidality Constraints.* For each $(X, x_0), (Y, y_0) \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets}_*)$, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \wedge Y & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X \wedge \Delta_Y} & (X \wedge X) \wedge (Y \wedge Y) \\ \parallel & & \downarrow ? \\ X \wedge Y & \xrightarrow{\Delta_{X \wedge Y}} & (X \wedge Y) \wedge (X \wedge Y) \end{array}$$

commutes.

(iii) *Compatibility With Strong Unitality Constraints.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S^0 & & \\ \parallel & \searrow (\lambda_{S^0}^{\text{Sets}_*})^{-1} = (\rho_{S^0}^{\text{Sets}_*})^{-1} & \\ & S^0 \xrightarrow{\Delta_{S^0}} S^0 \wedge S^0 & \end{array}$$

commutes.

(b) *The Diagonal of the Unit.* The component

$$\Delta_{S^0}^{\text{Sets}_*} : S^0 \xrightarrow{\cong} S^0 \wedge S^0$$

of the diagonal natural transformation of Sets_* at S^0 is an isomorphism.

00BE (10) *Comonoids in Sets_* .* The symmetric monoidal functor

$$\left((-)^+, (-)^{+,\times}, (-)_{\wedge}^{+,\times}\right) : (\text{Sets}, \times, \text{pt}) \rightarrow (\text{Sets}_*, \wedge, S^0),$$

of ?? of ?? lifts to an equivalence of categories

$$\begin{aligned} \text{CoMon}(\text{Sets}_*, \wedge, S^0) &\xrightarrow{\text{eq.}} \text{CoMon}(\text{Sets}, \times, \text{pt}) \\ &\cong \text{Sets}. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Omitted.

Item 2, Adjointness: Omitted.

Item 3, Closed Symmetric Monoidality: Omitted.

Item 4, Morphisms From the Monoidal Unit: Omitted.

Item 5, Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Free Pointed Sets: Omitted.

Item 6, Distributivity Over Wedge Sums: This follows from *Item 3, ?? of ??,* and the fact that \vee is the coproduct in Sets_* .

Item 7, Universal Property I: Omitted.

Item 8, Universal Property II: See [GGN15, Theorem 5.1].

Item 9, Existence of Monoidal Diagonals: Omitted.

Item 10, Comonoids in Sets_ :* See [PS19, Lemma 2.4].

□

Appendices

4.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories

(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	Hyper Algebra
(14) Constructions With Categories	(31) Hypermonoids
(15) Profunctors	(32) Hypergroups
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
(17) Kan Extensions	(34) Quantales
Bicategories	Near-Rings
(18) Bicategories	(35) Near-Semirings
(19) Internal Adjunctions	(36) Near-Rings
Internal Category Theory	Real Analysis
(20) Internal Categories	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
Cyclic Stuff	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
(21) The Cycle Category	Measure Theory
Cubical Stuff	(39) Measurable Spaces
(22) The Cube Category	(40) Measures and Integration
Globular Stuff	Probability Theory
(23) The Globe Category	(40) Probability Theory
Cellular Stuff	Stochastic Analysis
(24) The Cell Category	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
Monoids	(42) Itô Calculus
(25) Monoids	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
(26) Constructions With Monoids	Differential Geometry
Monoids With Zero	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
(27) Monoids With Zero	Schemes
(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero	(45) Schemes
Groups	
(29) Groups	
(30) Constructions With Groups	

4.2. Other Chapters

Sets	(7) Indexed Sets
(1) Sets	(8) Fibred Sets
(2) Constructions With Sets	(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets
(3) Pointed Sets	
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	Category Theory
(5) Relations	(11) Categories
(6) Spans	(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
(7) Posets	(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
Indexed and Fibred Sets	

(14) Constructions With Categories	Hyper Algebra
(15) Profunctors	(31) Hypermonoids
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	(32) Hypergroups
(17) Kan Extensions	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
Bicategories	(34) Quantales
(18) Bicategories	Near-Rings
(19) Internal Adjunctions	(35) Near-Semirings
Internal Category Theory	(36) Near-Rings
(20) Internal Categories	Real Analysis
Cyclic Stuff	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(21) The Cycle Category	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
Cubical Stuff	Measure Theory
(22) The Cube Category	(39) Measurable Spaces
Globular Stuff	(40) Measures and Integration
(23) The Globe Category	Probability Theory
Cellular Stuff	(40) Probability Theory
(24) The Cell Category	Stochastic Analysis
Monoids	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
(25) Monoids	(42) Itô Calculus
(26) Constructions With Monoids	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
Monoids With Zero	With Differential Geometry
(27) Monoids With Zero	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero	Schemes
Groups	(45) Schemes
(29) Groups	
(30) Constructions With Groups	

CHAPTER 5

Relations

00BF This chapter contains some material about relations and constructions with them. Notably, we discuss and explore:

- (1) The definition of relations ([Section 5.1.1](#)).
- (2) How relations may be viewed as decategorification of profunctors ([Section 5.1.2](#)).
- (3) The various kind of categories that relations form, namely:
 - (a) A category ([Section 5.2.1](#)),
 - (b) A monoidal category ([Section 5.2.2](#)),
 - (c) A 2-category ([Section 5.2.3](#)), and
 - (d) A double category ([Section 5.2.4](#)).
- (4) The various categorical properties of the 2-category of relations, including ([Section 5.2.5](#)):
 - (a) The self-duality of **Rel** and **Rel** ([Items 1 and 2 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1](#));
 - (b) Identifications of equivalences and isomorphisms in **Rel** with bijections ([Item 3 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1](#));
 - (c) Identifications of adjunctions in **Rel** with functions ([Item 4 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1](#));
 - (d) Identifications of monads in **Rel** with preorders ([Item 5 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1](#));
 - (e) Identifications of comonads in **Rel** with subsets ([Item 6 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1](#));
 - (f) Characterisations of monomorphisms in **Rel** ([Item 7 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1](#));
 - (g) Characterisations of epimorphisms in **Rel** ([Item 8 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1](#));
 - (h) The partial co/completeness of **Rel** ([Item 10 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1](#));
 - (i) The existence of right Kan extensions and right Kan lifts in **Rel** ([Items 11 and 12 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1](#));
 - (j) The closedness of **Rel** ([Item 13 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1](#)).
- (5) The various kinds of constructions involving relations, such as graphs, domains, ranges, unions, intersections, products, inverse relations, composition of relations, and collages ([Section 5.3](#)).
- (6) Equivalence relations ([Section 5.4](#)) and quotient sets ([Section 5.4.5](#)).
- (7) The adjoint pairs

$$R_* \dashv R_{-1} : \mathcal{P}(A) \rightleftarrows \mathcal{P}(B),$$

$$R^{-1} \dashv R_! : \mathcal{P}(B) \rightleftarrows \mathcal{P}(A)$$

of functors (morphisms of posets) between $\mathcal{P}(A)$ and $\mathcal{P}(B)$ induced by a relation $R: A \nrightarrow B$, as well as the properties of R_* , R_{-1} , R^{-1} , and $R_!$ (Section 5.5).

Here we also note that:

- (a) These two pairs of adjoint functors are the counterpart for relations of the adjoint triple $f_* \dashv f^{-1} \dashv f_!$ induced by a function $f: A \rightarrow B$ studied in ??;
- (b) We have $R_{-1} = R^{-1}$ iff R is total and functional (Item 8 of Proposition 5.5.2.1.3).
- (c) As a consequence of the previous item, when R comes from a function f the pair of adjunctions

$$R_* \dashv R_{-1} = R^{-1} \dashv R_!$$

reduces to the triple adjunction

$$f_* \dashv f^{-1} \dashv f_!$$

from before.

- (d) The pairs $R_* \dashv R_{-1}$ and $R^{-1} \dashv R_!$ later make an appearance in the context of continuous, open, and closed relations between topological spaces (??).
- (8) A notion of *relative preorder* that is to that of a preorder as relative monads are to monads, extending the identifications of monads in Rel with preorders of Item 5 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1 to “relative monads in Rel”.

5.1. Relations

5.1.1. Foundations.

Let A and B be sets.

00BJ **Definition 5.1.1.1.1.** A relation $R: A \nrightarrow B$ from A to B ^{1,2} is a subset R of $A \times B$.³

00BK **Definition 5.1.1.1.2.** Let A and B be sets.

- (1) The set of relations from A to B is the set $\text{Rel}(A, B)$ defined by

00BL

$$\text{Rel}(A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\text{Relations from } A \text{ to } B\}.$$

- (2) The poset of relations from A to B is the poset

$$\mathbf{Rel}(A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\text{Rel}(A, B), \subset)$$

consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $\text{Rel}(A, B)$ of Item 1;
- *The Partial Order.* The partial order

$$\subset: \text{Rel}(A, B) \times \text{Rel}(A, B) \rightarrow \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$$

on $\text{Rel}(A, B)$ given by inclusion of relations.

¹Further Terminology: Also called a **multivalued function from A to B** , a **relation over A and B** , **relation on A and B** , a **binary relation over A and B** , or a **binary relation on A and B** .

²Further Terminology: When $A = B$, we also call $R \subset A \times A$ a **relation on A** .

³Further Notation: Given elements $a \in A$ and $b \in B$, we write $a \sim_R b$ to mean $(a, b) \in R$.

00BN **Remark 5.1.1.1.3.** A relation from A to B is equivalently:⁴

- 00BP** (1) A subset of $A \times B$;
- 00BQ** (2) A function from $A \times B$ to $\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$;
- 00BR** (3) A function from A to $\mathcal{P}(B)$;
- 00BS** (4) A function from B to $\mathcal{P}(A)$;
- 00BT** (5) A cocontinuous morphism of posets from $(\mathcal{P}(A), \subset)$ to $(\mathcal{P}(B), \subset)$.

That is: we have bijections of sets

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Rel}(A, B) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathcal{P}(A \times B), \\ &\cong \text{Sets}(A \times B, \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}), \\ &\cong \text{Sets}(A, \mathcal{P}(B)), \\ &\cong \text{Sets}(B, \mathcal{P}(A)), \\ &\cong \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Pos}}^{\text{cocont}}(\mathcal{P}(A), \mathcal{P}(B)), \end{aligned}$$

natural in $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

Proof. We claim that **Items 1** to **5** are indeed equivalent:

- **Item 1 \iff Item 2:** This is a special case of ?? of ??.
- **Item 2 \iff Item 3:** This is an instance of currying, following from the bijections

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Sets}(A \times B, \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}) &\cong \text{Sets}(A, \text{Sets}(B, \{\text{true}, \text{false}\})) \\ &\cong \text{Sets}(A, \mathcal{P}(B)), \end{aligned}$$

where the last bijection is from ?? of ??.

- **Item 2 \iff Item 4:** This is also an instance of currying, following from the bijections

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Sets}(A \times B, \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}) &\cong \text{Sets}(B, \text{Sets}(B, \{\text{true}, \text{false}\})) \\ &\cong \text{Sets}(B, \mathcal{P}(A)), \end{aligned}$$

where again the last bijection is from ?? of ??.

- **Item 2 \iff Item 5:** This follows from the universal property of the powerset $\mathcal{P}(X)$ of a set X as the free cocompletion of X via the characteristic embedding

$$\chi_X: X \hookrightarrow \mathcal{P}(X)$$

of X into $\mathcal{P}(X)$ (?? of ??).

In particular, the bijection

$$\text{Rel}(A, B) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Pos}}^{\text{cocont}}(\mathcal{P}(A), \mathcal{P}(B))$$

is given by taking a relation $R: A \nrightarrow B$, passing to its associated function $f: A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$ from A to B and then extending f from A to all of $\mathcal{P}(A)$ by taking its left Kan extension along χ_X .

This coincides with the direct image function $f_*: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$ of ??.

This finishes the proof. □

⁴*Intuition:* In particular, we may think of a relation $R: A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$ from A to B as a multivalued function from A to B (including the possibility of a given $a \in A$ having no value at all).

00BU Proposition 5.1.1.4. Let A and B be sets.

00BV (1) *End Formula for The Poset of Relations.* Let $R, S: A \nrightarrow B$ be relations. We have

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)}(R, S) \cong \int_{a \in A} \int_{b \in B} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t,f}\}}(R_b^a, S_b^a).$$

Proof. *Item 1, End Formula for The Poset of Relations:* Unwinding the expression inside the end on the right hand side, we have

$$\int_{a \in A} \int_{b \in B} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t,f}\}}(R_b^a, S_b^a) \cong \begin{cases} \text{pt} & \text{if for each } (a, b) \in A \times B, \\ & \quad \text{if } a \sim_R b, \text{ then } a \sim_S b, \\ \emptyset & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

On the left hand-side, we have

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)}(R, S) \cong \begin{cases} \text{pt} & \text{if } R \subset S, \\ \emptyset & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

It is then clear that the conditions for each set to evaluate to pt are equivalent, implying that those two sets are isomorphic, finishing the proof. \square

5.1.2. Relations as Decategorifications of Profunctors.

00BX Remark 5.1.2.1.1. The notion of a relation is a decategorification of that of a profunctor:

(1) A profunctor from a category C to a category D is a functor

$$\mathfrak{p}: D^{\text{op}} \times C \rightarrow \text{Sets}.$$

(2) A relation on sets A and B is a function

$$R: A \times B \rightarrow \{\text{true, false}\}.$$

Here we notice that:

- The opposite X^{op} of a set X is itself, as $(-)^{\text{op}}: \text{Cats} \rightarrow \text{Cats}$ restricts to the identity endofunctor on Sets ;
- The values that profunctors and relations take are directly related in relation to decategorification:
 - A category is enriched over the category

$$\text{Sets} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Cats}_0$$

of sets, with profunctors taking values on it;

– A set is enriched over the set

$$\{\text{true, false}\} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Cats}_{-1}$$

of classical truth values, with relations taking values on it;

00BY Remark 5.1.2.1.2. Extending [Remark 5.1.2.1.1](#), the equivalent definitions of relations in [Remark 5.1.1.3](#) are also related to the corresponding ones for profunctors [\(??\)](#), which state that a profunctor $\mathfrak{p}: C \nrightarrow D$ is equivalently:

00BZ (1) A functor $\mathfrak{p}: D^{\text{op}} \times C \rightarrow \text{Sets}$;

00C0 (2) A functor $\mathfrak{p}: C \rightarrow \text{PSh}(D)$;

00C1 (3) A functor $\mathfrak{p}: D^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Fun}(C, \text{Sets})$;

00C2 (4) A colimit-preserving functor $\mathfrak{p}: \mathbf{PSh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{D})$.

Indeed:

- The equivalence between [Items 1](#) and [2](#) (and also that between [Items 1](#) and [3](#), which is proved analogously) is an instance of currying, both for profunctors as well as for relations, using the isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{Sets}(A \times B, \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}) &\cong \mathbf{Sets}(A, \mathbf{Sets}(B, \{\text{true}, \text{false}\})) \\ &\cong \mathbf{Sets}(A, \mathcal{P}(B)), \\ \mathbf{Fun}(\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{D}, \mathbf{Sets}) &\cong \mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathbf{Fun}(\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Sets})) \\ &\cong \mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{D})).\end{aligned}$$

- The equivalence between [Items 1](#) and [3](#) follows from the universal properties of:

- The powerset $\mathcal{P}(X)$ of a set X as the free cocompletion of X via the characteristic embedding

$$\chi_{(-)}: X \hookrightarrow \mathcal{P}(X)$$

of X into $\mathcal{P}(X)$ ([??](#) of [??](#));

- The category $\mathbf{PSh}(C)$ of presheaves on a category C as the free cocompletion of C via the Yoneda embedding

$$\mathfrak{y}: C \hookrightarrow \mathbf{PSh}(C)$$

of C into $\mathbf{PSh}(C)$ ([??](#) of [??](#)).

5.1.3. Examples of Relations.

00C4 **Example 5.1.3.1.1.** The trivial relation on A and B is the relation \sim_{triv} defined by^{5,6,7}

$$\sim_{\text{triv}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A \times A.$$

⁵This is the unique relation R on A and B such that we have $a \sim_R b$ for all $a \in A$ and all $b \in B$.

⁶As a function from $A \times A$ to $\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$, the relation \sim_{triv} is the constant function

$$\Delta_{\text{true}}: A \times A \rightarrow \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$$

from $A \times A$ to $\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$ taking value **true**.

⁷As a function from A to $\mathcal{P}(B)$, the relation \sim_{triv} is the function

$$\Delta_{\text{true}}: A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$$

defined by

$$\Delta_{\text{true}}(a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} B$$

for each $a \in A$.

00C5 Example 5.1.3.1.2. The **cotrivial relation on A and B** is the relation \sim_{cotriv} defined by^{8,9,10}

$$\sim_{\text{cotriv}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \emptyset.$$

00C6 Example 5.1.3.1.3. The characteristic relation on A of ?? of ?? is another example of a relation. It is in fact the unique relation on A making the following conditions equivalent, for each $a, b \in A$:

- (1) We have $a \sim_{\text{id}} b$.
- (2) We have $a = b$.

00C7 Example 5.1.3.1.4. Square roots are examples of relations:

- (1) *Square Roots in \mathbb{R} .* The assignment $x \mapsto \sqrt{x}$ defines a relation

$$\sqrt{-} : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{R})$$

from \mathbb{R} to itself, being explicitly given by

$$\sqrt{x} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x = 0, \\ \{-\sqrt{|x|}, \sqrt{|x|}\} & \text{if } x \neq 0. \end{cases}$$

- (2) *Square Roots in \mathbb{Q} .* Square roots in \mathbb{Q} are similar to square roots in \mathbb{R} , though now additionally it may also occur that $\sqrt{-} : \mathbb{Q} \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{Q})$ sends a rational number x (e.g. 2) to the empty set (since $\sqrt{2} \notin \mathbb{Q}$).

00C8 Example 5.1.3.1.5. The complex logarithm defines a relation

$$\log : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{C})$$

from \mathbb{C} to itself, where we have

$$\log(a + bi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ \log(\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}) + i \arg(a + bi) + (2\pi i)k \mid k \in \mathbb{Z} \right\}$$

for each $a + bi \in \mathbb{C}$.

00C9 Example 5.1.3.1.6. See [wikipedia:multivalued-functions] for more examples of relations, such as antiderivation, inverse trigonometric functions, and inverse hyperbolic functions.

5.1.4. Functional Relations. Let A and B be sets.

00CB Definition 5.1.4.1.1. A relation $R : A \nrightarrow B$ is **functional** if, for each $a \in A$, the set $R(a)$ is either empty or a singleton.

00CC Proposition 5.1.4.1.2. Let $R : A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

00CD (1) *Characterisations.* The following conditions are equivalent:

⁸This is the unique relation R on A and B such that we have $a \sim_R b$ for no $a \in A$ and no $b \in B$.

⁹As a function from $A \times B$ to $\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$, the relation \sim_{cotriv} is the constant function

$$\Delta_{\text{false}} : A \times B \rightarrow \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$$

from $A \times B$ to $\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$ taking value **false**.

¹⁰As a function from A to $\mathcal{P}(A)$, the relation \sim_{cotriv} is the function

$$\Delta_{\text{false}} : A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$$

defined by

$$\Delta_{\text{true}}(a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \emptyset$$

for each $a \in A$.

- 00CE** (a) The relation R is functional.
00CF (b) We have $R \diamond R^\dagger \subset \chi_B$.

Proof. *Item 1, Characterisations:* We claim that **Items 1a** and **1b** are indeed equivalent:

- **Item 1a \implies Item 1b:** Let $(b, b') \in B \times B$. We need to show that

$$[R \diamond R^\dagger](b, b') \preceq_{\{\text{t,f}\}} \chi_B(b, b'),$$

i.e. that if there exists some $a \in A$ such that $b \sim_{R^\dagger} a$ and $a \sim_R b'$, then $b = b'$. But since $b \sim_{R^\dagger} a$ is the same as $a \sim_R b$, we have both $a \sim_R b$ and $a \sim_R b'$ at the same time, which implies $b = b'$ since R is functional.

- **Item 1b \implies Item 1a:** Suppose that we have $a \sim_R b$ and $a \sim_R b'$ for $b, b' \in B$. We claim that $b = b'$:

- (1) Since $a \sim_R b$, we have $b \sim_{R^\dagger} a$.
- (2) Since $R \diamond R^\dagger \subset \chi_B$, we have

$$[R \diamond R^\dagger](b, b') \preceq_{\{\text{t,f}\}} \chi_B(b, b'),$$

and since $b \sim_{R^\dagger} a$ and $a \sim_R b'$, it follows that $[R \diamond R^\dagger](b, b') = \text{true}$, and thus $\chi_B(b, b') = \text{true}$ as well, i.e. $b = b'$.

This finishes the proof. \square

5.1.5. Total Relations.

Let A and B be sets.

- 00CH** **Definition 5.1.5.1.1.** A relation $R: A \nrightarrow B$ is **total** if, for each $a \in A$, we have $R(a) \neq \emptyset$.

- 00CJ** **Proposition 5.1.5.1.2.** Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

- 00CK** (1) *Characterisations.* The following conditions are equivalent:

- 00CL** (a) The relation R is total.

- 00CM** (b) We have $\chi_A \subset R^\dagger \diamond R$.

Proof. *Item 1, Characterisations:* We claim that **Items 1a** and **1b** are indeed equivalent:

- **Item 1a \implies Item 1b:** We have to show that, for each $(a, a') \in A$, we have

$$\chi_A(a, a') \preceq_{\{\text{t,f}\}} [R^\dagger \diamond R](a, a'),$$

i.e. that if $a = a'$, then there exists some $b \in B$ such that $a \sim_R b$ and $b \sim_{R^\dagger} a'$ (i.e. $a \sim_R b$ again), which follows from the totality of R .

- **Item 1b \implies Item 1a:** Given $a \in A$, since $\chi_A \subset R^\dagger \diamond R$, we must have

$$\{a\} \subset [R^\dagger \diamond R](a),$$

implying that there must exist some $b \in B$ such that $a \sim_R b$ and $b \sim_{R^\dagger} a$ (i.e. $a \sim_R b$) and thus $R(a) \neq \emptyset$, as $b \in R(a)$.

This finishes the proof. \square

5.2. Categories of Relations

5.2.1. The Category of Relations.

00CQ Definition 5.2.1.1. The **category of relations** is the category Rel where

- *Objects.* The objects of Rel are sets;
- *Morphisms.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, we have

$$\text{Rel}(A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Rel}(A, B);$$

- *Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Rel})$, the unit map

$$\mathbb{1}_A^{\text{Rel}}: \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Rel}(A, A)$$

of Rel at A is defined by

$$\text{id}_A^{\text{Rel}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \chi_A(-1, -2),$$

where $\chi_A(-1, -2)$ is the characteristic relation of A of ?? of ??;

- *Composition.* For each $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\text{Rel})$, the composition map

$$\circ_{A,B,C}^{\text{Rel}}: \text{Rel}(B, C) \times \text{Rel}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Rel}(A, C)$$

of Rel at (A, B, C) is defined by

$$S \circ_{A,B,C}^{\text{Rel}} R \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S \diamond R$$

for each $(S, R) \in \text{Rel}(B, C) \times \text{Rel}(A, B)$, where $S \diamond R$ is the composition of S and R of [Definition 5.3.12.1.1](#).

5.2.2. The Closed Symmetric Monoidal Category of Relations.

5.2.2.1. The Monoidal Product.

00CT Definition 5.2.2.1.1. The **monoidal product** of Rel is the functor

$$\times: \text{Rel} \times \text{Rel} \rightarrow \text{Rel}$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* We have

$$\times(A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A \times B,$$

where $A \times B$ is the Cartesian product of sets of ??;

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $(A, C), (B, D) \in \text{Obj}(\text{Rel} \times \text{Rel})$, the action on morphisms

$$\times_{(A,C),(B,D)}: \text{Rel}(A, B) \times \text{Rel}(C, D) \rightarrow \text{Rel}(A \times C, B \times D)$$

of \times is given by sending a pair of morphisms (R, S) of the form

$$R: A \not\rightarrow B,$$

$$S: C \not\rightarrow D$$

to the relation

$$R \times S: A \times C \not\rightarrow B \times D$$

of [Definition 5.3.9.1.1](#).

5.2.2.2. The Monoidal Unit.

00CV Definition 5.2.2.2.1. The **monoidal unit** of Rel is the functor

$$\mathbb{1}_{\text{Rel}}^{\text{Rel}}: \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Rel}$$

picking the set

$$\mathbb{1}_{\text{Rel}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{pt}$$

of Rel .

5.2.2.3. *The Associator.*

00CX Definition 5.2.2.3.1. The **associator** of Rel is the natural isomorphism

$$\alpha^{\text{Rel}}: \times \circ ((\times) \times \text{id}) \xrightarrow{\cong} \times \circ (\text{id} \times (\times)),$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Rel} \times \text{Rel} \times \text{Rel} & \xrightarrow{\text{id} \times (\times)} & \text{Rel} \times \text{Rel} \\ \downarrow (\times) \times \text{id} & \nearrow \alpha^{\text{Rel}} & \downarrow \times \\ \text{Rel} \times \text{Rel} & \xrightarrow{\times} & \text{Rel}, \end{array}$$

whose component

$$\alpha_{A,B,C}^{\text{Rel}}: (A \times B) \times C \not\rightarrow A \times (B \times C)$$

at (A, B, C) is defined by declaring

$$((a, b), c) \sim_{\alpha_{A,B,C}^{\text{Rel}}} (a', (b', c'))$$

iff $a = a'$, $b = b'$, and $c = c'$.

5.2.2.4. *The Left Unitor.*

00CZ Definition 5.2.2.4.1. The **left unitor** of Rel is the natural isomorphism

$$\lambda^{\text{Rel}}: \times \circ (\mathbb{1}^{\text{Rel}} \times \text{id}) \xrightarrow{\cong} \lambda_{\text{Rel}}^{\text{Cats}_2},$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{pt} \times \text{Rel} & \xrightarrow{\mathbb{1}^{\text{Rel}} \times \text{id}} & \text{Rel} \times \text{Rel} \\ \downarrow \lambda_{\text{Rel}}^{\text{Cats}_2} & \nearrow \lambda^{\text{Rel}} & \downarrow \times \\ & & \text{Rel}, \end{array}$$

whose component

$$\lambda_A^{\text{Rel}}: \mathbb{1}_{\text{Rel}} \times A \not\rightarrow A$$

at A is defined by declaring

$$(\star, a) \sim_{\lambda_A^{\text{Rel}}} b$$

iff $a = b$.

5.2.2.5. *The Right Unitor.*

00D1 Definition 5.2.2.5.1. The **right unitor** of Rel is the natural isomorphism

$$\rho^{\text{Rel}}: \times \circ (\text{id} \times \mathbb{1}^{\text{Rel}}) \xrightarrow{\cong} \rho_{\text{Rel}}^{\text{Cats}_2},$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Rel} \times \text{pt} & \xrightarrow{\text{id} \times \mathbb{1}^{\text{Rel}}} & \text{Rel} \times \text{Rel} \\ \downarrow \rho_{\text{Rel}}^{\text{Cats}_2} & \nearrow \rho^{\text{Rel}} & \downarrow \times \\ & & \text{Rel}, \end{array}$$

whose component

$$\rho_A^{\text{Rel}}: A \times \mathbb{1}_{\text{Rel}} \not\rightarrow A$$

at A is defined by declaring

$$(a, \star) \sim_{\rho_A^{\text{Rel}}} b$$

iff $a = b$.

5.2.2.6. The Symmetry.

00D3 Definition 5.2.2.6.1. The **symmetry of Rel** is the natural isomorphism

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Rel} \times \text{Rel} & \xrightarrow{\quad \times \quad} & \text{Rel}, \\ \sigma^{\text{Rel}} : \times \Longrightarrow \times \circ \sigma_{\text{Rel}, \text{Rel}}^{\text{Cats}_2}, & & \\ \downarrow \sigma_{\text{Rel}, \text{Rel}}^{\text{Cats}_2} & \parallel & \downarrow \sigma^{\text{Rel}} \\ \text{Rel} \times \text{Rel} & & \end{array}$$

whose component

$$\sigma_{A, B}^{\text{Rel}} : A \times B \rightarrow B \times A$$

at (A, B) is defined by declaring

$$(a, b) \sim_{\sigma_{A, B}^{\text{Rel}}} (b', a')$$

iff $a = a'$ and $b = b'$.

5.2.2.7. The Internal Hom.

00D5 Definition 5.2.2.7.1. The **internal Hom of Rel** is the functor

$$\mathbf{Hom}_{\text{Rel}} : \text{Rel}^{\text{op}} \times \text{Rel} \rightarrow \text{Rel}$$

defined by

$$\mathbf{Hom}_{\text{Rel}}(A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A \times B$$

for each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Rel})$.

00D6 Proposition 5.2.2.7.2. Let $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\text{Rel})$.

00D7 (1) *Via Self-Duality.* The internal Hom $\mathbf{Hom}_{\text{Rel}}$ of Rel is given by the composition

$$\text{Rel}^{\text{op}} \times \text{Rel} \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{Rel} \times \text{Rel} \xrightarrow{\times} \text{Rel},$$

where the self-duality equivalence $\text{Rel}^{\text{op}} \cong \text{Rel}$ comes from Item 1 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1.

00D8 (2) *Adjointness.* We have adjunctions

$$\begin{aligned} (A \times - \dashv \mathbf{Hom}_{\text{Rel}}(A, -)) : \text{Rel} &\rightleftarrows_{\mathbf{Hom}_{\text{Rel}}(A, -)} \text{Rel}, \\ &\text{with } A \times - \text{ left adjoint to } \mathbf{Hom}_{\text{Rel}}(A, -), \\ (- \times B \dashv \mathbf{Hom}_{\text{Rel}}(B, -)) : \text{Rel} &\rightleftarrows_{\mathbf{Hom}_{\text{Rel}}(B, -)} \text{Rel}, \\ &\text{with } - \times B \text{ left adjoint to } \mathbf{Hom}_{\text{Rel}}(B, -). \end{aligned}$$

witnessed by bijections

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Rel}(A \times B, C) &\cong \text{Rel}(A, \mathbf{Hom}_{\text{Rel}}(B, C)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Rel}(A, B \times C), \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Rel}(A \times B, C) &\cong \text{Rel}(B, \mathbf{Hom}_{\text{Rel}}(A, C)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Rel}(B, A \times C), \end{aligned}$$

natural in $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel})$.

Proof. *Item 1, Via Self-Duality:* Omitted.

Item 2, Adjointness: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Rel}(A \times B, C) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Sets}(A \times B \times C, \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Rel}(A, B \times C) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Rel}(A, \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}}(B, C)),\end{aligned}$$

and similarly for the bijection $\text{Rel}(A \times B, C) \cong \text{Rel}(B, \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}}(A, C))$. \square

5.2.2.8. The Closed Symmetric Monoidal Category of Relations.

00DA Definition 5.2.2.8.1. The **closed symmetric monoidal category of relations** is the closed symmetric monoidal category

$$(\mathbf{Rel}, \times, \mathbb{W}_{\mathbf{Rel}}, \alpha^{\mathbf{Rel}}, \lambda^{\mathbf{Rel}}, \rho^{\mathbf{Rel}}, \sigma^{\mathbf{Rel}}, \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}})$$

consisting of

- *The Underlying Category.* The category \mathbf{Rel} of sets and relations of [Definition 5.2.1.1.1](#);
- *The Monoidal Product.* The functor

$$\times : \mathbf{Rel} \times \mathbf{Rel} \rightarrow \mathbf{Rel}$$

of [Definition 5.2.2.1.1](#);

- *The Monoidal Unit.* The functor $\mathbb{W}^{\mathbf{Rel}}$ of [Definition 5.2.2.2.1](#);
- *The Associator.* The natural isomorphism $\alpha^{\mathbf{Rel}}$ of [Definition 5.2.2.3.1](#);
- *The Left Unitor.* The natural isomorphism $\lambda^{\mathbf{Rel}}$ of [Definition 5.2.2.4.1](#);
- *The Right Unitor.* The natural isomorphism $\rho^{\mathbf{Rel}}$ of [Definition 5.2.2.5.1](#);
- *The Symmetry.* The natural isomorphism $\sigma^{\mathbf{Rel}}$ of [Definition 5.2.2.6.1](#);
- *The Internal Hom.* The functor

$$\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}} : \mathbf{Rel}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{Rel} \rightarrow \mathbf{Rel}$$

of [Definition 5.2.2.7.1](#).

5.2.3. The 2-Category of Relations.

00DC Definition 5.2.3.1.1. The **2-category of relations** is the locally posetal 2-category **Rel** where

- *Objects.* The objects of **Rel** are sets;
- *Hom-Objects.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}}(A, B) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbf{Rel}(A, B) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\text{Rel}(A, B), \subset);\end{aligned}$$

- *Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel})$, the unit map

$$\mathbb{W}_A^{\mathbf{Rel}} : \text{pt} \rightarrow \mathbf{Rel}(A, A)$$

of **Rel** at A is defined by

$$\text{id}_A^{\mathbf{Rel}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \chi_A(-_1, -_2),$$

where $\chi_A(-_1, -_2)$ is the characteristic relation of A of ?? of ??;

- *Composition.* For each $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel})$, the composition map¹¹

$$\circ_{A,B,C}^{\mathbf{Rel}} : \mathbf{Rel}(B, C) \times \mathbf{Rel}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Rel}(A, C)$$

of \mathbf{Rel} at (A, B, C) is defined by

$$S \circ_{A,B,C}^{\mathbf{Rel}} R \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S \diamond R$$

for each $(S, R) \in \mathbf{Rel}(B, C) \times \mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$, where $S \diamond R$ is the composition of S and R of [Definition 5.3.12.1.1](#).

5.2.4. The Double Category of Relations.

5.2.4.1. The Double Category of Relations.

00DF **Definition 5.2.4.1.1.** The **double category of relations** is the locally posetal double category $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}$ where

- *Objects.* The objects of $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}$ are sets;
- *Vertical Morphisms.* The vertical morphisms of $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}$ are maps of sets $f: A \rightarrow B$;
- *Horizontal Morphisms.* The horizontal morphisms of $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}$ are relations $R: A \nrightarrow X$;
- *2-Morphisms.* A 2-cell

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{R} & B \\ f \downarrow & \Downarrow \alpha & \downarrow g \\ X & \xrightarrow{S} & Y \end{array}$$

of $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}$ is either non-existent or an inclusion of relations of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times B & \xrightarrow{R} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ R \subset S \circ (f \times g), & f \times g \downarrow & \curvearrowleft \qquad \downarrow \text{id}_{\{\text{true, false}\}} \\ X \times Y & \xrightarrow{S} & \{\text{true, false}\}; \end{array}$$

- *Horizontal Identities.* The horizontal unit functor of $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}$ is the functor of [Definition 5.2.4.2.1](#);
- *Vertical Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}})$, we have

$$\text{id}_A^{\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_A;$$

¹¹Note that this is indeed a morphism of posets: given relations $R_1, R_2 \in \mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ and $S_1, S_2 \in \mathbf{Rel}(B, C)$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} R_1 &\subset R_2, \\ S_1 &\subset S_2, \end{aligned}$$

we have also $S_1 \diamond R_1 \subset S_2 \diamond R_2$.

- *Identity 2-Morphisms.* For each horizontal morphism $R: A \nrightarrow B$ of Rel^{dbl} , the identity 2-morphism

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{R} & B \\ \downarrow \text{id}_A & \parallel & \downarrow \text{id}_B \\ A & \xrightarrow{R} & B \end{array}$$

of R is the identity inclusion

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B \times A & \xrightarrow{R} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ R \subset R, \quad \text{id}_B \times \text{id}_A \downarrow & \curvearrowright & \downarrow \text{id}_{\{\text{true, false}\}} \\ B \times A & \xrightarrow{R} & \{\text{true, false}\}; \end{array}$$

- *Horizontal Composition.* The horizontal composition functor of Rel^{dbl} is the functor of [Definition 5.2.4.3.1](#);
- *Vertical Composition of 1-Morphisms.* For each composable pair $A \xrightarrow{F} B \xrightarrow{G} C$ of vertical morphisms of Rel^{dbl} , i.e. maps of sets, we have

$$g \circ^{\text{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}} f \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} g \circ f;$$

- *Vertical Composition of 2-Morphisms.* The vertical composition of 2-morphisms in Rel^{dbl} is defined as in [Definition 5.2.4.4.1](#);
- *Associators.* The associators of Rel^{dbl} is defined as in [Definition 5.2.4.5.1](#);
- *Left Unitors.* The left unitors of Rel^{dbl} is defined as in [Definition 5.2.4.6.1](#);
- *Right Unitors.* The right unitors of Rel^{dbl} is defined as in [Definition 5.2.4.7.1](#).

5.2.4.2. Horizontal Identities.

00DH Definition 5.2.4.2.1. The **horizontal unit functor** of Rel^{dbl} is the functor

$$\mathbb{1}^{\text{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}}: \text{Rel}_0^{\text{dbl}} \rightarrow \text{Rel}_1^{\text{dbl}}$$

of Rel^{dbl} is the functor where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Rel}_0^{\text{dbl}})$, we have

$$\mathbb{1}_A \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \chi_A(-1, -2);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each vertical morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ of Rel^{dbl} , i.e. each map of sets f from A to B , the identity 2-morphism

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{\mathbb{1}_A} & A \\ f \downarrow & \parallel & \downarrow f \\ B & \xrightarrow{\mathbb{1}_B} & B \end{array}$$

of f is the inclusion

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times A & \xrightarrow{\chi_A(-_1, -_2)} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ f \times f \downarrow & \curvearrowleft & \downarrow \text{id}_{\{\text{true, false}\}} \\ B \times B & \xrightarrow{\chi_B(-_1, -_2)} & \{\text{true, false}\} \end{array}$$

of ?? of ??.

5.2.4.3. Horizontal Composition.

00DK Definition 5.2.4.3.1. The **horizontal composition functor** of Rel^{dbl} is the functor

$$\odot^{\text{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}} : \text{Rel}_1^{\text{dbl}} \times_{\text{Rel}_0^{\text{dbl}}} \text{Rel}_1^{\text{dbl}} \rightarrow \text{Rel}_1^{\text{dbl}}$$

of Rel^{dbl} is the functor where

- *Action on Objects.* For each composable pair $A \xrightarrow{R} B \xrightarrow{S} C$ of horizontal morphisms of Rel^{dbl} , we have

$$S \odot R \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S \diamond R,$$

where $S \diamond R$ is the composition of R and S of [Definition 5.3.12.1.1](#);

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each horizontally composable pair

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{R} & B \\ f \downarrow & \alpha \Downarrow & \downarrow g \\ X & \xrightarrow{T} & Y \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{S} & C \\ g \downarrow & \beta \Downarrow & \downarrow h \\ Y & \xrightarrow{U} & Z \end{array}$$

of 2-morphisms of Rel^{dbl} , i.e. for each pair

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times B & \xrightarrow{R} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ f \times g \downarrow & \curvearrowleft & \downarrow \text{id}_{\{\text{true, false}\}} \\ X \times Y & \xrightarrow{T} & \{\text{true, false}\} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B \times C & \xrightarrow{S} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ g \times h \downarrow & \curvearrowleft & \downarrow \text{id}_{\{\text{true, false}\}} \\ Y \times Z & \xrightarrow{U} & \{\text{true, false}\} \end{array}$$

of inclusions of relations, the horizontal composition

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{S \odot R} & C \\ f \downarrow & \beta \odot \alpha \Downarrow & \downarrow h \\ X & \xrightarrow{U \odot T} & Z \end{array}$$

of α and β is the inclusion of relations¹²

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times C & \xrightarrow{S \diamond R} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ (U \diamond T) \circ (f \times h) \subset (S \diamond R) & f \times h \downarrow & \curvearrowleft \quad \downarrow \text{id}_{\{\text{true, false}\}} \\ X \times Z & \xrightarrow{U \diamond T} & \{\text{true, false}\}. \end{array}$$

5.2.4.4. Vertical Composition of 2-Morphisms.

00DM **Definition 5.2.4.4.1.** The **vertical composition** in Rel^{dbl} is defined as follows: for each vertically composable pair

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{R} & X \\ f \downarrow & \parallel \alpha & \downarrow g \\ B & \xrightarrow[S]{\quad} & Y \\ & & \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{S} & Y \\ h \downarrow & \parallel \beta & \downarrow k \\ C & \xrightarrow[T]{\quad} & Z \\ & & \end{array}$$

of 2-morphisms of Rel^{dbl} , i.e. for each each pair

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times X & \xrightarrow{R} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ f \times g \downarrow & \curvearrowleft & \downarrow \text{id}_{\{\text{true, false}\}} \\ B \times Y & \xrightarrow[S]{\quad} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ & & \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B \times Y & \xrightarrow{S} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ h \times k \downarrow & \curvearrowleft & \downarrow \text{id}_{\{\text{true, false}\}} \\ C \times Z & \xrightarrow[T]{\quad} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ & & \end{array}$$

of inclusions of relations, we define the vertical composition

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{R} & X \\ h \circ f \downarrow & \parallel \beta \circ \alpha & \downarrow k \circ g \\ C & \xrightarrow[T]{\quad} & Z \\ & & \end{array}$$

of α and β as the inclusion of relations

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times X & \xrightarrow{R} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ T \circ [(h \circ f) \times (k \circ g)] \subset R, \quad (h \circ f) \times (k \circ g) \downarrow & \curvearrowleft & \downarrow \text{id}_{\{\text{true, false}\}} \\ C \times Z & \xrightarrow[T]{\quad} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ & & \end{array}$$

¹²This is justified by noting that, given $(a, c) \in A \times C$, the statement

- We have $a \sim_{(U \diamond T) \circ (f \times h)} c$, i.e. $f(a) \sim_{U \diamond T} h(c)$, i.e. there exists some $y \in Y$ such that:
 - (1) We have $f(a) \sim_T y$;
 - (2) We have $y \sim_U h(c)$;

is implied by the statement

- We have $a \sim_{S \diamond R} c$, i.e. there exists some $b \in B$ such that:
 - (1) We have $a \sim_R b$;
 - (2) We have $b \sim_S c$;

since:

given by the pasting of inclusions¹³

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A \times X & \xrightarrow{R} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\
 f \times g \downarrow & \curvearrowleft & \downarrow \text{id}_{\{\text{true, false}\}} \\
 B \times Y & \xrightarrow{-S} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\
 h \times k \downarrow & \curvearrowleft & \downarrow \text{id}_{\{\text{true, false}\}} \\
 C \times Z & \xrightarrow[T]{ } & \{\text{true, false}\}.
 \end{array}$$

5.2.4.5. The Associators.

00DP **Definition 5.2.4.5.1.** For each composable triple $A \xrightarrow{R} B \xrightarrow{S} C \xrightarrow{T} D$ of horizontal morphisms of Rel^{dbl} , the component

$$\alpha_{T,S,R}^{\text{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}} : (T \odot S) \odot R \xrightarrow{\cong} T \odot (S \odot R), \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{R} & B & \xrightarrow{S} & C & \xrightarrow{T} & D \\ \text{id}_A \downarrow & & \alpha_{T,S,R}^{\text{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}} \Downarrow & & & & \downarrow \text{id}_D \\ A & \xrightarrow[R]{ } & B & \xrightarrow[S]{ } & C & \xrightarrow[T]{ } & D \end{array}$$

of the associator of Rel^{dbl} at (R, S, T) is the identity inclusion¹⁴

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A \times B & \xrightarrow{(T \diamond S) \diamond R} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\
 (T \diamond S) \diamond R = T \diamond (S \diamond R) & \parallel & \equiv \\
 A \times B & \xrightarrow[T \diamond (S \diamond R)]{} & \{\text{true, false}\}.
 \end{array}$$

5.2.4.6. The Left Unitors.

-
- If $a \sim_R b$, then $f(a) \sim_T g(b)$, as $T \circ (f \times g) \subset R$;
 - If $b \sim_S c$, then $g(b) \sim_U h(c)$, as $U \circ (g \times h) \subset S$;

¹³This is justified by noting that, given $(a, x) \in A \times X$, the statement

- We have $h(f(a)) \sim_T k(g(x))$;

is implied by the statement

- We have $a \sim_R x$;

since

- If $a \sim_R x$, then $f(a) \sim_S g(x)$, as $S \circ (f \times g) \subset R$;
- If $b \sim_S y$, then $h(b) \sim_T k(y)$, as $T \circ (h \times k) \subset S$, and thus, in particular:
 - If $f(a) \sim_S g(x)$, then $h(f(a)) \sim_T k(g(x))$;

¹⁴This is justified by Item 2 of Proposition 5.3.12.1.3.

00DR **Definition 5.2.4.6.1.** For each horizontal morphism $R: A \dashv B$ of $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}$, the component

$$\lambda_R^{\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}}: \mathbb{1}_B \odot R \xrightarrow{\cong} R, \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{R} & B & \xrightarrow{\mathbb{1}_B} & B \\ \downarrow \text{id}_A & & \downarrow \lambda_R^{\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}} & \parallel & \downarrow \text{id}_B \\ A & \xrightarrow[R]{} & B & & \end{array}$$

of the left unit of $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}$ at R is the identity inclusion¹⁵

$$R = \chi_B \diamond R, \quad \begin{array}{ccc} A \times B & \xrightarrow{\chi_B \diamond R} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ \parallel & \bowtie & \downarrow \text{id}_{\{\text{true, false}\}} \\ A \times B & \xrightarrow[R]{} & \{\text{true, false}\}. \end{array}$$

5.2.4.7. The Right Unitors.

00DT **Definition 5.2.4.7.1.** For each horizontal morphism $R: A \dashv B$ of $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}$, the component

$$\rho_R^{\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}}: R \odot \mathbb{1}_A \xrightarrow{\cong} R, \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{\mathbb{1}_A} & A & \xrightarrow{R} & B \\ \downarrow \text{id}_A & & \downarrow \rho_R^{\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}} & \parallel & \downarrow \text{id}_B \\ A & \xrightarrow[R]{} & B & & \end{array}$$

of the right unit of $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{dbl}}$ at R is the identity inclusion¹⁶

$$R = R \diamond \chi_A, \quad \begin{array}{ccc} A \times B & \xrightarrow{R \diamond \chi_A} & \{\text{true, false}\} \\ \parallel & \bowtie & \downarrow \text{id}_{\{\text{true, false}\}} \\ A \times B & \xrightarrow[R]{} & \{\text{true, false}\}. \end{array}$$

5.2.5. Properties of the Category of Relations.

00DV **Proposition 5.2.5.1.1.** Let A and B be sets.

00DW (1) *Self-Duality I.* The category \mathbf{Rel} is self-dual, i.e. we have an equivalence

$$\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{op}} \xrightarrow{\text{eq.}} \mathbf{Rel}$$

of categories.

00DX (2) *Self-Duality II.* The bicategory \mathbf{Rel} is self-dual, i.e. we have a biequivalence

$$\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{op}} \xrightarrow{\text{eq.}} \mathbf{Rel}$$

of bicategories.

¹⁵This is justified by Item 3 of Proposition 5.3.12.1.3.

¹⁶This is justified by Item 3 of Proposition 5.3.12.1.3.

00DY (3) *Equivalences and Isomorphisms in Rel.* Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation from A to B . The following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The relation $R: A \nrightarrow B$ is an equivalence in **Rel**, i.e. there exists a relation $R^{-1}: B \nrightarrow A$ from B to A together with isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned} R^{-1} \diamond R &\cong \chi_A, \\ R \diamond R^{-1} &\cong \chi_B. \end{aligned}$$

00E0 (b) The relation $R: A \nrightarrow B$ is an isomorphism in **Rel**, i.e. there exists a relation $R^{-1}: B \nrightarrow A$ from B to A such that we have

$$\begin{aligned} R^{-1} \diamond R &= \chi_A, \\ R \diamond R^{-1} &= \chi_B. \end{aligned}$$

00E1 (c) There exists a bijection $f: A \xrightarrow{\cong} B$ with $R = \text{Gr}(f)$.

00E2 (4) *Adjunctions in Rel.* We have a natural bijection

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Adjunctions in } \mathbf{Rel} \\ \text{from } A \text{ to } B \end{array} \right\} \cong \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Functions} \\ \text{from } A \text{ to } B \end{array} \right\},$$

with every adjunction in **Rel** being of the form $\text{Gr}(f) \dashv f^{-1}$ for some function f .

00E3 (5) *Monads in Rel.* We have a natural bijection¹⁷

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Monads in } \\ \mathbf{Rel} \text{ on } A \end{array} \right\} \cong \{\text{Preorders on } A\}.$$

00E4 (6) *Comonads in Rel.* We have a natural bijection

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Comonads in } \\ \mathbf{Rel} \text{ on } A \end{array} \right\} \cong \{\text{Subsets of } A\}.$$

00E5 (7) *Characterisations of Monomorphisms in Rel.* Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation. The following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The relation R is a monomorphism in **Rel**.
(b) The direct image function

$$R_*: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$$

associated to R is injective.

00E8 (c) The direct image with compact support function

$$R_!: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$$

associated to R is injective.

Moreover, if R is a monomorphism, then it satisfies the following condition, and the converse holds if R is total:

- (*) For each $a, a' \in A$, if there exists some $b \in B$ such that $a \sim_R b$ and $a' \sim_R b$, then $a = a'$.

00E9 (8) *Epimorphisms in Rel.* Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation. The following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The relation R is an epimorphism in **Rel**.

¹⁷See also [Section 5.6](#) for an extension of this correspondence to “relative monads on **Rel**”.

- 00EB (b) The weak inverse image function

$$R^{-1}: \mathcal{P}(B) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$$

associated to R is injective.

- 00EC (c) The strong inverse image function

$$R_{-1}: \mathcal{P}(B) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$$

associated to R is injective.

- 00ED (d) The function $R: A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$ is “surjective on singletons”:

(*) For each $b \in B$, there exists some $a \in A$ such that $R(a) = \{b\}$.

- 00EE (9) *As a Kleisli Category.* We have an isomorphism of categories

$$\text{Rel} \cong \text{FreeAlg}_{\mathcal{P}},$$

where \mathcal{P} is the powerset monad of ??.

- 00EF (10) *Co/Completeness (Or Lack Thereof).* The category Rel is not co/complete, but admits some co/limits:

- (a) *Zero Objects.* The category Rel has a zero object, the empty set \emptyset .
- (b) *Co/Products.* The category Rel has co/products, both given by disjoint union of sets.
- (c) *Lack of Co/Equalisers.* The category Rel does not have co/equalisers.
- (d) *Limits of Graphs of Functions.* The category Rel has limits whose arrows are all graphs of functions.
- (e) *Colimits of Graphs of Functions.* The category Rel has colimits whose arrows are all graphs of functions, and these agree with the corresponding limits in Sets.

- 00EG (11) *Existence of Right Kan Extensions.* The right Kan extension

$$\text{Ran}_R: \text{Rel}(A, X) \rightarrow \text{Rel}(B, X)$$

along a relation $R: A \nrightarrow B$ in **Rel** exists and is given by

$$\text{Ran}_R(S) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int_{a \in A} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t,f}\}}(R_{-1}^a, S_{-2}^a)$$

for each $S \in \text{Rel}(A, X)$, so that the following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) We have $b \sim_{\text{Ran}_R(S)} x$.
- (b) For each $a \in A$, if $a \sim_R b$, then $a \sim_S x$.

- 00EH (12) *Existence of Right Kan Lifts.* The right Kan lift

$$\text{Rift}_R: \text{Rel}(X, B) \rightarrow \text{Rel}(X, A)$$

along a relation $R: A \nrightarrow B$ in **Rel** exists and is given by

$$\text{Rift}_R(S) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int_{b \in B} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t,f}\}}(R_b^{-2}, S_b^{-1})$$

for each $S \in \text{Rel}(X, B)$, so that the following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) We have $x \sim_{\text{Rift}_R(S)} a$.
- (b) For each $b \in B$, if $a \sim_R b$, then $x \sim_S b$.

- 00EJ** (13) *Closedness.* The bicategory **Rel** is a closed bicategory, there being, for each $R: A \dashv B$ and set X , a pair of adjunctions

$$(R^* \dashv \text{Ran}_R): \quad \text{Rel}(B, X) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{R^*} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\text{Ran}_R} \end{array} \text{Rel}(A, X),$$

$$(R_* \dashv \text{Rift}_R): \quad \text{Rel}(X, A) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{R_*} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\text{Rift}_R} \end{array} \text{Rel}(X, B),$$

witnessed by bijections

$$\text{Rel}(S \diamond R, T) \cong \text{Rel}(S, \text{Ran}_R(T)),$$

$$\text{Rel}(R \diamond U, V) \cong \text{Rel}(U, \text{Rift}_R(V)),$$

natural in $S \in \text{Rel}(B, X)$, $T \in \text{Rel}(A, X)$, $U \in \text{Rel}(X, A)$, and $V \in \text{Rel}(X, B)$.

Proof. *Item 1, Self-Duality I:* Omitted.

Item 2, Self-Duality II: Omitted.

Item 3, Equivalences and Isomorphisms in Rel: We claim that **Items 3a** to **3c** are indeed equivalent:

- **Item 3a \iff Item 3b:** This follows from the fact that **Rel** is locally posetal, so that natural isomorphisms and equalities of 1-cells in **Rel** coincide.
- **Item 3b \implies Item 3c:** The equalities in **Item 3b** imply $R \dashv R^{-1}$, and thus by **Item 4**, there exists a function $f_R: A \rightarrow B$ associated to R , where, for each $a \in A$, the image $f_R(a)$ of a by f_R is the unique element of $R(a)$, which implies $R = \text{Gr}(f_R)$ in particular. Furthermore, we have $R^{-1} = f_R^{-1}$ (as in **Definition 5.3.2.1.1**). The conditions from **Item 3b** then become the following:

$$f_R^{-1} \diamond f_R = \chi_A,$$

$$f_R \diamond f_R^{-1} = \chi_B.$$

All that is left is to show then is that f_R is a bijection:

- *The Function f_R Is Injective.* Let $a, b \in A$ and suppose that $f_R(a) = f_R(b)$. Since $a \sim_R f_R(a)$ and $f_R(a) = f_R(b) \sim_{R^{-1}} b$, the condition $f_R^{-1} \diamond f_R = \chi_A$ implies that $a = b$, showing f_R to be injective.
- *The Function f_R Is Surjective.* Let $b \in B$. Applying the condition $f_R \diamond f_R^{-1} = \chi_B$ to (b, b) , it follows that there exists some $a \in A$ such that $f_R^{-1}(b) = a$ and $f_R(a) = b$. This shows f_R to be surjective.
- **Item 3c \implies Item 3b:** By **Item 2**, we have an adjunction $\text{Gr}(f) \dashv f^{-1}$, giving inclusions

$$\chi_A \subset f^{-1} \diamond \text{Gr}(f),$$

$$\text{Gr}(f) \diamond f^{-1} \subset \chi_B.$$

We claim the reverse inclusions are also true:

- $f^{-1} \diamond \text{Gr}(f) \subset \chi_A$: This is equivalent to the statement that if $f(a) = b$ and $f^{-1}(b) = a'$, then $a = a'$, which follows from the injectivity of f .
- $\chi_B \subset \text{Gr}(f) \diamond f^{-1}$: This is equivalent to the statement that given $b \in B$ there exists some $a \in A$ such that $f^{-1}(b) = a$ and $f(a) = b$, which follows from the surjectivity of f .

*Item 4, Adjunctions in **Rel**:* We proceed step by step:

- (1) *From Adjunctions in **Rel** to Functions.* An adjunction in **Rel** from A to B consists of a pair of relations

$$\begin{aligned} R: A &\dashrightarrow B, \\ S: B &\dashrightarrow A, \end{aligned}$$

together with inclusions

$$\begin{aligned} \chi_A &\subset S \diamond R, \\ R \diamond S &\subset \chi_B. \end{aligned}$$

We claim that these conditions imply that R is total and functional, i.e. that $R(a)$ is a singleton for each $a \in A$:

- (a) *$R(a)$ Has an Element.* Given $a \in A$, since $\chi_A \subset S \diamond R$, we must have $\{a\} \subset S(R(a))$, implying that there exists some $b \in B$ such that $a \sim_R b$ and $b \sim_S a$, and thus $R(a) \neq \emptyset$, as $b \in R(a)$.
- (b) *$R(a)$ Has No More Than One Element.* Suppose that we have $a \sim_R b$ and $a \sim_R b'$ for $b, b' \in B$. We claim that $b = b'$.
 - (i) Since $\chi_A \subset S \diamond R$, there exists some $k \in B$ such that $a \sim_R k$ and $k \sim_S a$.
 - (ii) Since $R \diamond S \subset \chi_B$, if $b'' \sim_S a'$ and $a' \sim_R b'''$, then $b'' = b'''$.
 - (iii) Applying the above to $b'' = k$, $b''' = b$, and $a' = a$, since $k \sim_S a$ and $a \sim_R b'$, we have $k = b$.
 - (iv) Similarly $k = b'$.
 - (v) Thus $b = b'$.

Together, the above two items show $R(a)$ to be a singleton, being thus given by $\text{Gr}(f)$ for some function $f: A \rightarrow B$, which gives a map

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Adjunctions in } \mathbf{Rel} \\ \text{from } A \text{ to } B \end{array} \right\} \rightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Functions} \\ \text{from } A \text{ to } B \end{array} \right\}.$$

Moreover, by uniqueness of adjoints (?? of ??), this implies also that $S = f^{-1}$.

- (2) *From Functions to Adjunctions in **Rel**.* By Item 2 of Proposition 5.3.1.1.2, every function $f: A \rightarrow B$ gives rise to an adjunction $\text{Gr}(f) \dashv f^{-1}$ in **Rel**, giving a map

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Functions} \\ \text{from } A \text{ to } B \end{array} \right\} \rightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Adjunctions in } \mathbf{Rel} \\ \text{from } A \text{ to } B \end{array} \right\}.$$

- (3) *Invertibility: From Functions to Adjunctions Back to Functions.* We need to show that starting with a function $f: A \rightarrow B$, passing to $\text{Gr}(f) \dashv f^{-1}$, and then passing again to a function gives f again. This is clear however, since we have $a \sim_{\text{Gr}(f)} b$ iff $f(a) = b$.

(4) *Invertibility: From Adjunctions to Functions Back to Adjunctions.*

We need to show that, given an adjunction $R \dashv S$ in **Rel** giving rise to a function $f_{R,S}: A \rightarrow B$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Gr}(f_{R,S}) &= R, \\ f_{R,S}^{-1} &= S.\end{aligned}$$

We check these explicitly:

- $\text{Gr}(f_{R,S}) = R$. We have

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Gr}(f_{R,S}) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(a, f_{R,S}(a)) \in A \times B \mid a \in A\} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(a, R(a)) \in A \times B \mid a \in A\} \\ &= R.\end{aligned}$$

- $f_{R,S}^{-1} = S$. We first claim that, given $a \in A$ and $b \in B$, the following conditions are equivalent:

- We have $a \sim_R b$.
- We have $b \sim_S a$.

Indeed:

- *If $a \sim_R b$, then $b \sim_S a$:* Since $\chi_A \subset S \diamond R$, there exists $k \in B$ such that $a \sim_R k$ and $k \sim_S a$, but since $a \sim_R b$ and R is functional, we have $k = b$ and thus $b \sim_S a$.
- *If $b \sim_S a$, then $a \sim_R b$:* First note that since R is total we have $a \sim_R b'$ for some $b' \in B$. Now, since $R \diamond S \subset \chi_B$, $b \sim_S a$, and $a \sim_R b'$, we have $b = b'$, and thus $a \sim_R b$.

Having shown this, we now have

$$\begin{aligned}f_{R,S}^{-1}(b) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid f_{R,S}(a) = b\} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid a \sim_R b\} \\ &= \{a \in A \mid b \sim_S a\} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S(b).\end{aligned}$$

for each $b \in B$, showing $f_{R,S}^{-1} = S$.

This finishes the proof.

Item 5, Monads in **Rel:** A monad in **Rel** on A consists of a relation $R: A \nrightarrow A$ together with maps

$$\begin{aligned}\mu_R: R \diamond R &\subset R, \\ \eta_R: \chi_A &\subset R\end{aligned}$$

making the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \chi_A \diamond R & \xrightarrow{\eta_R \diamond \text{id}_R} & R \diamond R & \xrightleftharpoons{\alpha_{R,R,R}^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)}} & R \diamond (R \diamond R) \\ \downarrow \lambda_R^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)} & \nearrow & \downarrow \mu_R & & \downarrow \text{id}_R \diamond \mu_R \\ & & (R \diamond R) \diamond R & & R \diamond R \\ & & \downarrow \mu_R \diamond \text{id}_R & & \downarrow \mu_R \\ & & R \diamond R & \xrightarrow{\mu_R} & R \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R \diamond \chi_A & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_R \diamond \eta_R} & R \diamond R \\ \downarrow \rho_R^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)} & \nearrow & \downarrow \mu_R \\ & & R \end{array}$$

commute. However, since all morphisms involved are inclusions, the commutativity of the above diagrams is automatic, and hence all that is left is the data of the two maps μ_R and η_R , which correspond respectively to the following conditions:

- (1) For each $a, b, c \in A$, if $a \sim_R b$ and $b \sim_R c$, then $a \sim_R c$.
- (2) For each $a \in A$, we have $a \sim_R a$.

These are exactly the requirements for R to be a preorder (??). Conversely any preorder \preceq gives rise to a pair of maps μ_{\preceq} and η_{\preceq} , forming a monad on A .

Item 6, Comonads in **Rel:** A comonad in **Rel** on A consists of a relation $R: A \nrightarrow A$ together with maps

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta_R: R &\subset R \diamond R, \\ \epsilon_R: R &\subset \chi_A\end{aligned}$$

making the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & R \diamond R & & \\ & \nearrow \Delta_R & \downarrow \text{id}_R \circ \Delta_R & \searrow & \\ R & \xrightarrow{\quad + \quad} & R \diamond R & \xrightarrow{\quad + \quad} & R \diamond (R \diamond R) \\ \lambda_R^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), -1} \swarrow & \downarrow \epsilon_R \circ \text{id}_R & \swarrow \Delta_R & \downarrow \alpha_{R, R, R}^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), -1} & \swarrow \rho_R^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), -1} \\ & \chi_A \diamond R & R \diamond R & (R \diamond R) \diamond R & R \diamond \chi_A \\ & \downarrow \Delta_R \circ \text{id}_R & & \downarrow \Delta_R \circ \text{id}_R & \downarrow \text{id}_R \circ \epsilon_R \end{array}$$

commute. However, since all morphisms involved are inclusions, the commutativity of the above diagrams is automatic, and hence all that is left is the data of the two maps Δ_R and ϵ_R , which correspond respectively to the following conditions:

- (1) For each $a, b \in A$, if $a \sim_R b$, then there exists some $k \in A$ such that $a \sim_R k$ and $k \sim_R b$.
- (2) For each $a, b \in A$, if $a \sim_R b$, then $a = b$.

Taking $k = b$ in the first condition above shows it to be trivially satisfied, while the second condition implies $R \subset \Delta_A$, i.e. R must be a subset of A . Conversely, any subset U of A satisfies $U \subset \Delta_A$, defining a comonad as above.

Item 7, Monomorphisms in **Rel:** Firstly note that **Items 7b** and **7c** are equivalent by **Item 7** of **Proposition 5.5.1.1.3**. We then claim that **Items 7a** and **7b** are also equivalent:

- **Item 7a \implies Item 7b:** Let $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ and consider the diagram

$$\text{pt} \xrightarrow[U]{\quad} A \xrightarrow[R]{\quad} B.$$

By **Remark 5.5.1.1.2**, we have

$$\begin{aligned}R_*(U) &= R \diamond U, \\ R_*(V) &= R \diamond V.\end{aligned}$$

Now, if $R \diamond U = R \diamond V$, i.e. $R_*(U) = R_*(V)$, then $U = V$ since R is assumed to be a monomorphism, showing R_* to be injective.

- *Item 7b \implies Item 7a:* Conversely, suppose that R_* is injective, consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K & \xrightarrow{\quad S \quad} & A \xrightarrow{\quad R \quad} B, \\ & \parallel & \\ & T & \end{array}$$

and suppose that $R \diamond S = R \diamond T$. Note that, since R_* is injective, given a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{pt} & \xrightarrow{\quad U \quad} & A \xrightarrow{\quad R \quad} B, \\ & \parallel & \\ & V & \end{array}$$

if $R_*(U) = R \diamond U = R \diamond V = R_*(V)$, then $U = V$. In particular, for each $k \in K$, we may consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{pt} & \xrightarrow{\quad [k] \quad} & K \xrightarrow{\quad S \quad} A \xrightarrow{\quad R \quad} B, \\ & & \parallel \\ & & T \end{array}$$

for which we have $R \diamond S \diamond [k] = R \diamond T \diamond [k]$, implying that we have

$$S(k) = S \diamond [k] = T \diamond [k] = T(k)$$

for each $k \in K$, implying $S = T$, and thus R is a monomorphism.

We can also prove this in a more abstract way, following [[MSE 350788](#)]:

- *Item 7a \implies Item 7b:* Assume that R is a monomorphism.
 - We first notice that the functor $\text{Rel}(\text{pt}, -) : \text{Rel} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ maps R to R_* by [Remark 5.5.1.1.2](#).
 - Since $\text{Rel}(\text{pt}, -)$ preserves all limits by ?? of ??, it follows by ?? of ?? that $\text{Rel}(\text{pt}, -)$ also preserves monomorphisms.
 - Since R is a monomorphism and $\text{Rel}(\text{pt}, -)$ maps R to R_* , it follows that R_* is also a monomorphism.
 - Since the monomorphisms in Sets are precisely the injections (?? of ??), it follows that R_* is injective.
- *Item 7b \implies Item 7a:* Assume that R_* is injective.
 - We first notice that the functor $\text{Rel}(\text{pt}, -) : \text{Rel} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ maps R to R_* by [Remark 5.5.1.1.2](#).
 - Since the monomorphisms in Sets are precisely the injections (?? of ??), it follows that R_* is a monomorphism.
 - Since $\text{Rel}(\text{pt}, -)$ is faithful, it follows by ?? of ?? that $\text{Rel}(\text{pt}, -)$ reflects monomorphisms.
 - Since R_* is a monomorphism and $\text{Rel}(\text{pt}, -)$ maps R to R_* , it follows that R is also a monomorphism.

Finally, we prove the second part of the statement. Assume that R is a monomorphism, let $a, a' \in A$ such that $a \sim_R b$ and $a' \sim_R b$ for some $b \in B$, and consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{pt} & \xrightarrow{\quad [a] \quad} & A \xrightarrow{\quad R \quad} B. \\ & \parallel & \\ & [a'] & \end{array}$$

Since $\star \sim_{[a]} a$ and $a \sim_R b$, we have $\star \sim_{R \diamond [a]} b$. Similarly, $\star \sim_{R \diamond [a']} b$. Thus $R \diamond [a] = R \diamond [a']$, and since R is a monomorphism, we have $[a] = [a']$, i.e. $a = a'$.

Conversely, assume the condition

- (\star) For each $a, a' \in A$, if there exists some $b \in B$ such that $a \sim_R b$ and $a' \sim_R b$, then $a = a'$,

consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{c} S \\ K \xrightarrow[T]{\quad\quad\quad} A \xrightarrow[R]{\quad\quad\quad} B, \end{array}$$

and let $(k, a) \in S$. Since R is total and $a \in A$, there exists some $b \in B$ such that $a \sim_R b$. In this case, we have $k \sim_{R \diamond S} b$, and since $R \diamond S = R \diamond T$, we have also $k \sim_{R \diamond T} b$. Thus there must exist some $a' \in A$ such that $k \sim_T a'$ and $a' \sim_R b$. However, since $a, a' \sim_R b$, we must have $a = a'$, and thus $(k, a) \in T$ as well.

A similar argument shows that if $(k, a) \in T$, then $(k, a) \in S$, and thus $S = T$ and R is a monomorphism.

Item 8, Epimorphisms in Rel: Firstly note that **Items 8b** and **8c** are equivalent by **Item 7** of **Proposition 5.5.2.1.3**. We then claim that **Items 8a** and **8b** are also equivalent:

- **Item 8a \implies Item 8b:** Let $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ and consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{c} R \\ A \xrightarrow{\quad\quad\quad} B \xrightarrow[U]{\quad\quad\quad} \text{pt.} \\ \downarrow V \end{array}$$

By **Remark 5.5.1.1.2**, we have

$$\begin{aligned} R^{-1}(U) &= U \diamond R, \\ R^{-1}(V) &= V \diamond R. \end{aligned}$$

Now, if $U \diamond R = V \diamond R$, i.e. $R^{-1}(U) = R^{-1}(V)$, then $U = V$ since R is assumed to be an epimorphism, showing R^{-1} to be injective.

- **Item 8b \implies Item 8a:** Conversely, suppose that R^{-1} is injective, consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{c} R \\ A \xrightarrow{\quad\quad\quad} B \xrightarrow[S]{\quad\quad\quad} K, \\ \downarrow T \end{array}$$

and suppose that $S \diamond R = T \diamond R$. Note that, since R^{-1} is injective, given a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{c} R \\ A \xrightarrow{\quad\quad\quad} B \xrightarrow[U]{\quad\quad\quad} \text{pt,} \\ \downarrow V \end{array}$$

if $R^{-1}(U) = U \diamond R = V \diamond R = R^{-1}(V)$, then $U = V$. In particular, for each $k \in K$, we may consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{c} R \\ A \xrightarrow{\quad\quad\quad} B \xrightarrow[S]{\quad\quad\quad} K \xrightarrow[k]{\quad\quad\quad} \text{pt,} \\ \downarrow T \end{array}$$

for which we have $[k] \diamond S \diamond R = [k] \diamond T \diamond R$, implying that we have

$$S^{-1}(k) = [k] \diamond S = [k] \diamond T = T^{-1}(k)$$

for each $k \in K$, implying $S = T$, and thus R is an epimorphism.

We can also prove this in a more abstract way, following [MSE 350788]:

- **Item 8a \implies Item 8b:** Assume that R is an epimorphism.
 - We first notice that the functor $\text{Rel}(-, \text{pt}): \text{Rel}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ maps R to R^{-1} by Remark 5.5.3.1.2.
 - Since $\text{Rel}(-, \text{pt})$ preserves limits by ?? of ??, it follows by ?? of ?? that $\text{Rel}(-, \text{pt})$ also preserves monomorphisms.
 - That is: $\text{Rel}(-, \text{pt})$ sends monomorphisms in Rel^{op} to monomorphisms in Sets .
 - The monomorphisms Rel^{op} are precisely the epimorphisms in Rel by ?? of ??.
 - Since R is an epimorphism and $\text{Rel}(-, \text{pt})$ maps R to R^{-1} , it follows that R^{-1} is a monomorphism.
 - Since the monomorphisms in Sets are precisely the injections (?? of ??), it follows that R^{-1} is injective.
- **Item 8b \implies Item 8a:** Assume that R^{-1} is injective.
 - We first notice that the functor $\text{Rel}(-, \text{pt}): \text{Rel}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ maps R to R^{-1} by Remark 5.5.3.1.2.
 - Since the monomorphisms in Sets are precisely the injections (?? of ??), it follows that R^{-1} is a monomorphism.
 - Since $\text{Rel}(-, \text{pt})$ is faithful, it follows by ?? of ?? that $\text{Rel}(-, \text{pt})$ reflects monomorphisms.
 - That is: $\text{Rel}(-, \text{pt})$ reflects monomorphisms in Sets to monomorphisms in Rel^{op} .
 - The monomorphisms Rel^{op} are precisely the epimorphisms in Rel by ?? of ??.
 - Since R^{-1} is a monomorphism and $\text{Rel}(-, \text{pt})$ maps R to R^{-1} , it follows that R is an epimorphism.

Finally, we claim that Items 8b and 8d are also equivalent, following [MO 350788]:

- **Item 8b \implies Item 8d:** Since $B \setminus \{b\} \subset B$ and R^{-1} is injective, we have $R^{-1}(B \setminus \{b\}) \subsetneq R^{-1}(B)$. So taking some $a \in R^{-1}(B) \setminus R^{-1}(B \setminus \{b\})$ we get an element of A such that $R(a) = \{b\}$.
- **Item 8d \implies Item 8b:** Let $U, V \subset B$ with $U \neq V$. Without loss of generality, we can assume $U \setminus V \neq \emptyset$; otherwise just swap U and V . Let then $b \in U \setminus V$. By assumption, there exists an $a \in A$ with $R(a) = \{b\}$. Then $a \in R^{-1}(U)$ but $a \notin R^{-1}(V)$, and thus $R^{-1}(U) \neq R^{-1}(V)$, showing R^{-1} to be injective.

Item 9, As a Kleisli Category: Omitted.

Item 10, Co/Completeness (Or Lack Thereof): Omitted.

Item 11, Existence of Right Kan Extensions: We have

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, X)}(S \diamond R, T) &\cong \int_{a \in A} \int_{x \in X} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}((S \diamond R)_x^a, T_x^a) \\
&\cong \int_{a \in A} \int_{x \in X} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}\left(\left(\int^{b \in B} S_x^b \times R_b^a\right), T_x^a\right) \\
&\cong \int_{a \in A} \int_{x \in X} \int_{b \in B} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(S_x^b \times R_b^a, T_x^a) \\
&\cong \int_{a \in A} \int_{x \in X} \int_{b \in B} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(S_x^b, \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(R_b^a, T_x^a)) \\
&\cong \int_{b \in B} \int_{x \in X} \int_{a \in A} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(S_x^b, \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(R_b^a, T_x^a)) \\
&\cong \int_{b \in B} \int_{x \in X} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}\left(S_x^b, \int_{a \in A} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(R_b^a, T_x^a)\right) \\
&\cong \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(B, X)}\left(S, \int_{a \in A} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(R_{-1}^a, T_{-2}^a)\right)
\end{aligned}$$

naturally in each $S \in \mathbf{Rel}(B, X)$ and each $T \in \mathbf{Rel}(A, X)$, showing that

$$\int_{a \in A} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(R_{-1}^a, T_{-2}^a)$$

is right adjoint to the precomposition functor $- \diamond R$, being thus the right Kan extension along R . Here we have used the following results, respectively (i.e. for each \cong sign):

- (1) [Item 1 of Proposition 5.1.1.4](#);
- (2) [Definition 5.3.12.1.1](#);
- (3) ?? of ??;
- (4) ??;
- (5) ?? of ??;
- (6) ?? of ??;
- (7) [Item 1 of Proposition 5.1.1.4](#).

Item 12, Existence of Right Kan Lifts: We have

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(X, B)}(R \diamond S, T) &\cong \int_{x \in X} \int_{b \in B} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}((R \diamond S)_b^x, T_b^x) \\
&\cong \int_{x \in X} \int_{b \in B} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}\left(\left(\int^{a \in A} R_b^a \times S_a^x\right), T_b^x\right) \\
&\cong \int_{x \in X} \int_{b \in B} \int_{a \in A} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(R_b^a \times S_a^x, T_b^x) \\
&\cong \int_{x \in X} \int_{b \in B} \int_{a \in A} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(S_a^x, \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(R_b^a, T_b^x)) \\
&\cong \int_{x \in X} \int_{a \in A} \int_{b \in B} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(S_a^x, \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(R_b^a, T_b^x)) \\
&\cong \int_{x \in X} \int_{a \in A} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}\left(S_a^x, \int_{b \in B} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(R_b^a, T_b^x)\right) \\
&\cong \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(X, A)}\left(S, \int_{b \in B} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{f}\}}(R_b^{-2}, T_b^{-1})\right)
\end{aligned}$$

naturally in each $S \in \mathbf{Rel}(X, A)$ and each $T \in \mathbf{Rel}(X, B)$, showing that

$$\int_{b \in B} \mathbf{Hom}_{\{\text{t,f}\}}(R_b^{-2}, T_b^{-1})$$

is right adjoint to the postcomposition functor $R \diamond -$, being thus the right Kan lift along R . Here we have used the following results, respectively (i.e. for each \cong sign):

- (1) Item 1 of Proposition 5.1.1.4;
- (2) Definition 5.3.12.1.1;
- (3) ?? of ??;
- (4) ??;
- (5) ?? of ??;
- (6) ?? of ??;
- (7) Item 1 of Proposition 5.1.1.4.

Item 13, Closedness: This has been proved as part of the proof of Items 11 and 12. \square

5.3. Constructions With Relations

5.3.1. The Graph of a Function.

Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

00EM Definition 5.3.1.1.1. The **graph** of f is the relation $\text{Gr}(f): A \nrightarrow B$ defined as follows:¹⁸

- Viewing relations from A to B as subsets of $A \times B$, we define

$$\text{Gr}(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(a, f(a)) \in A \times B \mid a \in A\};$$

- Viewing relations from A to B as functions $A \times B \rightarrow \{\text{true, false}\}$, we define

$$[\text{Gr}(f)](a, b) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{true} & \text{if } b = f(a), \\ \text{false} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

for each $(a, b) \in A \times B$;

- Viewing relations from A to B as functions $A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$, we define

$$[\text{Gr}(f)](a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{f(a)\}$$

for each $a \in A$, i.e. we define $\text{Gr}(f)$ as the composition

$$A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{\chi_B} \mathcal{P}(B).$$

00EN Proposition 5.3.1.1.2. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

00EP (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $A \mapsto \text{Gr}(A)$ defines a functor

$$\text{Gr}: \mathbf{Sets} \rightarrow \mathbf{Rel}$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$, we have

$$\text{Gr}(A) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A;$$

¹⁸*Further Notation:* We write $\text{Gr}(A)$ for $\text{Gr}(\text{id}_A)$, and call it the **graph** of A .

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\text{Gr}_{A,B}: \text{Sets}(A, B) \rightarrow \underbrace{\text{Rel}(\text{Gr}(A), \text{Gr}(B))}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Rel}(A, B)}$$

of Gr at (A, B) is defined by

$$\text{Gr}_{A,B}(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Gr}(f),$$

where $\text{Gr}(f)$ is the graph of f as in [Definition 5.3.1.1.1](#).

In particular:

- *Preservation of Identities.* We have

$$\text{Gr}(\text{id}_A) = \chi_A$$

for each $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

- *Preservation of Composition.* We have

$$\text{Gr}(g \circ f) = \text{Gr}(g) \diamond \text{Gr}(f)$$

for each pair of functions $f: A \rightarrow B$ and $g: B \rightarrow C$.

00EQ (2) *Adjointness Inside **Rel**.* We have an adjunction

$$(\text{Gr}(f) \dashv f^{-1}): \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Gr}(f) \\ \text{---} \\ A \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \curvearrowleft \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{Gr}(f) \\ \text{---} \\ B \end{array} \quad f^{-1}$$

in **Rel**, where f^{-1} is the inverse of f of [Definition 5.3.2.1.1](#).

00ER (3) *Adjointness.* We have an adjunction

$$(\text{Gr} \dashv \mathcal{P}_*): \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Gr} \\ \text{---} \\ \text{Sets} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \perp \\ \curvearrowleft \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{Gr} \\ \text{---} \\ \text{Rel}, \end{array} \quad \mathcal{P}_*$$

witnessed by a bijection of sets

$$\text{Rel}(\text{Gr}(A), B) \cong \text{Sets}(A, \mathcal{P}(B))$$

natural in $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$ and $B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Rel})$.

00ES (4) *Interaction With Inverses.* We have

$$\text{Gr}(f)^\dagger = f^{-1},$$

$$(f^{-1})^\dagger = \text{Gr}(f).$$

00ET (5) *Cocontinuity.* The functor $\text{Gr}: \text{Sets} \rightarrow \text{Rel}$ of [Item 1](#) preserves colimits.

00EU (6) *Characterisations.* Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation. The following conditions are equivalent:

00EV (a) There exists a function $f: A \rightarrow B$ such that $R = \text{Gr}(f)$.

00EW (b) The relation R is total and functional.

(c) The weak and strong inverse images of R agree, i.e. we have

00EX $R^{-1} = R_{-1}$.

00EY (d) The relation R has a right adjoint R^\dagger in **Rel**.

Proof. [Item 1](#), *Functionality:* Clear.

*Item 2, Adjointness Inside **Rel**:* We need to check that there are inclusions

$$\begin{aligned}\chi_A &\subset f^{-1} \diamond \text{Gr}(f), \\ \text{Gr}(f) \diamond f^{-1} &\subset \chi_B.\end{aligned}$$

These correspond respectively to the following conditions:

- (1) For each $a \in A$, there exists some $b \in B$ such that $a \sim_{\text{Gr}(f)} b$ and $b \sim_{f^{-1}} a$.
- (2) For each $a, b \in A$, if $a \sim_{\text{Gr}(f)} b$ and $b \sim_{f^{-1}} a$, then $a = b$.

In other words, the first condition states that the image of any $a \in A$ by f is nonempty, whereas the second condition states that f is not multivalued. As f is a function, both of these statements are true, and we are done.

Item 3, Adjointness: The stated bijection follows from Remark 5.1.1.3, with naturality being clear.

Item 4, Interaction With Inverses: Clear.

Item 5, Cocontinuity: Omitted.

Item 6, Characterisations: We claim that Items 6a to 6d are indeed equivalent:

- *Item 6a \iff Item 6b.* This is shown in the proof of Item 4 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1.
- *Item 6b \implies Item 6c.* If R is total and functional, then, for each $a \in A$, the set $R(a)$ is a singleton, implying that

$$\begin{aligned}R^{-1}(V) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid R(a) \cap V \neq \emptyset\}, \\ R_{-1}(V) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid R(a) \subset V\}\end{aligned}$$

are equal for all $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$, as the conditions $R(a) \cap V \neq \emptyset$ and $R(a) \subset V$ are equivalent when $R(a)$ is a singleton.

- *Item 6c \implies Item 6b.* We claim that R is indeed total and functional:
 - *Totality.* If we had $R(a) = \emptyset$ for some $a \in A$, then we would have $a \in R_{-1}(\emptyset)$, so that $R_{-1}(\emptyset) \neq \emptyset$. But since $R^{-1}(\emptyset) = \emptyset$, this would imply $R_{-1}(\emptyset) \neq R^{-1}(\emptyset)$, a contradiction. Thus $R(a) \neq \emptyset$ for all $a \in A$ and R is total.
 - *Functionality.* If $R^{-1} = R_{-1}$, then we have

$$\begin{aligned}\{a\} &= R^{-1}(\{b\}) \\ &= R_{-1}(\{b\})\end{aligned}$$

for each $b \in R(a)$ and each $a \in A$, and thus $R(a) \subset \{b\}$. But since R is total, we must have $R(a) = \{b\}$, and thus we see that R is functional.

- *Item 6a \iff Item 6d.* This follows from Item 4 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1.

This finishes the proof. □

5.3.2. The Inverse of a Function.

Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

00F0 **Definition 5.3.2.1.1.** The inverse of f is the relation $f^{-1}: B \dashrightarrow A$ defined as follows:

- Viewing relations from B to A as subsets of $B \times A$, we define

$$f^{-1} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ (b, f^{-1}(b)) \in B \times A \mid a \in A \right\},$$

where

$$f^{-1}(b) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid f(a) = b\}$$

for each $b \in B$.

- Viewing relations from B to A as functions $B \times A \rightarrow \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$, we define

$$f^{-1}(b, a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{true} & \text{if there exists } a \in A \text{ with } f(a) = b, \\ \text{false} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

for each $(b, a) \in B \times A$;

- Viewing relations from B to A as functions $B \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$, we define

$$f^{-1}(b) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid f(a) = b\}$$

for each $b \in B$.

00F1 Proposition 5.3.2.1.2. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

00F2 (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $A \mapsto A$, $f \mapsto f^{-1}$ defines a functor

$$(-)^{-1}: \mathbf{Sets} \rightarrow \mathbf{Rel}$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$, we have

$$[(-)^{-1}](A) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A;$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$, the action on Hom-sets

$$(-)^{-1}_{A,B}: \mathbf{Sets}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$$

of $(-)^{-1}$ at (A, B) is defined by

$$(-)^{-1}_{A,B}(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [(-)^{-1}](f),$$

where f^{-1} is the inverse of f as in [Definition 5.3.2.1.1](#).

In particular:

- *Preservation of Identities.* We have

$$\text{id}_A^{-1} = \chi_A$$

for each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$.

- *Preservation of Composition.* We have

$$(g \circ f)^{-1} = g^{-1} \diamond f^{-1}$$

for pair of functions $f: A \rightarrow B$ and $g: B \rightarrow C$.

00F3 (2) *Adjointness Inside \mathbf{Rel} .* We have an adjunction

$$(\text{Gr}(f) \dashv f^{-1}): \quad A \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\text{Gr}(f)} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{f^{-1}} \end{array} B$$

in \mathbf{Rel} .

00F4 (3) *Interaction With Inverses of Relations.* We have

$$\begin{aligned} (f^{-1})^\dagger &= \text{Gr}(f), \\ \text{Gr}(f)^\dagger &= f^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Clear.

Item 2, Adjointness Inside Rel: This is proved in **Item 2** of **Proposition 5.3.1.1.2.**

Item 3, Interaction With Inverses of Relations: Clear. \square

5.3.3. Representable Relations.

Let A and B be sets.

00F6 Definition 5.3.3.1.1. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ and $g: B \rightarrow A$ be functions.¹⁹

- (1) The **representable relation associated to f** is the relation $\chi_f: A \nrightarrow B$ defined as the composition

$$A \times B \xrightarrow{f \times \text{id}_B} B \times B \xrightarrow{\chi_B} \{\text{true}, \text{false}\},$$

i.e. given by declaring $a \sim_{\chi_f} b$ iff $f(a) = b$.

- (2) The **corepresentable relation associated to g** is the relation $\chi^g: B \nrightarrow A$ defined as the composition

$$B \times A \xrightarrow{g \times \text{id}_A} A \times A \xrightarrow{\chi_A} \{\text{true}, \text{false}\},$$

i.e. given by declaring $b \sim_{\chi^g} a$ iff $g(b) = a$.

5.3.4. The Domain and Range of a Relation.

Let A and B be sets.

¹⁹More generally, given functions

$$\begin{aligned} f: A &\rightarrow C, \\ g: B &\rightarrow D \end{aligned}$$

and a relation $B \nrightarrow D$, we may consider the composite relation

$$A \times B \xrightarrow{f \times g} C \times D \xrightarrow{R} \{\text{true}, \text{false}\},$$

for which we have $a \sim_{R \circ (f \times g)} b$ iff $f(a) \sim_R g(b)$.

00F8 Definition 5.3.4.1.1. Let $R \subset A \times B$ be a relation.^{20,21}

(1) The **domain of R** is the subset $\text{dom}(R)$ of A defined by

$$\text{dom}(R) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ a \in A \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{there exists some } b \in B \\ \text{such that } a \sim_R b \end{array} \right\}.$$

(2) The **range of R** is the subset $\text{range}(R)$ of B defined by

$$\text{range}(R) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ b \in B \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{there exists some } a \in A \\ \text{such that } a \sim_R b \end{array} \right\}.$$

5.3.5. Binary Unions of Relations. Let A and B be sets and let R and S be relations from A to B .

00FA Definition 5.3.5.1.1. The **union of R and S** ²² is the relation $R \cup S$ from A to B defined as follows:

- Viewing relations from A to B as subsets of $A \times B$, we define²³

$$R \cup S \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(a, b) \in B \times A \mid \text{we have } a \sim_R b \text{ or } a \sim_S b\}.$$

- Viewing relations from A to B as functions $A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$, we define

$$[R \cup S](a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R(a) \cup S(a)$$

for each $a \in A$.

00FB Proposition 5.3.5.1.2. Let R , S , R_1 , and R_2 be relations from A to B , and let S_1 and S_2 be relations from B to C .

00FW (1) *Interaction With Inverses.* We have

$$(R \cup S)^\dagger = R^\dagger \cup S^\dagger.$$

²⁰Following ??, we may compute the (characteristic functions associated to the) domain and range of a relation using the following colimit formulas:

$$\chi_{\text{dom}(R)}(a) \cong \underset{b \in B}{\text{colim}}(R_b^a) \quad (a \in A)$$

$$\cong \bigvee_{b \in B} R_b^a,$$

$$\chi_{\text{range}(R)}(b) \cong \underset{a \in A}{\text{colim}}(R_b^a) \quad (b \in B)$$

$$\cong \bigvee_{a \in A} R_b^a,$$

where the join \bigvee is taken in the poset $(\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}, \preceq)$ of ??.

²¹Viewing R as a function $R: A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$, we have

$$\text{dom}(R) \cong \underset{y \in Y}{\text{colim}}(R(y))$$

$$\cong \bigcup_{y \in Y} R(y),$$

$$\text{range}(R) \cong \underset{x \in X}{\text{colim}}(R(x))$$

$$\cong \bigcup_{x \in X} R(x),$$

²²*Further Terminology:* Also called the **binary union of R and S** , for emphasis.

²³This is the same as the union of R and S as subsets of $A \times B$.

00FX (2) *Interaction With Composition.* We have

$$(S_1 \diamond R_1) \cup (S_2 \diamond R_2) \stackrel{\text{poss.}}{\neq} (S_1 \cup S_2) \diamond (R_1 \cup R_2).$$

Proof. *Item 1, Interaction With Inverses:* Clear.

Item 2, Interaction With Composition: Unwinding the definitions, we see that:

(1) The condition for $(S_1 \diamond R_1) \cup (S_2 \diamond R_2)$ is:

(a) There exists some $b \in B$ such that:

(i) $a \sim_{R_1} b$ and $b \sim_{S_1} c$;

or

(i) $a \sim_{R_2} b$ and $b \sim_{S_2} c$;

(3) The condition for $(S_1 \cup S_2) \diamond (R_1 \cup R_2)$ is:

(a) There exists some $b \in B$ such that:

(i) $a \sim_{R_1} b$ or $a \sim_{R_2} b$;

and

(i) $b \sim_{S_1} c$ or $b \sim_{S_2} c$.

These two conditions may fail to agree (counterexample omitted), and thus the two resulting relations on $A \times C$ may differ. \square

5.3.6. Unions of Families of Relations. Let A and B be sets and let $\{R_i\}_{i \in I}$ be a family of relations from A to B .

00FF **Definition 5.3.6.1.1.** The **union of the family** $\{R_i\}_{i \in I}$ is the relation $\bigcup_{i \in I} R_i$ from A to B defined as follows:

- Viewing relations from A to B as subsets of $A \times B$, we define²⁴

$$\bigcup_{i \in I} R_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ (a, b) \in (A \times B)^{\times I} \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{there exists some } i \in I \\ \text{such that } a \sim_{R_i} b \end{array} \right\}.$$

- Viewing relations from A to B as functions $A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$, we define

$$\left[\bigcup_{i \in I} R_i \right] (a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{i \in I} R_i(a)$$

for each $a \in A$.

00FG **Proposition 5.3.6.1.2.** Let A and B be sets and let $\{R_i\}_{i \in I}$ be a family of relations from A to B .

00FH (1) *Interaction With Inverses.* We have

$$\left(\bigcup_{i \in I} R_i \right)^{\dagger} = \bigcup_{i \in I} R_i^{\dagger}.$$

Proof. *Item 1, Interaction With Inverses:* Clear. \square

5.3.7. Binary Intersections of Relations. Let A and B be sets and let R and S be relations from A to B .

00FK **Definition 5.3.7.1.1.** The **intersection of R and S** ²⁵ is the relation $R \cap S$ from A to B defined as follows:

²⁴This is the same as the union of $\{R_i\}_{i \in I}$ as a collection of subsets of $A \times B$.

²⁵Further Terminology: Also called the **binary intersection of R and S** , for emphasis.

- Viewing relations from A to B as subsets of $A \times B$, we define²⁶
 $R \cap S \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(a, b) \in B \times A \mid \text{we have } a \sim_R b \text{ and } a \sim_S b\}.$
- Viewing relations from A to B as functions $A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$, we define
 $[R \cap S](a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R(a) \cap S(a)$
for each $a \in A$.

00FL **Proposition 5.3.7.1.2.** Let R , S , R_1 , and R_2 be relations from A to B , and let S_1 and S_2 be relations from B to C .

00FM (1) *Interaction With Inverses.* We have

$$(R \cap S)^\dagger = R^\dagger \cap S^\dagger.$$

00FN (2) *Interaction With Composition.* We have

$$(S_1 \diamond R_1) \cap (S_2 \diamond R_2) = (S_1 \cap S_2) \diamond (R_1 \cap R_2).$$

Proof. *Item 1, Interaction With Inverses:* Clear.

Item 2, Interaction With Composition: Unwinding the definitions, we see that:

- (1) The condition for $(S_1 \diamond R_1) \cap (S_2 \diamond R_2)$ is:
 - (a) There exists some $b \in B$ such that:
 - (i) $a \sim_{R_1} b$ and $b \sim_{S_1} c$;
and
 - (ii) $a \sim_{R_2} b$ and $b \sim_{S_2} c$;
- (3) The condition for $(S_1 \cap S_2) \diamond (R_1 \cap R_2)$ is:
 - (a) There exists some $b \in B$ such that:
 - (i) $a \sim_{R_1} b$ and $a \sim_{R_2} b$;
and
 - (ii) $b \sim_{S_1} c$ and $b \sim_{S_2} c$.

These two conditions agree, and thus so do the two resulting relations on $A \times C$. \square

5.3.8. Intersections of Families of Relations. Let A and B be sets and let $\{R_i\}_{i \in I}$ be a family of relations from A to B .

Definition 5.3.8.1.1. The **intersection of the family** $\{R_i\}_{i \in I}$ is the relation $\bigcup_{i \in I} R_i$ defined as follows:

- Viewing relations from A to B as subsets of $A \times B$, we define²⁷

$$\bigcup_{i \in I} R_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ (a, b) \in (A \times B)^{\times I} \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{for each } i \in I, \\ \text{we have } a \sim_{R_i} b \end{array} \right\}.$$

- Viewing relations from A to B as functions $A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$, we define

$$\left[\bigcap_{i \in I} R_i \right] (a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcap_{i \in I} R_i(a)$$

for each $a \in A$.

²⁶This is the same as the intersection of R and S as subsets of $A \times B$.

²⁷This is the same as the intersection of $\{R_i\}_{i \in I}$ as a collection of subsets of $A \times B$.

00FR Proposition 5.3.8.1.2. Let A and B be sets and let $\{R_i\}_{i \in I}$ be a family of relations from A to B .

00FS (1) *Interaction With Inverses.* We have

$$\left(\bigcap_{i \in I} R_i\right)^\dagger = \bigcap_{i \in I} R_i^\dagger.$$

Proof. *Item 1, Interaction With Inverses:* Clear. \square

5.3.9. Binary Products of Relations. Let A, B, X , and Y be sets, let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation from A to B , and let $S: X \nrightarrow Y$ be a relation from X to Y .

00FU Definition 5.3.9.1.1. The **product of R and S** ²⁸ is the relation $R \times S$ from $A \times X$ to $B \times Y$ defined as follows:

- Viewing relations from $A \times X$ to $B \times Y$ as subsets of $(A \times X) \times (B \times Y)$, we define $R \times S$ as the Cartesian product of R and S as subsets of $A \times X$ and $B \times Y$;²⁹
- Viewing relations from $A \times X$ to $B \times Y$ as functions $A \times X \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B \times Y)$, we define $R \times S$ as the composition

$$A \times X \xrightarrow{R \times S} \mathcal{P}(B) \times \mathcal{P}(Y) \xrightarrow{\mathcal{P}_B^{\otimes} \circ \mathcal{P}_Y} \mathcal{P}(B \times Y)$$

in **Sets**, i.e. by

$$[R \times S](a, x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R(a) \times S(x)$$

for each $(a, x) \in A \times X$.

00FV Proposition 5.3.9.1.2. Let A, B, X , and Y be sets.

00FW (1) *Interaction With Inverses.* Let

$$\begin{aligned} R: A &\nrightarrow A, \\ S: X &\nrightarrow X \end{aligned}$$

We have

$$(R \times S)^\dagger = R^\dagger \times S^\dagger.$$

00FX (2) *Interaction With Composition.* Let

$$\begin{aligned} R_1: A &\nrightarrow B, \\ S_1: B &\nrightarrow C, \\ R_2: X &\nrightarrow Y, \\ S_2: Y &\nrightarrow Z \end{aligned}$$

be relations. We have

$$(S_1 \diamond R_1) \times (S_2 \diamond R_2) = (S_1 \times S_2) \diamond (R_1 \times R_2).$$

Proof. *Item 1, Interaction With Inverses:* Unwinding the definitions, we see that:

- (1) We have $(a, x) \sim_{(R \times S)^\dagger} (b, y)$ iff :

²⁸Further Terminology: Also called the **binary product of R and S** , for emphasis.

²⁹That is, $R \times S$ is the relation given by declaring $(a, x) \sim_{R \times S} (b, y)$ iff $a \sim_R b$ and $x \sim_S y$.

- We have $(b, y) \sim_{R \times S} (a, x)$, i.e. iff :
 - We have $b \sim_R a$;
 - We have $y \sim_S x$;
- (2) We have $(a, x) \sim_{R^\dagger \times S^\dagger} (b, y)$ iff :
 - We have $a \sim_{R^\dagger} b$ and $x \sim_{S^\dagger} y$, i.e. iff :
 - We have $b \sim_R a$;
 - We have $y \sim_S x$.

These two conditions agree, and thus the two resulting relations on $A \times X$ are equal.

Item 2, Interaction With Composition: Unwinding the definitions, we see that:

- (1) We have $(a, x) \sim_{(S_1 \diamond R_1) \times (S_2 \diamond R_2)} (c, z)$ iff :
 - (a) We have $a \sim_{S_1 \diamond R_1} c$ and $x \sim_{S_2 \diamond R_2} z$, i.e. iff :
 - (i) There exists some $b \in B$ such that $a \sim_{R_1} b$ and $b \sim_{S_1} c$;
 - (ii) There exists some $y \in Y$ such that $x \sim_{R_2} y$ and $y \sim_{S_2} z$;
- (2) We have $(a, x) \sim_{(S_1 \times S_2) \diamond (R_1 \times R_2)} (c, z)$ iff :
 - (a) There exists some $(b, y) \in B \times Y$ such that $(a, x) \sim_{R_1 \times R_2} (b, y)$ and $(b, y) \sim_{S_1 \times S_2} (c, z)$, i.e. such that:
 - (i) We have $a \sim_{R_1} b$ and $x \sim_{R_2} y$;
 - (ii) We have $b \sim_{S_1} c$ and $y \sim_{S_2} z$.

These two conditions agree, and thus the two resulting relations from $A \times X$ to $C \times Z$ are equal. \square

5.3.10. Products of Families of Relations. Let $\{A_i\}_{i \in I}$ and $\{B_i\}_{i \in I}$ be families of sets, and let $\{R_i : A_i \rightarrow B_i\}_{i \in I}$ be a family of relations.

00FZ Definition 5.3.10.1.1. The **product of the family** $\{R_i\}_{i \in I}$ is the relation $\prod_{i \in I} R_i$ from $\prod_{i \in I} A_i$ to $\prod_{i \in I} B_i$ defined as follows:

- Viewing relations as subsets, we define $\prod_{i \in I} R_i$ as its product as a family of sets, i.e. we have

$$\prod_{i \in I} R_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ (a_i, b_i)_{i \in I} \in \prod_{i \in I} (A_i \times B_i) \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{for each } i \in I, \\ \text{we have } a_i \sim_{R_i} b_i \end{array} \right\}.$$

- Viewing relations as functions to powersets, we define

$$\left[\prod_{i \in I} R_i \right] ((a_i)_{i \in I}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \prod_{i \in I} R_i(a_i)$$

for each $(a_i)_{i \in I} \in \prod_{i \in I} R_i$.

5.3.11. The Inverse of a Relation. Let A , B , and C be sets and let $R \subset A \times B$ be a relation.

00G1 Definition 5.3.11.1.1. The **inverse of R** ³⁰ is the relation R^\dagger defined as follows:

- Viewing relations as subsets, we define

$$R^\dagger \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(b, a) \in B \times A \mid \text{we have } b \sim_R a\}.$$

³⁰Further Terminology: Also called the **opposite of R** , the **transpose of R** , or the **converse of R** .

- Viewing relations as functions $A \times B \rightarrow \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$, we define

$$[R^\dagger]_a^b \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R_b^a$$

for each $(b, a) \in B \times A$.

- Viewing relations as functions $A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$, we define

$$\begin{aligned} [R^\dagger](b) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R^\dagger(\{b\}) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid b \in R(a)\} \end{aligned}$$

for each $b \in B$, where $R^\dagger(\{b\})$ is the fibre of R over $\{b\}$.

00G2 Example 5.3.11.1.2. Here are some examples of inverses of relations.

00G3 (1) *Less Than Equal Signs.* We have $(\leq)^\dagger = \geq$.

00G4 (2) *Greater Than Equal Signs.* Dually to ??, we have $(\geq)^\dagger = \leq$.

00G5 (3) *Functions.* Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Gr}(f)^\dagger &= f^{-1}, \\ (f^{-1})^\dagger &= \text{Gr}(f). \end{aligned}$$

00G6 Proposition 5.3.11.1.3. Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ and $S: B \nrightarrow C$ be relations.

00G7 (1) *Interaction With Ranges and Domains.* We have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{dom}(R^\dagger) &= \text{range}(R), \\ \text{range}(R^\dagger) &= \text{dom}(R). \end{aligned}$$

00G8 (2) *Interaction With Composition I.* We have

$$(S \diamond R)^\dagger = R^\dagger \diamond S^\dagger.$$

00G9 (3) *Interaction With Composition II.* We have

$$\begin{aligned} \chi_B(-1, -2) &\subset R \diamond R^\dagger, \\ \chi_A(-1, -2) &\subset R^\dagger \diamond R. \end{aligned}$$

00GA (4) *Invertibility.* We have

$$(R^\dagger)^\dagger = R.$$

00GB (5) *Identity.* We have

$$\chi_A^\dagger(-1, -2) = \chi_A(-1, -2).$$

Proof. *Item 1, Interaction With Ranges and Domains:* Clear.

Item 2, Interaction With Composition I: Clear.

Item 3, Interaction With Composition II: Clear.

Item 4, Invertibility: Clear.

Item 5, Identity: Clear. \square

5.3.12. Composition of Relations. Let A , B , and C be sets and let $R \subset A \times B$ and $S \subset B \times C$ be relations.

00GD Definition 5.3.12.1.1. The **composition of R and S** is the relation $S \diamond R$ defined as follows:

- Viewing relations from A to C as subsets of $A \times C$, we define

$$S \diamond R \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ (a, c) \in A \times C \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{there exists some } b \in B \text{ such} \\ \text{that } a \sim_R b \text{ and } b \sim_S c \end{array} \right\}.$$

- Viewing relations as functions $A \times B \rightarrow \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$, we define

$$\begin{aligned} (S \diamond R)^{-1}_{-2} &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int^{y \in B} S_y^{-1} \times R_{-2}^y \\ &= \bigvee_{y \in B} S_y^{-1} \times R_{-2}^y, \end{aligned}$$

where the join \bigvee is taken in the poset $(\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}, \preceq)$ of ??.

- Viewing relations as functions $A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$, we define

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{S} & \mathcal{P}(C), \\ S \diamond R \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Lan}_{\chi_B}(S) \circ R, & \downarrow \chi_B & \nearrow \text{Lan}_{\chi_B}(S) \\ A & \xrightarrow{R} & \mathcal{P}(B) \end{array}$$

where $\text{Lan}_{\chi_B}(S)$ is computed by the formula

$$\begin{aligned} [\text{Lan}_{\chi_B}(S)](V) &\cong \int^{y \in B} \chi_{\mathcal{P}(B)}(\chi_y, V) \odot S_y \\ &\cong \int^{y \in B} \chi_V(y) \odot S_y \\ &\cong \bigcup_{y \in B} \chi_V(y) \odot S_y \\ &\cong \bigcup_{y \in V} S_y \end{aligned}$$

for each $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$. In other words, $S \diamond R$ is defined by³¹

$$\begin{aligned} [S \diamond R](a) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S(R(a)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{x \in R(a)} S(x). \end{aligned}$$

for each $a \in A$.

00GE Example 5.3.12.1.2. Here are some examples of composition of relations.

- (1) *Composing Less/Greater Than Equal With Greater/Less Than Equal Signs.* We have

$$\begin{aligned} \leq \diamond \geq &= \sim_{\text{triv}}, \\ \geq \diamond \leq &= \sim_{\text{triv}}. \end{aligned}$$

³¹That is: the relation R may send $a \in A$ to a number of elements $\{b_i\}_{i \in I}$ in B , and then the relation S may send the image of each of the b_i 's to a number of elements $\{S(b_i)\}_{i \in I} = \{\{c_{j_i}\}_{j_i \in J_i}\}_{i \in I}$ in C .

(2) *Composing Less/Greater Than Equal Signs With Less/Greater Than Equal Signs.* We have

$$\begin{aligned}\leq \diamond \leq &= \leq, \\ \geq \diamond \geq &= \geq.\end{aligned}$$

00GF **Proposition 5.3.12.1.3.** Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$, $S: B \nrightarrow C$, and $T: C \nrightarrow D$ be relations.

00GG (1) *Interaction With Ranges and Domains.* We have

$$\begin{aligned}\text{dom}(S \diamond R) &\subset \text{dom}(R), \\ \text{range}(S \diamond R) &\subset \text{range}(S).\end{aligned}$$

00GH (2) *Associativity.* We have

$$(T \diamond S) \diamond R = T \diamond (S \diamond R).$$

00GJ (3) *Unitality.* We have

$$\begin{aligned}\chi_B \diamond R &= R, \\ R \diamond \chi_A &= R.\end{aligned}$$

00GK (4) *Interaction With Inverses.* We have

$$(S \diamond R)^\dagger = R^\dagger \diamond S^\dagger.$$

00GL (5) *Interaction With Composition.* We have

$$\begin{aligned}\chi_B(-_1, -_2) &\subset R \diamond R^\dagger, \\ \chi_A(-_1, -_2) &\subset R^\dagger \diamond R.\end{aligned}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Interaction With Ranges and Domains:* Clear.

Item 2, Associativity: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(T \diamond S) \diamond R &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left(\int^{y \in C} T_x^{-1} \times S_{-2}^x \right) \diamond R \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int^{x \in B} \left(\int^{y \in C} T_x^{-1} \times S_y^x \right) \diamond R_{-2}^y \\ &= \int^{x \in B} \int^{y \in C} (T_x^{-1} \times S_y^x) \diamond R_{-2}^y \\ &= \int^{y \in C} \int^{x \in B} (T_x^{-1} \times S_y^x) \diamond R_{-2}^y \\ &= \int^{y \in C} \int^{x \in B} T_x^{-1} \times (S_y^x \diamond R_{-2}^y) \\ &= \int^{x \in B} T_x^{-1} \times \left(\int^{y \in C} S_y^x \diamond R_{-2}^y \right) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int^{x \in B} T_x^{-1} \times (S \diamond R)_{-2}^x \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} T \diamond (S \diamond R).\end{aligned}$$

In the language of relations, given $a \in A$ and $d \in D$, the stated equality witnesses the equivalence of the following two statements:

- (1) We have $a \sim_{(T \diamond S) \diamond R} d$, i.e. there exists some $b \in B$ such that:
 - (a) We have $a \sim_R b$;
 - (b) We have $b \sim_{T \diamond S} d$, i.e. there exists some $c \in C$ such that:
 - (i) We have $b \sim_S c$;
 - (ii) We have $c \sim_T d$;
- (2) We have $a \sim_{T \diamond (S \diamond R)} d$, i.e. there exists some $c \in C$ such that:
 - (a) We have $a \sim_{S \diamond R} c$, i.e. there exists some $b \in B$ such that:
 - (i) We have $a \sim_R b$;
 - (ii) We have $b \sim_S c$;
 - (b) We have $c \sim_T d$;

both of which are equivalent to the statement

- There exist $b \in B$ and $c \in C$ such that $a \sim_R b \sim_S c \sim_T d$.

Item 3, Unitality: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\chi_B \diamond R &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int^{x \in B} (\chi_B)_x^{-1} \times R_{-2}^x \\ &= \bigvee_{x \in B} (\chi_B)_x^{-1} \times R_{-2}^x \\ &= \bigvee_{\substack{x \in B \\ x=-1}} R_{-2}^x \\ &= R_{-2}^{-1},\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}R \diamond \chi_A &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int^{x \in A} R_x^{-1} \times (\chi_A)_{-2}^x \\ &= \bigvee_{x \in B} R_x^{-1} \times (\chi_A)_{-2}^x \\ &= \bigvee_{\substack{x \in B \\ x=-2}} R_x^{-1} \\ &= R_{-2}^{-1}.\end{aligned}$$

In the language of relations, given $a \in A$ and $b \in B$:

- The equality

$$\chi_B \diamond R = R$$

witnesses the equivalence of the following two statements:

- (1) We have $a \sim_b B$.
- (2) There exists some $b' \in B$ such that:
 - (a) We have $a \sim_R b'$
 - (b) We have $b' \sim_{\chi_B} b$, i.e. $b' = b$.

- The equality

$$R \diamond \chi_A = R$$

witnesses the equivalence of the following two statements:

- (1) There exists some $a' \in A$ such that:
 - (a) We have $a \sim_{\chi_B} a'$, i.e. $a = a'$.
 - (b) We have $a' \sim_R b$
- (2) We have $a \sim_b B$.

Item 4, Interaction With Inverses: Clear.

Item 5, Interaction With Composition: Clear. \square

5.3.13. The Collage of a Relation. Let A and B be sets and let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation from A to B .

00GN **Definition 5.3.13.1.1.** The **collage** of R ³² is the poset $\mathbf{Coll}(R) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\mathbf{Coll}(R), \preceq_{\mathbf{Coll}(R)})$ consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $\mathbf{Coll}(R)$ defined by

$$\mathbf{Coll}(R) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A \coprod B.$$

- *The Partial Order.* The partial order

$$\preceq_{\mathbf{Coll}(R)}: \mathbf{Coll}(R) \times \mathbf{Coll}(R) \rightarrow \{\text{true, false}\}$$

on $\mathbf{Coll}(R)$ defined by

$$\preceq(a, b) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{true} & \text{if } a = b \text{ or } a \sim_R b, \\ \text{false} & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

00GP **Proposition 5.3.13.1.2.** Let A and B be sets and let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation from A to B .

00GQ (1) *Functionality I.* The assignment $R \mapsto \mathbf{Coll}(R)$ defines a functor³³

$$\mathbf{Coll}: \mathbf{Rel}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Pos}_{/\Delta^1}(A, B),$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $R \in \mathbf{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B))$, we have

$$[\mathbf{Coll}](R) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\mathbf{Coll}(R), \phi_R)$$

for each $R \in \mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$, where

- The poset $\mathbf{Coll}(R)$ is the collage of R of **Definition 5.3.13.1.1**;

³²Further Terminology: Also called the **cograph** of R .

³³Here $\mathbf{Pos}_{/\Delta^1}(A, B)$ is the category defined as the pullback

$$\mathbf{Pos}_{/\Delta^1}(A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \underset{[A], \mathbf{Pos}, \text{fib}_0}{\text{pt}} \times \underset{\text{fib}_1, \mathbf{Pos}, [B]}{\mathbf{Pos}_{/\Delta^1}} \times \text{pt},$$

as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \mathbf{Pos}_{/\Delta^1}(A, B) & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ \mathbf{Pos}_{/\Delta^1} \times \text{pt} & & \text{pt} \times \mathbf{Pos}_{/\Delta^1} & & \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \text{pt} & & \mathbf{Pos}_{/\Delta^1} & & \text{pt.} \\ \downarrow [A] & \searrow & \downarrow \text{fib}_{[0]} & \downarrow \text{fib}_{[1]} & \searrow \downarrow [B] \\ \mathbf{Pos} & & \mathbf{Pos} & & \mathbf{Pos} \end{array}$$

Explicitly, an object of $\mathbf{Pos}_{/\Delta^1}(A, B)$ is a pair (X, ϕ_X) consisting of

- A poset X ;
- A morphism $\phi_X: X \rightarrow \Delta^1$;

such that $\phi_X^{-1}(0) = A$ and $\phi_X^{-1}(1) = B$, with morphisms between such objects being morphisms of posets over Δ^1 .

– The morphism $\phi_R: \mathbf{Coll}(R) \rightarrow \Delta^1$ is given by

$$\phi_R(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \in A, \\ 1 & \text{if } x \in B \end{cases}$$

for each $x \in \mathbf{Coll}(R)$;

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $R, S \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B))$, the action on Hom-sets

$\mathbf{Coll}_{R,S}: \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)}(R, S) \rightarrow \mathbf{Pos}(\mathbf{Coll}(R), \mathbf{Coll}(S))$

of \mathbf{Coll} at (R, S) is given by sending an inclusion

$$\iota: R \subset S$$

to the morphism

$$\mathbf{Coll}(\iota): \mathbf{Coll}(R) \rightarrow \mathbf{Coll}(S)$$

of posets over Δ^1 defined by

$$[\mathbf{Coll}(\iota)](x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} x$$

for each $x \in \mathbf{Coll}(R)$.³⁴

00GR (2) *Equivalence.* The functor of Item 1 is an equivalence of categories.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Clear.

Item 2, Equivalence: Omitted. □

5.4. Equivalence Relations

5.4.1. Reflexive Relations.

5.4.1.1. *Foundations.* Let A be a set.

00GV **Definition 5.4.1.1.1.** A **reflexive relation** is equivalently:³⁵

- An \mathbb{E}_0 -monoid in $(\mathbf{N}_\bullet(\mathbf{Rel}(A, A)), \chi_A)$;
- A pointed object in $(\mathbf{Rel}(A, A), \chi_A)$.

00GW **Remark 5.4.1.1.2.** In detail, a relation R on A is **reflexive** if we have an inclusion

$$\eta_R: \chi_A \subset R$$

of relations in $\mathbf{Rel}(A, A)$, i.e. if, for each $a \in A$, we have $a \sim_R a$.

00GX **Definition 5.4.1.1.3.** Let A be a set.

- (1) The **set of reflexive relations on A** is the subset $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{refl}}(A, A)$ of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, A)$ spanned by the reflexive relations.
- (2) The **poset of relations on A** is the subposet $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{refl}}(A, A)$ of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, A)$ spanned by the reflexive relations.

00H0 **Proposition 5.4.1.1.4.** Let R and S be relations on A .

00H1 (1) *Interaction With Inverses.* If R is reflexive, then so is R^\dagger .

³⁴Note that this is indeed a morphism of posets: if $x \preceq_{\mathbf{Coll}(R)} y$, then $x = y$ or $x \sim_R y$, so we have either $x = y$ or $x \sim_S y$ (as $R \subset S$), and thus $x \preceq_{\mathbf{Coll}(S)} y$.

³⁵Note that since $\mathbf{Rel}(A, A)$ is posetal, reflexivity is a property of a relation, rather than extra structure.

- 00H2 (2) *Interaction With Composition.* If R and S are reflexive, then so is $S \diamond R$.

Proof. *Item 1, Interaction With Inverses:* Clear.

Item 2, Interaction With Composition: Clear. \square

5.4.1.2. *The Reflexive Closure of a Relation.* Let R be a relation on A .

- 00H4 **Definition 5.4.1.2.1.** The **reflexive closure** of \sim_R is the relation \sim_R^{refl} ³⁶ satisfying the following universal property:³⁷

(\star) Given another reflexive relation \sim_S on A such that $R \subset S$, there exists an inclusion $\sim_R^{\text{refl}} \subset \sim_S$.

- 00H5 **Construction 5.4.1.2.2.** Concretely, \sim_R^{refl} is the free pointed object on R in $(\mathbf{Rel}(A, A), \chi_A)$ ³⁸, being given by

$$\begin{aligned} R^{\text{refl}} &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R \coprod^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, A)} \Delta_A \\ &= R \cup \Delta_A \\ &= \{(a, b) \in A \times A \mid \text{we have } a \sim_R b \text{ or } a = b\}. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Clear. \square

- 00H6 **Proposition 5.4.1.2.3.** Let R be a relation on A .

- 00H7 (1) *Adjointness.* We have an adjunction

$$\left((-)^{\text{refl}} \dashv \text{忘} \right): \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{(-)^{\text{refl}}} \\ \perp \\ \text{忘} \end{array} \mathbf{Rel}^{\text{refl}}(A, A),$$

witnessed by a bijection of sets

$$\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{refl}}(R^{\text{refl}}, S) \cong \mathbf{Rel}(R, S),$$

natural in $R \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{refl}}(A, A))$ and $S \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}(A, A))$.

- 00H8 (2) *The Reflexive Closure of a Reflexive Relation.* If R is reflexive, then $R^{\text{refl}} = R$.

- 00H9 (3) *Idempotency.* We have

$$(R^{\text{refl}})^{\text{refl}} = R^{\text{refl}}.$$

- 00HA (4) *Interaction With Inverses.* We have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) & \xrightarrow{(-)^{\text{refl}}} & \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) \\ (R^\dagger)^{\text{refl}} = (R^{\text{refl}})^\dagger, & \downarrow (-)^\dagger & \downarrow (-)^\dagger \\ \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) & \xrightarrow{(-)^{\text{refl}}} & \mathbf{Rel}(A, A). \end{array}$$

³⁶Further Notation: Also written R^{refl} .

³⁷Slogan: The reflexive closure of R is the smallest reflexive relation containing R .

³⁸Or, equivalently, the free \mathbb{E}_0 -monoid on R in $(N_\bullet(\mathbf{Rel}(A, A)), \chi_A)$.

00HB (5) *Interaction With Composition.* We have

$$(S \diamond R)^{\text{refl}} = S^{\text{refl}} \diamond R^{\text{refl}}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Rel}(A, A) \times \text{Rel}(A, A) \xrightarrow{\diamond} \text{Rel}(A, A) \\ \downarrow (-)^{\text{refl}} \times (-)^{\text{refl}} \quad \downarrow (-)^{\text{refl}} \\ \text{Rel}(A, A) \times \text{Rel}(A, A) \xrightarrow{\diamond} \text{Rel}(A, A). \end{array}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Adjointness:* This is a rephrasing of the universal property of the reflexive closure of a relation, stated in [Definition 5.4.1.2.1](#).

Item 2, The Reflexive Closure of a Reflexive Relation: Clear.

Item 3, Idempotency: This follows from [Item 2](#).

Item 4, Interaction With Inverses: Clear.

Item 5, Interaction With Composition: This follows from [Item 2](#) of [Proposition 5.4.1.1.4](#). \square

5.4.2. Symmetric Relations.

5.4.2.1. *Foundations.* Let A be a set.

00HE **Definition 5.4.2.1.1.** A relation R on A is **symmetric** if, for each $a, b \in A$, the following conditions are equivalent.³⁹

- (1) We have $a \sim_R b$.
- (2) We have $b \sim_R a$.

00HF **Definition 5.4.2.1.2.** Let A be a set.

- (1) The **set of symmetric relations on A** is the subset $\text{Rel}^{\text{symm}}(A, A)$

00HG of $\text{Rel}(A, A)$ spanned by the symmetric relations.

- (2) The **poset of relations on A** is the subposet $\text{Rel}^{\text{symm}}(A, A)$ of $\text{Rel}(A, A)$ spanned by the symmetric relations.

00HJ **Proposition 5.4.2.1.3.** Let R and S be relations on A .

00HK (1) *Interaction With Inverses.* If R is symmetric, then so is R^\dagger .

00HL (2) *Interaction With Composition.* If R and S are symmetric, then so is $S \diamond R$.

Proof. *Item 1, Interaction With Inverses:* Clear.

Item 2, Interaction With Composition: Clear. \square

5.4.2.2. *The Symmetric Closure of a Relation.* Let R be a relation on A .

00HN **Definition 5.4.2.2.1.** The **symmetric closure** of \sim_R is the relation \sim_R^{symm} ⁴⁰ satisfying the following universal property:⁴¹

- (\star) Given another symmetric relation \sim_S on A such that $R \subset S$, there exists an inclusion $\sim_R^{\text{symm}} \subset \sim_S$.

00HP **Construction 5.4.2.2.2.** Concretely, \sim_R^{symm} is the symmetric relation on A defined by

$$\begin{aligned} R^{\text{symm}} &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R \cup R^\dagger \\ &= \{(a, b) \in A \times A \mid \text{we have } a \sim_R b \text{ or } b \sim_R a\}. \end{aligned}$$

³⁹That is, R is symmetric if $R^\dagger = R$.

⁴⁰Further Notation: Also written R^{symm} .

⁴¹Slogan: The symmetric closure of R is the smallest symmetric relation containing R .

Proof. Clear. \square

00HQ Proposition 5.4.2.2.3. Let R be a relation on A .

00HR (1) *Adjointness.* We have an adjunction

$$((-)^{\text{symm}} \dashv \text{忘}): \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{(-)^{\text{symm}}} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\text{忘}} \end{array} \mathbf{Rel}^{\text{symm}}(A, A),$$

witnessed by a bijection of sets

$$\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{symm}}(R^{\text{symm}}, S) \cong \mathbf{Rel}(R, S),$$

natural in $R \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{symm}}(A, A))$ and $S \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}(A, A))$.

00HS (2) *The Symmetric Closure of a Symmetric Relation.* If R is symmetric, then $R^{\text{symm}} = R$.

00HT (3) *Idempotency.* We have

$$(R^{\text{symm}})^{\text{symm}} = R^{\text{symm}}.$$

00HU (4) *Interaction With Inverses.* We have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) & \xrightarrow{(-)^{\text{symm}}} & \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) \\ \left(R^\dagger\right)^{\text{symm}} = \left(R^{\text{symm}}\right)^\dagger, & \downarrow (-)^\dagger & \downarrow (-)^\dagger \\ \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) & \xrightarrow{(-)^{\text{symm}}} & \mathbf{Rel}(A, A). \end{array}$$

00HV (5) *Interaction With Composition.* We have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) \times \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) & \xrightarrow{\diamond} & \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) \\ (S \diamond R)^{\text{symm}} = S^{\text{symm}} \diamond R^{\text{symm}}, & \downarrow (-)^{\text{symm}} \times (-)^{\text{symm}} & \downarrow (-)^{\text{symm}} \\ \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) \times \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) & \xrightarrow{(-)^{\text{symm}}} & \mathbf{Rel}(A, A). \end{array}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Adjointness:* This is a rephrasing of the universal property of the symmetric closure of a relation, stated in [Definition 5.4.2.2.1](#).

Item 2, The Symmetric Closure of a Symmetric Relation: Clear.

Item 3, Idempotency: This follows from [Item 2](#).

Item 4, Interaction With Inverses: Clear.

Item 5, Interaction With Composition: This follows from [Item 2](#) of [Proposition 5.4.2.1.3](#). \square

5.4.3. Transitive Relations.

5.4.3.1. *Foundations.* Let A be a set.

00HY Definition 5.4.3.1.1. A transitive relation is equivalently:⁴²

- A non-unital \mathbb{E}_1 -monoid in $(N_\bullet(\mathbf{Rel}(A, A)), \diamond)$;
- A non-unital monoid in $(\mathbf{Rel}(A, A), \diamond)$.

⁴²Note that since $\mathbf{Rel}(A, A)$ is posetal, transitivity is a property of a relation, rather than extra structure.

00HZ Remark 5.4.3.1.2. In detail, a relation R on A is **transitive** if we have an inclusion

$$\mu_R: R \diamond R \subset R$$

of relations in $\mathbf{Rel}(A, A)$, i.e. if, for each $a, c \in A$, the following condition is satisfied:

- (\star) If there exists some $b \in A$ such that $a \sim_R b$ and $b \sim_R c$, then $a \sim_R c$.

00J0 Definition 5.4.3.1.3. Let A be a set.

- (1) The **set of transitive relations from A to B** is the subset $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{trans}}(A)$ of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ spanned by the transitive relations.
- (2) The **poset of relations from A to B** is the subposet $\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{trans}}(A)$ of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ spanned by the transitive relations.

00J3 Proposition 5.4.3.1.4. Let R and S be relations on A .

- (1) *Interaction With Inverses.* If R is transitive, then so is R^\dagger .
- (2) *Interaction With Composition.* If R and S are transitive, then $S \diamond R$ **may fail to be transitive**.

Proof. *Item 1, Interaction With Inverses:* Clear.

Item 2, Interaction With Composition: See [MSE2096272].⁴³ \square

5.4.3.2. *The Transitive Closure of a Relation.* Let R be a relation on A .

00J7 Definition 5.4.3.2.1. The **transitive closure** of \sim_R is the relation \sim_R^{trans} ⁴⁴ satisfying the following universal property:⁴⁵

- (\star) Given another transitive relation \sim_S on A such that $R \subset S$, there exists an inclusion $\sim_R^{\text{trans}} \subset \sim_S$.

00J8 Construction 5.4.3.2.2. Concretely, \sim_R^{trans} is the free non-unital monoid on R in $(\mathbf{Rel}(A, A), \diamond)$ ⁴⁶, being given by

$$\begin{aligned} R^{\text{trans}} &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{n=1}^{\infty} R^{\diamond n} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} R^{\diamond n} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ (a, b) \in A \times B \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{there exists some } (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in R^{\times n} \\ \text{such that } a \sim_R x_1 \sim_R \dots \sim_R x_n \sim_R b \end{array} \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

⁴³Intuition: Transitivity for R and S fails to imply that of $S \diamond R$ because the composition operation for relations intertwines R and S in an incompatible way:

- (1) If $a \sim_{S \diamond R} c$ and $c \sim_{S \diamond R} e$, then:
 - (a) There is some $b \in A$ such that:
 - (i) $a \sim_R b$;
 - (ii) $b \sim_S c$;
 - (b) There is some $d \in A$ such that:
 - (i) $c \sim_R d$;
 - (ii) $d \sim_S e$.

⁴⁴Further Notation: Also written R^{trans} .

⁴⁵Slogan: The transitive closure of R is the smallest transitive relation containing R .

⁴⁶Or, equivalently, the free non-unital \mathbb{E}_1 -monoid on R in $(N_\bullet(\mathbf{Rel}(A, A)), \diamond)$.

Proof. Clear. \square

00J9 Proposition 5.4.3.2.3. Let R be a relation on A .

00JA (1) *Adjointness.* We have an adjunction

$$\left((-)^{\text{trans}} \dashv \overline{\text{忘}} \right): \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{(-)^{\text{trans}}} \\[-1ex] \perp \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\text{忘}} \end{array} \mathbf{Rel}^{\text{trans}}(A, A),$$

witnessed by a bijection of sets

$$\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{trans}}(R^{\text{trans}}, S) \cong \mathbf{Rel}(R, S),$$

natural in $R \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{trans}}(A, A))$ and $S \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B))$.

00JB (2) *The Transitive Closure of a Transitive Relation.* If R is transitive, then $R^{\text{trans}} = R$.

00JC (3) *Idempotency.* We have

$$(R^{\text{trans}})^{\text{trans}} = R^{\text{trans}}.$$

00JD (4) *Interaction With Inverses.* We have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) & \xrightarrow{(-)^{\text{trans}}} & \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) \\ (R^\dagger)^{\text{trans}} = (R^{\text{trans}})^\dagger, & \downarrow (-)^\dagger & \downarrow (-)^\dagger \\ \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) & \xrightarrow{(-)^{\text{trans}}} & \mathbf{Rel}(A, A). \end{array}$$

00JE (5) *Interaction With Composition.* We have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) \times \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) & \xrightarrow{\diamond} & \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) \\ (S \diamond R)^{\text{trans}} \stackrel{\text{poss.}}{\neq} S^{\text{trans}} \diamond R^{\text{trans}}, & \downarrow (-)^{\text{trans}} \times (-)^{\text{trans}} & \downarrow (-)^{\text{trans}} \\ \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) \times \mathbf{Rel}(A, A) & \xrightarrow{(-)^{\text{trans}}} & \mathbf{Rel}(A, A). \end{array}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Adjointness:* This is a rephrasing of the universal property of the transitive closure of a relation, stated in [Definition 5.4.3.2.1](#).

Item 2, The Transitive Closure of a Transitive Relation: Clear.

Item 3, Idempotency: This follows from [Item 2](#).

Item 4, Interaction With Inverses: We have

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{by Construction 5.4.3.2.2}) \quad (R^\dagger)^{\text{trans}} &= \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} (R^\dagger)^{\diamond n} \\ (\text{by Item 4 of Proposition 5.3.12.1.3}) \quad &= \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} (R^{\diamond n})^\dagger \\ (\text{by Item 1 of Proposition 5.3.6.1.2}) \quad &= \left(\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} R^{\diamond n} \right)^\dagger \\ (\text{by Construction 5.4.3.2.2}) \quad &= (R^{\text{trans}})^\dagger. \end{aligned}$$

Item 5, Interaction With Composition: This follows from Item 2 of Proposition 5.4.3.1.4. \square

5.4.4. Equivalence Relations.

5.4.4.1. *Foundations.* Let A be a set.

00JH Definition 5.4.4.1.1. A relation R is an **equivalence relation** if it is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive.⁴⁷

00JJ Example 5.4.4.1.2. The **kernel of a function** $f: A \rightarrow B$ is the equivalence $\sim_{\text{Ker}(f)}$ on A obtained by declaring $a \sim_{\text{Ker}(f)} b$ iff $f(a) = f(b)$.⁴⁸

00JK Definition 5.4.4.1.3. Let A and B be sets.

00JL (1) The **set of equivalence relations from A to B** is the subset $\text{Rel}^{\text{eq}}(A, B)$ of $\text{Rel}(A, B)$ spanned by the equivalence relations.

00JM (2) The **poset of relations from A to B** is the subposet $\text{Rel}^{\text{eq}}(A, B)$ of $\text{Rel}(A, B)$ spanned by the equivalence relations.

5.4.4.2. *The Equivalence Closure of a Relation.* Let R be a relation on A .

00JP Definition 5.4.4.2.1. The **equivalence closure**⁴⁹ of \sim_R is the relation \sim_R^{eq} ⁵⁰ satisfying the following universal property:⁵¹

(\star) Given another equivalence relation \sim_S on A such that $R \subset S$, there exists an inclusion $\sim_R^{\text{eq}} \subset \sim_S$.

00JQ Construction 5.4.4.2.2. Concretely, \sim_R^{eq} is the equivalence relation on A defined by

$$\begin{aligned} R^{\text{eq}} &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left((R^{\text{refl}})^{\text{symm}} \right)^{\text{trans}} \\ &= \left((R^{\text{symm}})^{\text{trans}} \right)^{\text{refl}} \\ &= \left\{ (a, b) \in A \times B \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{there exists } (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in R^{\times n} \text{ satisfying at} \\ \text{least one of the following conditions:} \end{array} \right\} \\ &\quad \left. \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ The following conditions are satisfied:} \\ \quad (a) \text{ We have } a \sim_R x_1 \text{ or } x_1 \sim_R a; \\ \quad (b) \text{ We have } x_i \sim_R x_{i+1} \text{ or } x_{i+1} \sim_R x_i \\ \quad \text{for each } 1 \leq i \leq n-1; \\ \quad (c) \text{ We have } b \sim_R x_n \text{ or } x_n \sim_R b; \\ 2. \text{ We have } a = b. \end{array} \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

⁴⁷*Further Terminology:* If instead R is just symmetric and transitive, then it is called a **partial equivalence relation**.

⁴⁸The kernel $\text{Ker}(f): A \dashrightarrow A$ of f is the monad induced by the adjunction $\text{Gr}(f) \dashv f^{-1}: A \rightleftarrows B$ in **Rel** of Item 2 of Proposition 5.3.1.1.2.

⁴⁹*Further Terminology:* Also called the **equivalence relation associated to \sim_R** .

⁵⁰*Further Notation:* Also written R^{eq} .

⁵¹*Slogan:* The equivalence closure of R is the smallest equivalence relation containing R .

Proof. From the universal properties of the reflexive, symmetric, and transitive closures of a relation (Definitions 5.4.1.2.1, 5.4.2.2.1 and 5.4.3.2.1), we see that it suffices to prove that:

- 00JR (1) The symmetric closure of a reflexive relation is still reflexive;
 00JS (2) The transitive closure of a symmetric relation is still symmetric;
 which are both clear. \square

00JT **Proposition 5.4.4.2.3.** Let R be a relation on A .

- 00JU (1) *Adjointness.* We have an adjunction

$$((-)^{\text{eq}} \dashv \text{忘}): \mathbf{Rel}(A, B) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{(-)^{\text{eq}}} \\[-1ex] \perp \\[-1ex] \text{忘} \end{array} \mathbf{Rel}^{\text{eq}}(A, B),$$

witnessed by a bijection of sets

$$\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{eq}}(R^{\text{eq}}, S) \cong \mathbf{Rel}(R, S),$$

natural in $R \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}^{\text{eq}}(A, B))$ and $S \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B))$.

- 00JV (2) *The Equivalence Closure of an Equivalence Relation.* If R is an equivalence relation, then $R^{\text{eq}} = R$.
 00JW (3) *Idempotency.* We have

$$(R^{\text{eq}})^{\text{eq}} = R^{\text{eq}}.$$

Proof. *Item 1, Adjointness:* This is a rephrasing of the universal property of the equivalence closure of a relation, stated in Definition 5.4.4.2.1.

Item 2, The Equivalence Closure of an Equivalence Relation: Clear.

Item 3, Idempotency: This follows from Item 2. \square

5.4.5. Quotients by Equivalence Relations.

5.4.5.1. *Equivalence Classes.* Let A be a set, let R be a relation on A , and let $a \in A$.

00JZ **Definition 5.4.5.1.1.** The **equivalence class associated to a** is the set $[a]$ defined by

$$\begin{aligned} [a] &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{x \in X \mid x \sim_R a\} \\ (\text{since } R \text{ is symmetric}) \quad &= \{x \in X \mid a \sim_R x\}. \end{aligned}$$

5.4.5.2. *Quotients of Sets by Equivalence Relations.* Let A be a set and let R be a relation on A .

00K1 **Definition 5.4.5.2.1.** The **quotient of X by R** is the set X/\sim_R defined by

$$X/\sim_R \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{[a] \in \mathcal{P}(X) \mid a \in X\}.$$

00K2 **Remark 5.4.5.2.2.** The reason we define quotient sets for equivalence relations only is that each of the properties of being an equivalence relation—reflexivity, symmetry, and transitivity—ensures that the equivalences classes $[a]$ of X under R are well-behaved:

- *Reflexivity.* If R is reflexive, then, for each $a \in X$, we have $a \in [a]$.

- *Symmetry.* The equivalence class $[a]$ of an element a of X is defined by

$$[a] \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{x \in X \mid x \sim_R a\},$$

but we could equally well define

$$[a]' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{x \in X \mid a \sim_R x\}$$

instead. This is not a problem when R is symmetric, as we then have $[a] = [a]'$.⁵²

- *Transitivity.* If R is transitive, then $[a]$ and $[b]$ are disjoint iff $a \not\sim_R b$, and equal otherwise.

00K3 Proposition 5.4.5.2.3. Let $f: X \rightarrow Y$ be a function and let R be a relation on X .

00K4 (1) *As a Coequaliser.* We have an isomorphism of sets

$$X/\sim_R^{\text{eq}} \cong \text{CoEq}\left(R \hookrightarrow X \times X \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_1} X\right),$$

where \sim_R^{eq} is the equivalence relation generated by \sim_R .

00K5 (2) *As a Pushout.* We have an isomorphism of sets⁵³

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X/\sim_R^{\text{eq}} & \xleftarrow{\quad} & X \\ \uparrow \lrcorner & & \uparrow \\ X/\sim_R^{\text{eq}} & \cong & X \coprod_{\text{Eq}(\text{pr}_1, \text{pr}_2)} X, \\ & & \uparrow \\ & & X \leftarrow \text{Eq}(\text{pr}_1, \text{pr}_2). \end{array}$$

where \sim_R^{eq} is the equivalence relation generated by \sim_R .

00K6 (3) *The First Isomorphism Theorem for Sets.* We have an isomorphism of sets^{54,55}

$$X/\sim_{\text{Ker}(f)} \cong \text{Im}(f).$$

00K7 (4) *Descending Functions to Quotient Sets, I.* Let R be an equivalence relation on X . The following conditions are equivalent:

⁵²When categorifying equivalence relations, one finds that $[a]$ and $[a]'$ correspond to presheaves and copresheaves; see ??.

⁵³Dually, we also have an isomorphism of sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Eq}(\text{pr}_1, \text{pr}_2) & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow \lrcorner & & \downarrow \\ \text{Eq}(\text{pr}_1, \text{pr}_2) & \cong & X \times_{X/\sim_R^{\text{eq}}} X, \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & X/\sim_R^{\text{eq}}. \end{array}$$

⁵⁴*Further Terminology:* The set $X/\sim_{\text{Ker}(f)}$ is often called the **coimage** of f , and denoted by $\text{Coim}(f)$.

⁵⁵In a sense this is a result relating the monad in **Rel** induced by f with the comonad in **Rel** induced by f , as the kernel and image

$$\text{Ker}(f): X \nrightarrow X,$$

$$\text{Im}(f) \subset Y$$

- (a) There exists a map

$$\bar{f}: X/\sim_R \rightarrow Y$$

making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ q \downarrow & \exists \nearrow \bar{f} & \\ X/\sim_R & & \end{array}$$

commute.

- 00K8** (b) For each $x, y \in X$, if $x \sim_R y$, then $f(x) = f(y)$.
 (5) *Descending Functions to Quotient Sets, II.* Let R be an equivalence relation on X . If the conditions of Item 4 hold, then \bar{f} is the *unique* map making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ q \downarrow & \exists! \nearrow \bar{f} & \\ X/\sim_R & & \end{array}$$

commute.

- 00K9** (6) *Descending Functions to Quotient Sets, III.* Let R be an equivalence relation on X . If the conditions of Item 4 hold, then the following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The map \bar{f} is an injection.
- (b) For each $x, y \in X$, we have $x \sim_R y$ iff $f(x) = f(y)$.

- 00KA** (7) *Descending Functions to Quotient Sets, IV.* Let R be an equivalence relation on X . If the conditions of Item 4 hold, then the following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The map $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is surjective.
- (b) The map $\bar{f}: X/\sim_R \rightarrow Y$ is surjective.

- 00KB** (8) *Descending Functions to Quotient Sets, V.* Let R be a relation on X and let \sim_R^{eq} be the equivalence relation associated to R . The following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The map f satisfies the equivalent conditions of Item 4:
- There exists a map

$$\bar{f}: X/\sim_R^{\text{eq}} \rightarrow Y$$

making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ q \downarrow & \exists \nearrow \bar{f} & \\ X/\sim_R^{\text{eq}} & & \end{array}$$

commute.

- For each $x, y \in X$, if $x \sim_R^{\text{eq}} y$, then $f(x) = f(y)$.

00KD (b) For each $x, y \in X$, if $x \sim_R y$, then $f(x) = f(y)$.

Proof. *Item 1, As a Coequaliser:* Omitted.

Item 2, As a Pushout: Omitted.

Item 3, The First Isomorphism Theorem for Sets: Clear.

Item 4, Descending Functions to Quotient Sets, I: See [Pro24o].

Item 5, Descending Functions to Quotient Sets, II: See [Pro24y].

Item 6, Descending Functions to Quotient Sets, III: See [Pro24n].

Item 7, Descending Functions to Quotient Sets, IV: See [Pro24m].

Item 8, Descending Functions to Quotient Sets, V: The implication Item 8a \implies

Item 8b is clear.

Conversely, suppose that, for each $x, y \in X$, if $x \sim_R y$, then $f(x) = f(y)$. Spelling out the definition of the equivalence closure of R , we see that the condition $x \sim_R^{\text{eq}} y$ unwinds to the following:

- (\star) There exist $(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in R^{\times n}$ satisfying at least one of the following conditions:
 - (1) The following conditions are satisfied:
 - (a) We have $x \sim_R x_1$ or $x_1 \sim_R x$;
 - (b) We have $x_i \sim_R x_{i+1}$ or $x_{i+1} \sim_R x_i$ for each $1 \leq i \leq n-1$;
 - (c) We have $y \sim_R x_n$ or $x_n \sim_R y$;
 - (2) We have $x = y$.

Now, if $x = y$, then $f(x) = f(y)$ trivially; otherwise, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= f(x_1), \\ f(x_1) &= f(x_2), \\ &\vdots \\ f(x_{n-1}) &= f(x_n), \\ f(x_n) &= f(y), \end{aligned}$$

and $f(x) = f(y)$, as we wanted to show. \square

5.5. Functoriality of Powersets

5.5.1. Direct Images. Let A and B be sets and let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

00KG **Definition 5.5.1.1.1.** The **direct image function associated to R** is the function⁵⁶

$$R_*: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$$

of f are respectively the induced monads and comonads of the adjunction

$$(Gr(f) \dashv f^{-1}): \quad \begin{array}{ccc} A & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\text{Gr}(f)} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{f^{-1}} \end{array} & B \end{array}$$

of Item 2 of Proposition 5.3.1.1.2.

⁵⁶Further Notation: Also written $\exists_R: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$. This notation comes from the fact that the following statements are equivalent, where $b \in B$ and $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$:

- We have $b \in \exists_R(U)$.
- There exists some $a \in U$ such that $b \in f(a)$.

defined by^{57,58}

$$\begin{aligned} R_*(U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R(U) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{a \in U} R(a) \\ &= \left\{ b \in B \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{there exists some } a \in U \\ \text{such that } b \in R(a) \end{array} \right\} \end{aligned}$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

00KH Remark 5.5.1.1.2. Identifying subsets of A with relations from pt to A via ?? of ??, we see that the direct image function associated to R is equivalently the function

$$R_* : \underbrace{\mathcal{P}(A)}_{\cong \text{Rel(pt, } A)} \rightarrow \underbrace{\mathcal{P}(B)}_{\cong \text{Rel(pt, } B)}$$

defined by

$$R_*(U) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R \diamond U$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$, where $R \diamond U$ is the composition

$$\text{pt} \xrightarrow{U} A \xrightarrow{R} B.$$

00KJ Proposition 5.5.1.1.3. Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

00KK (1) *Functoriality.* The assignment $U \mapsto R_*(U)$ defines a functor

$$R_*: (\mathcal{P}(A), \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \subset)$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$, we have

$$[R_*](U) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R_*(U);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$:

– If $U \subset V$, then $R_*(U) \subset R_*(V)$.

00KL (2) *Adjointness.* We have an adjunction

$$(R_* \dashv R_{-1}): \mathcal{P}(A) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{R_*} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{R_{-1}} \end{array} \mathcal{P}(B),$$

witnessed by a bijections of sets

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(R_*(U), V) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(U, R_{-1}(V)),$$

natural in $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ and $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$, i.e. such that:

- (*) The following conditions are equivalent:

- We have $R_*(U) \subset V$;
- We have $U \subset R_{-1}(V)$.

⁵⁷Further Terminology: The set $R(U)$ is called the **direct image of U by R** .

⁵⁸We also have

$$R_*(U) = B \setminus R_!(A \setminus U);$$

see Item 7 of Proposition 5.5.1.1.3.

00KM (3) *Preservation of Colimits.* We have an equality of sets

$$R_* \left(\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i \right) = \bigcup_{i \in I} R_*(U_i),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(A)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have equalities

$$\begin{aligned} R_*(U) \cup R_*(V) &= R_*(U \cup V), \\ R_*(\emptyset) &= \emptyset, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

00KN (4) *Oplax Preservation of Limits.* We have an inclusion of sets

$$R_* \left(\bigcap_{i \in I} U_i \right) \subset \bigcap_{i \in I} R_*(U_i),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(A)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have inclusions

$$\begin{aligned} R_*(U \cap V) &\subset R_*(U) \cap R_*(V), \\ R_*(A) &\subset B, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

00KP (5) *Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Unions.* The direct image function of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric strict monoidal structure

$$(R_*, R_*^\otimes, R_{*\mid\sharp}^\otimes) : (\mathcal{P}(A), \cup, \emptyset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \cup, \emptyset),$$

being equipped with equalities

$$\begin{aligned} R_{*|U,V}^\otimes : R_*(U) \cup R_*(V) &\xrightarrow{\equiv} R_*(U \cup V), \\ R_{*\mid\sharp}^\otimes : \emptyset &\xrightarrow{\equiv} \emptyset, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

00KQ (6) *Symmetric Oplax Monoidality With Respect to Intersections.* The direct image function of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric oplax monoidal structure

$$(R_*, R_*^\otimes, R_{*\mid\sharp}^\otimes) : (\mathcal{P}(A), \cap, A) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \cap, B),$$

being equipped with inclusions

$$\begin{aligned} R_{*|U,V}^\otimes : R_*(U \cap V) &\subset R_*(U) \cap R_*(V), \\ R_{*\mid\sharp}^\otimes : R_*(A) &\subset B, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

00KR (7) *Relation to Direct Images With Compact Support.* We have

$$R_*(U) = B \setminus R_!(A \setminus U)$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

Proof. [Item 1](#), *Functoriality:* Clear.

[Item 2](#), *Adjointness:* This follows from ?? of ??.

[Item 3](#), *Preservation of Colimits:* This follows from [Item 2](#) and ?? of ??.

[Item 4](#), *Oplax Preservation of Limits:* Omitted.

[Item 5](#), *Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Unions:* This follows from [Item 3](#).

Item 6, Symmetric Oplax Monoidality With Respect to Intersections: This follows from **Item 4**.

Item 7, Relation to Direct Images With Compact Support: The proof proceeds in the same way as in the case of functions (?? of ??): applying **Item 7** of **Proposition 5.5.4.1.3** to $A \setminus U$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} R_!(A \setminus U) &= B \setminus R_*(A \setminus (A \setminus U)) \\ &= B \setminus R_*(U). \end{aligned}$$

Taking complements, we then obtain

$$\begin{aligned} R_*(U) &= B \setminus (B \setminus R_*(U)), \\ &= B \setminus R_!(A \setminus U), \end{aligned}$$

which finishes the proof. \square

00KS Proposition 5.5.1.1.4. Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

00KT (1) Functionality I. The assignment $R \mapsto R_*$ defines a function

$$(-)_*: \text{Rel}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Sets}(\mathcal{P}(A), \mathcal{P}(B)).$$

00KU (2) Functionality II. The assignment $R \mapsto R_*$ defines a function

$$(-)_*: \text{Rel}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Pos}((\mathcal{P}(A), \subset), (\mathcal{P}(B), \subset)).$$

00KV (3) Interaction With Identities. For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, we have⁵⁹

$$(\chi_A)_* = \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(A)};$$

00KW (4) Interaction With Composition. For each pair of composable relations $R: A \nrightarrow B$ and $S: B \nrightarrow C$, we have⁶⁰

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}(A) & \xrightarrow{R_*} & \mathcal{P}(B) \\ (S \diamond R)_* = S_* \circ R_*, & \searrow & \downarrow S_* \\ & & \mathcal{P}(C). \end{array}$$

Proof. **Item 1, Functionality I:** Clear.

Item 2, Functionality II: Clear.

⁵⁹That is, the postcomposition function

$$(\chi_A)_*: \text{Rel}(\text{pt}, A) \rightarrow \text{Rel}(\text{pt}, A)$$

is equal to $\text{id}_{\text{Rel}(\text{pt}, A)}$.

⁶⁰That is, we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Rel}(\text{pt}, A) & \xrightarrow{R_*} & \text{Rel}(\text{pt}, B) \\ (S \diamond R)_* = S_* \circ R_*, & \searrow & \downarrow S_* \\ & & \text{Rel}(\text{pt}, C). \end{array}$$

Item 3, Interaction With Identities: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\chi_A)_*(U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{a \in U} \chi_A(a) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{a \in U} \{a\} \\ &= U \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(U) \end{aligned}$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$. Thus $(\chi_A)_* = \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}$.

Item 4, Interaction With Composition: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (S \diamond R)_*(U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{a \in U} [S \diamond R](a) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{a \in U} S(R(a)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{a \in U} S_*(R(a)) \\ &= S_* \left(\bigcup_{a \in U} R(a) \right) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S_*(R_*(U)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [S_* \circ R_*](U) \end{aligned}$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$, where we used Item 3 of Proposition 5.5.1.1.3. Thus $(S \diamond R)_* = S_* \circ R_*$. \square

5.5.2. Strong Inverse Images. Let A and B be sets and let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

00KY **Definition 5.5.2.1.1.** The **strong inverse image function associated to R** is the function

$$R_{-1}: \mathcal{P}(B) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$$

defined by⁶¹

$$R_{-1}(V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid R(a) \subset V\}$$

for each $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

00KZ **Remark 5.5.2.1.2.** Identifying subsets of B with relations from pt to B via ?? of ??, we see that the inverse image function associated to R is equivalently the function

$$R_{-1}: \underbrace{\mathcal{P}(B)}_{\cong \text{Rel(pt, } B)} \rightarrow \underbrace{\mathcal{P}(A)}_{\cong \text{Rel(pt, } A)}$$

defined by

$$R_{-1}(V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Rift}_R(V), \quad \begin{array}{ccc} & A & \\ & \nearrow \text{Rift}_R(V) & \downarrow R \\ \text{pt} & \xrightarrow[V]{} & B, \end{array}$$

⁶¹Further Terminology: The set $R_{-1}(V)$ is called the **strong inverse image of V by R** .

and being explicitly computed by

$$\begin{aligned} R_{-1}(V) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Rift}_R(V) \\ &\cong \int_{x \in B} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t,f}\}}(R_{-1}^x, V_{-2}^x), \end{aligned}$$

where we have used [Item 12 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1](#).

Proof. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Rift}_R(V) &\cong \int_{x \in B} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t,f}\}}(R_{-1}^x, V_{-2}^x) \\ &= \left\{ a \in A \mid \int_{x \in B} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t,f}\}}(R_a^x, V_\star^x) = \text{true} \right\} \\ &= \left\{ a \in A \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{for each } x \in B, \text{ at least one of the} \\ \text{following conditions hold:} \end{array} \right. \\ &\quad \left. \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ We have } R_a^x = \text{false} \\ 2. \text{ The following conditions hold:} \end{array} \right. \\ &\quad \left. \begin{array}{l} (a) \text{ We have } R_a^x = \text{true} \\ (b) \text{ We have } V_\star^x = \text{true} \end{array} \right\} \\ &= \left\{ a \in A \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{for each } x \in B, \text{ at least one of the} \\ \text{following conditions hold:} \end{array} \right. \\ &\quad \left. \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ We have } x \notin R(a) \\ 2. \text{ The following conditions hold:} \end{array} \right. \\ &\quad \left. \begin{array}{l} (a) \text{ We have } x \in R(a) \\ (b) \text{ We have } x \in V \end{array} \right\} \\ &= \{a \in A \mid \text{for each } x \in R(a), \text{ we have } x \in V\} \\ &= \{a \in A \mid R(a) \subset V\} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R_{-1}(V). \end{aligned}$$

This finishes the proof. \square

00L0 Proposition 5.5.2.1.3. Let $R: A \rightarrow B$ be a relation.

00L1 (1) *Functoriality.* The assignment $V \mapsto R_{-1}(V)$ defines a functor

$$R_{-1}: (\mathcal{P}(B), \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(A), \subset)$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$, we have

$$[R_{-1}](V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R_{-1}(V);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$:

– If $U \subset V$, then $R_{-1}(U) \subset R_{-1}(V)$.

00L2 (2) *Adjointness.* We have an adjunction

$$(R_* \dashv R_{-1}): \mathcal{P}(A) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{R_*} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{R_{-1}} \end{array} \mathcal{P}(B),$$

witnessed by a bijections of sets

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(R_*(U), V) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(U, R_{-1}(V)),$$

natural in $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ and $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$, i.e. such that:

(\star) The following conditions are equivalent:

- We have $R_*(U) \subset V$;
- We have $U \subset R_{-1}(V)$.

00L3 (3) *Lax Preservation of Colimits.* We have an inclusion of sets

$$\bigcup_{i \in I} R_{-1}(U_i) \subset R_{-1}\left(\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i\right),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(B)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have inclusions

$$R_{-1}(U) \cup R_{-1}(V) \subset R_{-1}(U \cup V),$$

$$\emptyset \subset R_{-1}(\emptyset),$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

00L4 (4) *Preservation of Limits.* We have an equality of sets

$$R_{-1}\left(\bigcap_{i \in I} U_i\right) = \bigcap_{i \in I} R_{-1}(U_i),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(B)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have equalities

$$R_{-1}(U \cap V) = R_{-1}(U) \cap R_{-1}(V),$$

$$R_{-1}(B) = B,$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

00L5 (5) *Symmetric Lax Monoidality With Respect to Unions.* The direct image with compact support function of **Item 1** has a symmetric lax monoidal structure

$$(R_{-1}, R_{-1}^{\otimes}, R_{-1 \parallel \sqcup}^{\otimes}) : (\mathcal{P}(A), \cup, \emptyset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \cup, \emptyset),$$

being equipped with inclusions

$$R_{-1|U,V}^{\otimes} : R_{-1}(U) \cup R_{-1}(V) \subset R_{-1}(U \cup V),$$

$$R_{-1 \parallel \sqcup}^{\otimes} : \emptyset \subset R_{-1}(\emptyset),$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

00L6 (6) *Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Intersections.* The direct image function of **Item 1** has a symmetric strict monoidal structure

$$(R_{-1}, R_{-1}^{\otimes}, R_{-1 \parallel \sqcap}^{\otimes}) : (\mathcal{P}(A), \cap, A) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \cap, B),$$

being equipped with equalities

$$R_{-1|U,V}^{\otimes} : R_{-1}(U \cap V) \xrightarrow{\cong} R_{-1}(U) \cap R_{-1}(V),$$

$$R_{-1 \parallel \sqcap}^{\otimes} : R_{-1}(A) \xrightarrow{\cong} B,$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

00L7 (7) *Interaction With Weak Inverse Images I.* We have

$$R_{-1}(V) = A \setminus R^{-1}(B \setminus V)$$

- for each $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.
- 00L8** (8) *Interaction With Weak Inverse Images II.* Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation from A to B .
- 00L9** (a) If R is a total relation, then we have an inclusion of sets
- $$R_{-1}(V) \subset R^{-1}(V)$$
- natural in $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.
- 00LA** (b) If R is total and functional, then the above inclusion is in fact an equality.
- 00LB** (c) Conversely, if we have $R_{-1} = R^{-1}$, then R is total and functional.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Clear.

Item 2, Adjointness: This follows from ?? of ??.

Item 3, Lax Preservation of Colimits: Omitted.

Item 4, Preservation of Limits: This follows from **Item 2** and ?? of ??.

Item 5, Symmetric Lax Monoidality With Respect to Unions: This follows from **Item 3**.

Item 6, Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Intersections: This follows from **Item 4**.

Item 7, Interaction With Weak Inverse Images I: We claim we have an equality

$$R_{-1}(B \setminus V) = A \setminus R^{-1}(V).$$

Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} R_{-1}(B \setminus V) &= \{a \in A \mid R(a) \subset B \setminus V\}, \\ A \setminus R^{-1}(V) &= \{a \in A \mid R(a) \cap V = \emptyset\}. \end{aligned}$$

Taking $V = B \setminus V$ then implies the original statement.

Item 8, Interaction With Weak Inverse Images II: **Item 8a** is clear, while **Items 8b** and **8c** follow from **Item 6** of [Proposition 5.3.1.1.2](#). \square

- 00LC** **Proposition 5.5.2.1.4.** Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

- 00LD** (1) *Functionality I.* The assignment $R \mapsto R_{-1}$ defines a function

$$(-)_{-1}: \mathbf{Sets}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}(\mathcal{P}(A), \mathcal{P}(B)).$$

- 00LE** (2) *Functionality II.* The assignment $R \mapsto R_{-1}$ defines a function

$$(-)_{-1}: \mathbf{Sets}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Pos}((\mathcal{P}(A), \subset), (\mathcal{P}(B), \subset)).$$

- 00LF** (3) *Interaction With Identities.* For each $A \in \mathbf{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets})$, we have

$$(\text{id}_A)_{-1} = \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(A)};$$

- 00LG** (4) *Interaction With Composition.* For each pair of composable relations $R: A \nrightarrow B$ and $S: B \nrightarrow C$, we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}(C) & \xrightarrow{S_{-1}} & \mathcal{P}(B) \\ (S \diamond R)_{-1} = R_{-1} \circ S_{-1}, & \searrow & \downarrow R_{-1} \\ & (S \diamond R)_{-1} & \mathcal{P}(A). \end{array}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functionality I:* Clear.

Item 2, Functionality II: Clear.

Item 3, Interaction With Identities: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\chi_A)_{-1}(U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid \chi_A(a) \subset U\} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid \{a\} \subset U\} \\ &= U \end{aligned}$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$. Thus $(\chi_A)_{-1} = \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}$.

Item 4, Interaction With Composition: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (S \diamond R)_{-1}(U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid [S \diamond R](a) \subset U\} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid S(R(a)) \subset U\} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid S_*(R(a)) \subset U\} \\ &= \{a \in A \mid R(a) \subset S_{-1}(U)\} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R_{-1}(S_{-1}(U)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [R_{-1} \circ S_{-1}](U) \end{aligned}$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(C)$, where we used *Item 2* of [Proposition 5.5.2.1.3](#), which implies that the conditions

- We have $S_*(R(a)) \subset U$;
- We have $R(a) \subset S_{-1}(U)$;

are equivalent. Thus $(S \diamond R)_{-1} = R_{-1} \circ S_{-1}$. \square

5.5.3. Weak Inverse Images. Let A and B be sets and let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

00LJ Definition 5.5.3.1.1. The weak inverse image function associated to R ⁶² is the function

$$R^{-1}: \mathcal{P}(B) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A)$$

defined by⁶³

$$R^{-1}(V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in A \mid R(a) \cap V \neq \emptyset\}$$

for each $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

00LK Remark 5.5.3.1.2. Identifying subsets of B with relations from B to pt via ?? of ??, we see that the weak inverse image function associated to R is equivalently the function

$$R^{-1}: \underbrace{\mathcal{P}(B)}_{\cong \text{Rel}(B, \text{pt})} \rightarrow \underbrace{\mathcal{P}(A)}_{\cong \text{Rel}(A, \text{pt})}$$

defined by

$$R^{-1}(V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} V \diamond R$$

for each $V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$, where $R \diamond V$ is the composition

$$A \xrightarrow{R} B \xrightarrow{V} \text{pt}.$$

⁶²Further Terminology: Also called simply the **inverse image function associated to R** .

⁶³Further Terminology: The set $R^{-1}(V)$ is called the **weak inverse image of V by R** or simply the **inverse image of V by R** .

Explicitly, we have

$$\begin{aligned} R^{-1}(V) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} V \diamond R \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int^{x \in B} V_x^{-1} \times R_{-2}^x. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. We have

$$\begin{aligned} V \diamond R &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int^{x \in B} V_x^{-1} \times R_{-2}^x \\ &= \left\{ a \in A \mid \int^{x \in B} V_x^* \times R_a^x = \text{true} \right\} \\ &= \left\{ a \in A \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{there exists } x \in B \text{ such that the} \\ \text{following conditions hold:} \end{array} \right. \\ &\quad \left. \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ We have } V_x^* = \text{true} \\ 2. \text{ We have } R_a^x = \text{true} \end{array} \right\} \\ &= \left\{ a \in A \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{there exists } x \in B \text{ such that the} \\ \text{following conditions hold:} \end{array} \right. \\ &\quad \left. \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ We have } x \in V \\ 2. \text{ We have } x \in R(a) \end{array} \right\} \\ &= \{a \in A \mid \text{there exists } x \in V \text{ such that } x \in R(a)\} \\ &= \{a \in A \mid R(a) \cap V \neq \emptyset\} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R^{-1}(V) \end{aligned}$$

This finishes the proof. \square

00LL Proposition 5.5.3.1.3. Let $R: A \rightarrow B$ be a relation.

00LM (1) *Functoriality.* The assignment $V \mapsto R^{-1}(V)$ defines a functor

$$R^{-1}: (\mathcal{P}(B), \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(A), \subset)$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$, we have

$$[R^{-1}](V) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R^{-1}(V);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$:

– If $U \subset V$, then $R^{-1}(U) \subset R^{-1}(V)$.

00LN (2) *Adjointness.* We have an adjunction

$$(R^{-1} \dashv R_!): \mathcal{P}(B) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{R^{-1}} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{R_!} \end{array} \mathcal{P}(A),$$

witnessed by a bijections of sets

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(R^{-1}(U), V) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(U, R_!(V)),$$

natural in $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ and $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$, i.e. such that:

(*) The following conditions are equivalent:

- We have $R^{-1}(U) \subset V$;
- We have $U \subset R_!(V)$.

00LP (3) *Preservation of Colimits.* We have an equality of sets

$$R^{-1}\left(\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i\right) = \bigcup_{i \in I} R^{-1}(U_i),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(B)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have equalities

$$R^{-1}(U) \cup R^{-1}(V) = R^{-1}(U \cup V),$$

$$R^{-1}(\emptyset) = \emptyset,$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

00LQ (4) *Oplax Preservation of Limits.* We have an inclusion of sets

$$R^{-1}\left(\bigcap_{i \in I} U_i\right) \subset \bigcap_{i \in I} R^{-1}(U_i),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(B)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have inclusions

$$R^{-1}(U \cap V) \subset R^{-1}(U) \cap R^{-1}(V),$$

$$R^{-1}(A) \subset B,$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

00LR (5) *Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Unions.* The direct image function of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric strict monoidal structure

$$\left(R^{-1}, R^{-1, \otimes}, R_{\mathbb{M}}^{-1, \otimes}\right): (\mathcal{P}(A), \cup, \emptyset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \cup, \emptyset),$$

being equipped with equalities

$$R_{U,V}^{-1, \otimes}: R^{-1}(U) \cup R^{-1}(V) \xrightarrow{\cong} R^{-1}(U \cup V),$$

$$R_{\mathbb{M}}^{-1, \otimes}: \emptyset \xrightarrow{\cong} \emptyset,$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

00LS (6) *Symmetric Oplax Monoidality With Respect to Intersections.* The direct image function of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric oplax monoidal structure

$$\left(R^{-1}, R^{-1, \otimes}, R_{\mathbb{M}}^{-1, \otimes}\right): (\mathcal{P}(A), \cap, A) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \cap, B),$$

being equipped with inclusions

$$R_{U,V}^{-1, \otimes}: R^{-1}(U \cap V) \subset R^{-1}(U) \cap R^{-1}(V),$$

$$R_{\mathbb{M}}^{-1, \otimes}: R^{-1}(A) \subset B,$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

00LT (7) *Interaction With Strong Inverse Images I.* We have

$$R^{-1}(V) = A \setminus R_{-1}(B \setminus V)$$

for each $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

00LU (8) *Interaction With Strong Inverse Images II.* Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation from A to B .

00LV

- (a) If R is a total relation, then we have an inclusion of sets

$$R_{-1}(V) \subset R^{-1}(V)$$

natural in $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

00LW

- (b) If R is total and functional, then the above inclusion is in fact

an equality.

00LX

- (c) Conversely, if we have $R_{-1} = R^{-1}$, then R is total and functional.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Clear.

Item 2, Adjointness: This follows from ?? of ??.

Item 3, Preservation of Colimits: This follows from Item 2 and ?? of ??.

Item 4, Oplax Preservation of Limits: Omitted.

Item 5, Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Unions: This follows from Item 3.

Item 6, Symmetric Oplax Monoidality With Respect to Intersections: This follows from Item 4.

Item 7, Interaction With Strong Inverse Images I: This follows from Item 7 of Proposition 5.5.2.1.3.

Item 8, Interaction With Strong Inverse Images II: This was proved in Item 8 of Proposition 5.5.2.1.3. \square

00LY

Proposition 5.5.3.1.4. Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

00LZ

- (1) *Functionality I.* The assignment $R \mapsto R^{-1}$ defines a function

$$(-)^{-1}: \text{Rel}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Sets}(\mathcal{P}(A), \mathcal{P}(B)).$$

00M0

- (2) *Functionality II.* The assignment $R \mapsto R^{-1}$ defines a function

$$(-)^{-1}: \text{Rel}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Pos}((\mathcal{P}(A), \subset), (\mathcal{P}(B), \subset)).$$

00M1

- (3) *Interaction With Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, we have⁶⁴

$$(\chi_A)^{-1} = \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(A)};$$

00M2

- (4) *Interaction With Composition.* For each pair of composable relations $R: A \nrightarrow B$ and $S: B \nrightarrow C$, we have⁶⁵

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}(C) & \xrightarrow{S^{-1}} & \mathcal{P}(B) \\ (S \diamond R)^{-1} = R^{-1} \circ S^{-1}, & \searrow & \downarrow R^{-1} \\ & (S \diamond R)^{-1} & \\ & & \mathcal{P}(A). \end{array}$$

⁶⁴That is, the postcomposition

$$(\chi_A)^{-1}: \text{Rel}(\text{pt}, A) \rightarrow \text{Rel}(\text{pt}, A)$$

is equal to $\text{id}_{\text{Rel}(\text{pt}, A)}$.

⁶⁵That is, we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Rel}(\text{pt}, C) & \xrightarrow{R^{-1}} & \text{Rel}(\text{pt}, B) \\ (S \diamond R)^{-1} = R^{-1} \circ S^{-1}, & \searrow & \downarrow S^{-1} \\ & (S \diamond R)^{-1} & \\ & & \text{Rel}(\text{pt}, A). \end{array}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functionality I:* Clear.

Item 2, Functionality II: Clear.

Item 3, Interaction With Identities: This follows from ?? of ??.

Item 4, Interaction With Composition: This follows from ?? of ??.

□

5.5.4. Direct Images With Compact Support. Let A and B be sets and let $R: A \rightarrow B$ be a relation.

00M4 Definition 5.5.4.1.1. The **direct image with compact support function associated to R** is the function⁶⁶

$$R_!: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$$

defined by^{67,68}

$$\begin{aligned} R_!(U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ b \in B \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{for each } a \in A, \text{ if we have} \\ b \in R(a), \text{ then } a \in U \end{array} \right\} \\ &= \left\{ b \in B \mid R^{-1}(b) \subset U \right\} \end{aligned}$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

00M5 Remark 5.5.4.1.2. Identifying subsets of B with relations from pt to B via ?? of ??, we see that the direct image with compact support function associated to R is equivalently the function

$$R_!: \underbrace{\mathcal{P}(A)}_{\cong \text{Rel}(A, \text{pt})} \rightarrow \underbrace{\mathcal{P}(B)}_{\cong \text{Rel}(B, \text{pt})}$$

defined by

$$R_!(U) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Ran}_R(U), \quad \begin{array}{ccc} & B & \\ & \nearrow R & \downarrow \\ A & \xrightarrow[U]{\quad} & \text{pt}, \end{array} \quad \text{Ran}_R(U)$$

being explicitly computed by

$$\begin{aligned} R^*(U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Ran}_R(U) \\ &\cong \int_{a \in A} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t,f}\}}(R_a^{-2}, U_a^{-1}), \end{aligned}$$

where we have used [Item 11 of Proposition 5.2.5.1.1](#).

⁶⁶Further Notation: Also written $\forall_R: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$. This notation comes from the fact that the following statements are equivalent, where $b \in B$ and $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$:

- We have $b \in \forall_R(U)$.
- For each $a \in A$, if $b \in R(a)$, then $a \in U$.

⁶⁷Further Terminology: The set $R_!(U)$ is called the **direct image with compact support of U by R** .

⁶⁸We also have

$$R_!(U) = B \setminus R_*(A \setminus U);$$

see [Item 7 of Proposition 5.5.4.1.3](#).

Proof. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Ran}_R(V) &\cong \int_{a \in A} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t,f}\}}(R_a^{-2}, U_a^{-1}) \\
 &= \left\{ b \in B \mid \int_{a \in A} \text{Hom}_{\{\text{t,f}\}}(R_a^b, U_a^*) = \text{true} \right\} \\
 &= \left\{ b \in B \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{for each } a \in A, \text{ at least one of the} \\ \text{following conditions hold:} \end{array} \right. \\
 &\quad \left. \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ We have } R_a^b = \text{false} \\ 2. \text{ The following conditions hold:} \end{array} \right. \\
 &\quad \left. \begin{array}{l} (a) \text{ We have } R_a^b = \text{true} \\ (b) \text{ We have } U_a^* = \text{true} \end{array} \right\} \\
 &= \left\{ b \in B \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{for each } a \in A, \text{ at least one of the} \\ \text{following conditions hold:} \end{array} \right. \\
 &\quad \left. \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ We have } b \notin R(A) \\ 2. \text{ The following conditions hold:} \end{array} \right. \\
 &\quad \left. \begin{array}{l} (a) \text{ We have } b \in R(a) \\ (b) \text{ We have } a \in U \end{array} \right\} \\
 &= \left\{ b \in B \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{for each } a \in A, \text{ if we have} \\ b \in R(a), \text{ then } a \in U \end{array} \right\} \\
 &= \{b \in B \mid R^{-1}(b) \subset U\} \\
 &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R^{-1}(U).
 \end{aligned}$$

This finishes the proof. \square

00M6 **Proposition 5.5.4.1.3.** Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

00M7 (1) *Functoriality.* The assignment $U \mapsto R_!(U)$ defines a functor

$$R_!: (\mathcal{P}(A), \subset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \subset)$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$, we have

$$[R_!](U) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R_!(U);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$:

– If $U \subset V$, then $R_!(U) \subset R_!(V)$.

00M8 (2) *Adjointness.* We have an adjunction

$$(R^{-1} \dashv R_!): \mathcal{P}(B) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{R^{-1}} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{R_!} \end{array} \mathcal{P}(A),$$

witnessed by a bijections of sets

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(R^{-1}(U), V) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}(U, R_!(V)),$$

natural in $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ and $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$, i.e. such that:

(*) The following conditions are equivalent:

- We have $R^{-1}(U) \subset V$;
- We have $U \subset R_!(V)$.

00M9 (3) *Lax Preservation of Colimits.* We have an inclusion of sets

$$\bigcup_{i \in I} R_!(U_i) \subset R_! \left(\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i \right),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(A)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have inclusions

$$\begin{aligned} R_!(U) \cup R_!(V) &\subset R_!(U \cup V), \\ \emptyset &\subset R_!(\emptyset), \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

00MA (4) *Preservation of Limits.* We have an equality of sets

$$R_! \left(\bigcap_{i \in I} U_i \right) = \bigcap_{i \in I} R_!(U_i),$$

natural in $\{U_i\}_{i \in I} \in \mathcal{P}(A)^{\times I}$. In particular, we have equalities

$$\begin{aligned} R_!(U \cap V) &= R_!(U) \cap R_!(V), \\ R_!(A) &= B, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

00MB (5) *Symmetric Lax Monoidality With Respect to Unions.* The direct image with compact support function of **Item 1** has a symmetric lax monoidal structure

$$(R_!, R_!^\otimes, R_{!|\wp}^\otimes) : (\mathcal{P}(A), \cup, \emptyset) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \cup, \emptyset),$$

being equipped with inclusions

$$\begin{aligned} R_{!|U,V}^\otimes : R_!(U) \cup R_!(V) &\subset R_!(U \cup V), \\ R_{!|\wp}^\otimes : \emptyset &\subset R_!(\emptyset), \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

00MC (6) *Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Intersections.* The direct image function of **Item 1** has a symmetric strict monoidal structure

$$(R_!, R_!^\otimes, R_{!|\wp}^\otimes) : (\mathcal{P}(A), \cap, A) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(B), \cap, B),$$

being equipped with equalities

$$\begin{aligned} R_{!|U,V}^\otimes : R_!(U \cap V) &\xrightarrow{\cong} R_!(U) \cap R_!(V), \\ R_{!|\wp}^\otimes : R_!(A) &\xrightarrow{\cong} B, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $U, V \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

00MD (7) *Relation to Direct Images.* We have

$$R_!(U) = B \setminus R_*(A \setminus U)$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Clear.

Item 2, Adjointness: This follows from ?? of ??.

Item 3, Lax Preservation of Colimits: Omitted.

Item 4, Preservation of Limits: This follows from [Item 2](#) and ?? of ??.

Item 5, Symmetric Lax Monoidality With Respect to Unions: This follows from [Item 3](#).

Item 6, Symmetric Strict Monoidality With Respect to Intersections: This follows from [Item 4](#).

Item 7, Relation to Direct Images: This follows from [Item 7](#) of [Proposition 5.5.1.1.3](#). Alternatively, we may prove it directly as follows, with the proof proceeding in the same way as in the case of functions (?? of ??).

We claim that $R_!(U) = B \setminus R_*(A \setminus U)$:

- *The First Implication.* We claim that

$$R_!(U) \subset B \setminus R_*(A \setminus U).$$

Let $b \in R_!(U)$. We need to show that $b \notin R_*(A \setminus U)$, i.e. that there is no $a \in A \setminus U$ such that $b \in R(a)$.

This is indeed the case, as otherwise we would have $a \in R^{-1}(b)$ and $a \notin U$, contradicting $R^{-1}(b) \subset U$ (which holds since $b \in R_!(U)$).

Thus $b \in B \setminus R_*(A \setminus U)$.

- *The Second Implication.* We claim that

$$B \setminus R_*(A \setminus U) \subset R_!(U).$$

Let $b \in B \setminus R_*(A \setminus U)$. We need to show that $b \in R_!(U)$, i.e. that $R^{-1}(b) \subset U$.

Since $b \notin R_*(A \setminus U)$, there exists no $a \in A \setminus U$ such that $b \in R(a)$, and hence $R^{-1}(b) \subset U$.

Thus $b \in R_!(U)$.

This finishes the proof. \square

00ME Proposition 5.5.4.1.4. Let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

00MF (1) *Functionality I.* The assignment $R \mapsto R_!$ defines a function

$$(-)_!: \text{Sets}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Sets}(\mathcal{P}(A), \mathcal{P}(B)).$$

00MG (2) *Functionality II.* The assignment $R \mapsto R_!$ defines a function

$$(-)_!: \text{Sets}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Pos}}((\mathcal{P}(A), \subset), (\mathcal{P}(B), \subset)).$$

00MH (3) *Interaction With Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, we have

$$(\text{id}_A)_! = \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(A)};$$

00MJ (4) *Interaction With Composition.* For each pair of composable relations $R: A \nrightarrow B$ and $S: B \nrightarrow C$, we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}(A) & \xrightarrow{R_!} & \mathcal{P}(B) \\ (S \diamond R)_! = S_! \circ R_!, & \searrow & \downarrow S_! \\ & (S \diamond R)_! & \\ & & \mathcal{P}(C). \end{array}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functionality I:* Clear.

Item 2, Functionality II: Clear.

Item 3, Interaction With Identities: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\chi_A)_!(U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ a \in A \mid \chi_A^{-1}(a) \subset U \right\} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ a \in A \mid \{a\} \subset U \right\} \\ &= U \end{aligned}$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$. Thus $(\chi_A)_! = \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}(A)}$.

Item 4, Interaction With Composition: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (S \diamond R)_!(U) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ c \in C \mid [S \diamond R]^{-1}(c) \subset U \right\} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ c \in C \mid S^{-1}(R^{-1}(c)) \subset U \right\} \\ &= \left\{ c \in C \mid R^{-1}(c) \subset S_!(U) \right\} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R_!(S_!(U)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [R_! \circ S_!](U) \end{aligned}$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(C)$, where we used Item 2 of Proposition 5.5.4.1.3, which implies that the conditions

- We have $S^{-1}(R^{-1}(c)) \subset U$;
- We have $R^{-1}(c) \subset S_!(U)$;

are equivalent. Thus $(S \diamond R)_! = S_! \circ R_!$. \square

5.5.5. Functoriality of Powersets.

00ML Proposition 5.5.5.1.1. The assignment $X \mapsto \mathcal{P}(X)$ defines functors⁶⁹

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{P}_* &: \text{Rel} \rightarrow \text{Sets}, \\ \mathcal{P}_{-1} &: \text{Rel}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}, \\ \mathcal{P}^{-1} &: \text{Rel}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}, \\ \mathcal{P}_! &: \text{Rel} \rightarrow \text{Sets} \end{aligned}$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Rel})$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{P}_*(A) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathcal{P}(A), \\ \mathcal{P}_{-1}(A) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathcal{P}(A), \\ \mathcal{P}^{-1}(A) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathcal{P}(A), \\ \mathcal{P}_!(A) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathcal{P}(A); \end{aligned}$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each morphism $R: A \nrightarrow B$ of Rel, the images

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{P}_*(R) &: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B), \\ \mathcal{P}_{-1}(R) &: \mathcal{P}(B) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A), \\ \mathcal{P}^{-1}(R) &: \mathcal{P}(B) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(A), \\ \mathcal{P}_!(R) &: \mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B) \end{aligned}$$

⁶⁹The functor $\mathcal{P}_*: \text{Rel} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ admits a left adjoint; see Item 3 of Proposition 5.3.1.1.2.

of R by \mathcal{P}_* , \mathcal{P}_{-1} , \mathcal{P}^{-1} , and $\mathcal{P}_!$ are defined by

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{P}_*(R) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R_*, \\ \mathcal{P}_{-1}(R) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R_{-1}, \\ \mathcal{P}^{-1}(R) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R^{-1}, \\ \mathcal{P}_!(R) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R_!,\end{aligned}$$

as in Definitions 5.5.1.1.1, 5.5.2.1.1, 5.5.3.1.1 and 5.5.4.1.1.

Proof. This follows from Items 3 and 4 of Proposition 5.5.1.4, Items 3 and 4 of Proposition 5.5.2.1.4, Items 3 and 4 of Proposition 5.5.3.1.4, and Items 3 and 4 of Proposition 5.5.4.1.4. \square

00MM 5.5.6. Functoriality of Powersets: Relations on Powersets. Let A and B be sets and let $R: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

00MN Definition 5.5.6.1.1. The relation on powersets associated to R is the relation

$$\mathcal{P}(R): \mathcal{P}(A) \nrightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$$

defined by⁷⁰

$$\mathcal{P}(R)_U^V \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbf{Rel}(\chi_{\text{pt}}, V \diamond R \diamond U)$$

for each $U \in \mathcal{P}(A)$ and each $V \in \mathcal{P}(B)$.

00MP Remark 5.5.6.1.2. In detail, we have $U \sim_{\mathcal{P}(R)} V$ iff the following equivalent conditions hold:

- We have $\chi_{\text{pt}} \subset V \diamond R \diamond U$.
- We have $(V \diamond R \diamond U)^*_\star = \text{true}$, i.e. we have

$$\int^{a \in A} \int^{b \in B} V_b^* \times R_a^b \times U_\star^a = \text{true}.$$

- There exists some $a \in A$ and some $b \in B$ such that:
 - We have $U_\star^a = \text{true}$;
 - We have $R_a^b = \text{true}$;
 - We have $V_b^* = \text{true}$.
- There exists some $a \in A$ and some $b \in B$ such that:
 - We have $a \in U$;
 - We have $a \sim_R b$;
 - We have $b \in V$.

00MQ Proposition 5.5.6.1.3. The assignment $R \mapsto \mathcal{P}(R)$ defines a functor

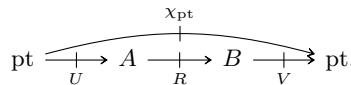
$$\mathcal{P}: \text{Rel} \rightarrow \text{Rel}.$$

Proof. Omitted. \square

5.6. Relative Preorders

5.6.1. The Left Skew Monoidal Structure on $\text{Rel}(A, B)$. Let A and B be sets and let $J: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

⁷⁰Illustration:



5.6.1.1. *The Left Skew Monoidal Product.*

00MU **Definition 5.6.1.1.1.** The left J -skew monoidal product of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ is the functor

$$\triangleleft_J : \mathbf{Rel}(A, B) \times \mathbf{Rel}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $R, S \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B))$, we have

$$S \triangleleft_J R \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S \diamond \text{Rift}_J(R), \quad \begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{S} & B; \\ \text{Rift}_J(R) \swarrow \searrow & \downarrow J & \\ A & \xrightarrow{R} & B \end{array}$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $R, S, R', S' \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$(\triangleleft_J)_{(G, F), (G', F')} : \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}(S, S') \times \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}(R, R') \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}(S \triangleleft_J R, S' \triangleleft_J R')$$

of \triangleleft_J at $((R, S), (R', S'))$ is defined by⁷¹

$$\beta \triangleleft_J \alpha \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \beta \diamond \text{Rift}_J(\alpha), \quad \begin{array}{ccc} S & \xrightarrow{\beta} & B \\ \text{Rift}_J(R) \swarrow \searrow & \downarrow J & \\ A & \xrightarrow{R} & B \\ \text{Rift}_J(\alpha) \swarrow \searrow & \downarrow \alpha \parallel & \\ A & \xrightarrow{R'} & B \end{array}$$

for each $\beta \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}(S, S')$ and each $\alpha \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}(R, R')$.

5.6.1.2. *The Left Skew Monoidal Unit.*

00MW **Definition 5.6.1.2.1.** The left J -skew monoidal unit of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ is the functor

$$\mathbb{1}^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)} : \text{pt} \rightarrow \mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$$

picking the object

$$\mathbb{1}^{\triangleleft}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} J$$

of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$.

5.6.1.3. *The Left Skew Associators.*

00MY **Definition 5.6.1.3.1.** The left J -skew associator of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ is the natural transformation

$$\alpha^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), \triangleleft} : \triangleleft_J \circ (\triangleleft_J \times \text{id}) \Rightarrow \triangleleft_J \circ (\text{id} \times \triangleleft_J),$$

⁷¹Since $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ is posetal, this is to say that if $S \subset S'$ and $R \subset R'$, then $S \triangleleft_J R \subset S' \triangleleft_J R'$.

whose component

$$\alpha_{T,S,R}^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleleft}: \underbrace{(T \triangleleft_J S) \triangleleft_J R}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} T \diamond \text{Rift}_J(S) \diamond \text{Rift}_J(R)} \hookrightarrow \underbrace{T \triangleleft_J (S \triangleleft_J R)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} T \diamond \text{Rift}_J(S \diamond \text{Rift}_J(R))}$$

at (T, S, R) is given by

$$\alpha_{T,S,R}^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleleft} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_T \diamond \gamma,$$

where

$$\gamma: \text{Rift}_J(S) \diamond \text{Rift}_J(R) \hookrightarrow \text{Rift}_J(S \diamond \text{Rift}_J(R))$$

is the inclusion adjunct to the inclusion

$$\epsilon_S \star \text{id}_{\text{Rift}_J(R)}: \underbrace{J \diamond \text{Rift}_J(S) \diamond \text{Rift}_J(R)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} J_*(\text{Rift}_J(S) \diamond \text{Rift}_J(R))} \hookrightarrow S \diamond \text{Rift}_J(R)$$

under the adjunction $J_* \dashv \text{Rift}_J$, where $\epsilon: J \diamond \text{Rift}_J \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)}$ is the counit of the adjunction $J_* \dashv \text{Rift}_J$.

5.6.1.4. The Left Skew Left Unitors.

00N0 **Definition 5.6.1.4.1.** The **left J -skew left unitor of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$** is the natural transformation

$$\lambda_R^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleleft}: \triangleleft_J \circ (\mathbb{K}_{\triangleleft}^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)} \times \text{id}) \Rightarrow \text{id},$$

whose component

$$\lambda_R^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleleft}: \underbrace{J \triangleleft_J R}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} J \diamond \text{Rift}_J(R)} \hookrightarrow R$$

at R is given by

$$\lambda_R^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleleft} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \epsilon_R,$$

where $\epsilon: J \diamond \text{Rift}_J \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)}$ is the counit of the adjunction $J_* \dashv \text{Rift}_J$.

5.6.1.5. The Left Skew Right Unitors.

00N2 **Definition 5.6.1.5.1.** The **left J -skew right unitor of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$** is the natural transformation

$$\rho_R^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleleft}: \text{id} \Rightarrow \triangleleft_J \circ (\text{id} \times \mathbb{K}_{\triangleleft}^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)}),$$

whose component

$$\rho_R^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleleft}: R \hookrightarrow \underbrace{R \triangleleft_J J}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R \diamond \text{Rift}_J(J)}$$

at R is given by

$$\rho_R^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleleft} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_R \star \sigma,$$

where $\sigma: \text{id}_A \Rightarrow \text{Rift}_J(J)$ is the universal transformation included in the data of the right Kan lift $\text{Rift}_J(J)$.

5.6.1.6. The Left Skew Monoidal Structure on $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$.

00N4 **Definition 5.6.1.6.1.** The **left J -skew monoidal category of relations from A to B** is the left skew monoidal category

$$(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), \triangleleft_J, \mathbb{K}_{\triangleleft}^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)}, \alpha^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleleft}, \lambda^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleleft}, \rho^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleleft})$$

consisting of

- *The Underlying Category.* The posetal category associated to the poset $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ of relations from A to B of Item 2 of Definition 5.1.1.1.2;
- *The Skew Monoidal Product.* The functor \triangleleft_J of Definition 5.6.1.1.1;
- *The Skew Monoidal Unit.* The functor $\mathbb{1}_{\triangleleft}^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}$ of Definition 5.6.1.2.1;
- *The Skew Associators.* The natural transformation $\alpha^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), \triangleleft}$ of Definition 5.6.1.3.1;
- *The Skew Left Unitors.* The natural transformation $\lambda^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), \triangleleft}$ of Definition 5.6.1.4.1;
- *The Skew Right Unitors.* The natural transformation $\rho^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), \triangleleft}$ of Definition 5.6.1.5.1.

5.6.2. Left Relative Preorders. Let A and B be sets and let $J: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

00N6 Definition 5.6.2.1.1. A left J -relative preorder from A to B is equivalently:

- An \mathbb{E}_1 -skew monoid in $(\mathbf{N}_\bullet(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)), \triangleleft_J, J)$;
- A skew monoid in $(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), \triangleleft_J, J)$.

00N7 Remark 5.6.2.1.2. In detail, a left J -relative preorder (R, μ_R, η_R) from A to B consists of

- *The Underlying Relation.* A relation

$$R: A \nrightarrow B,$$

called the **underlying relation** of (R, μ_R, η_R) ;

- *The Multiplication Inclusion.* An inclusion of relations

$$\mu_R: R \triangleleft_J R \subset R,$$

called the **multiplication** of (R, μ_R, η_R) ;

- *The Unit Inclusion.* An inclusion of relations

$$\eta_R: J \subset R,$$

called the **unit** of (R, μ_R, η_R) .

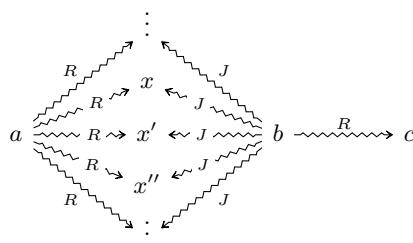
00N8 Remark 5.6.2.1.3. In other words, a left J -relative preorder from A to B is a relation $R: A \nrightarrow B$ from A to B satisfying the following conditions:

- (1) *J -Transitivity.* For each $a \in A$ and each $c \in B$, we have

$$a \sim_{R \diamond \text{Rift}_J(R)} c$$

i.e. the following condition is satisfied:⁷²

⁷²Illustration: If we have



- (*) If there exists some $b \in A$ such that:
 - We have $a \sim_{\text{Rift}_J(R)} b$, i.e. for each $x \in B$, if $b \sim_J x$, then
 $a \sim_R x$;⁷³
 - We have $b \sim_R c$;
then $a \sim_R c$.
- (2) *J*-Unitarity. For each $a \in A$ and each $b \in B$, the following condition is satisfied:
 - (*) If $a \sim_J b$, then $a \sim_R b$.

5.6.3. The Right Skew Monoidal Structure on $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$. Let A and B be sets and let $J: A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

5.6.3.1. The Right Skew Monoidal Product.

00NB **Definition 5.6.3.1.1.** The right J -skew monoidal product of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ is the functor

$$\triangleright_J: \mathbf{Rel}(A, B) \times \mathbf{Rel}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $R, S \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B))$, we have

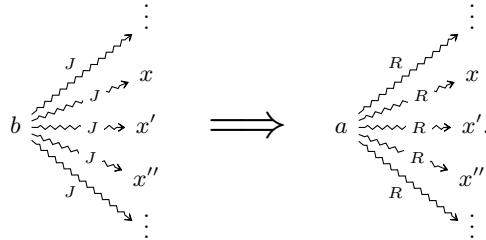
$$A \xrightarrow{R} B \xrightarrow{\text{Ran}_J(S)} B; \\ S \triangleright_J R \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Ran}_J(S) \diamond R, \\ \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \searrow \\ J \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \searrow \\ S \end{array}$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $R, S, R', S' \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$(\triangleright_J)_{(S, R), (S', R')}: \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}(S, S') \times \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}(R, R') \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}(S \triangleright_J R, S' \triangleright_J R')$$

then $a \sim_R c$.

⁷³Illustration:



of \triangleright_J at $((S, R), (S', R'))$ is defined by⁷⁴

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{Diagram illustrating the definition of } \beta \triangleright_J \alpha \text{ using the right skew associator } \alpha \\
 \text{The diagram shows objects } A, B, S, S', R, R' \text{ and morphisms } J: A \rightarrow B, \alpha: R \rightarrow R', \beta: S \rightarrow S', \text{ and } \text{Ran}_J(\beta): \text{Ran}_J(S) \rightarrow \text{Ran}_J(S'). \\
 \text{Curved arrows indicate the composition of relations: } R \circ \alpha \text{ from } A \text{ to } R', \text{ and } S \circ \beta \text{ from } S \text{ to } S'. \\
 \text{Dashed arrows indicate the components of the right skew associator: } \text{Ran}_J(\beta) \text{ from } \text{Ran}_J(S) \text{ to } \text{Ran}_J(S'), \text{ and } J \text{ from } A \text{ to } B. \\
 \text{A double-headed arrow between } \text{Ran}_J(S) \text{ and } \text{Ran}_J(S') \text{ indicates they are isomorphic.}
 \end{array}$$

for each $\beta \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}(S, S')$ and each $\alpha \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}(R, R')$.

5.6.3.2. The Right Skew Monoidal Unit.

00ND **Definition 5.6.3.2.1.** The **right J -skew monoidal unit** of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ is the functor

$$\mathbb{W}^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}_{\triangleright}: \text{pt} \rightarrow \mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$$

picking the object

$$\mathbb{W}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}^{\triangleright} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} J$$

of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$.

5.6.3.3. The Right Skew Associators.

00NF **Definition 5.6.3.3.1.** The **right J -skew associator** of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ is the natural transformation

$$\alpha^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), \triangleright}: \triangleright_J \circ (\text{id} \times \triangleright_J) \Rightarrow \triangleright_J \circ (\triangleright_J \times \text{id}),$$

whose component

$$\alpha_{T, S, R}^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), \triangleright}: \underbrace{T \triangleright_J (S \triangleright_J R)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Ran}_J(T) \diamond (\text{Ran}_J(S) \diamond R)} \hookrightarrow \underbrace{(T \triangleright_J S) \triangleright_J R}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Ran}_J(\text{Ran}_J(T) \diamond S) \diamond R}$$

at (T, S, R) is given by

$$\alpha_{T, S, R}^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), \triangleright} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \gamma \diamond \text{id}_R,$$

where

$$\gamma: \text{Ran}_J(T) \diamond \text{Ran}_J(S) \hookrightarrow \text{Ran}_J(\text{Ran}_J(T) \diamond S)$$

is the inclusion adjunct to the inclusion

$$\text{id}_{\text{Ran}_J(T)} \diamond \epsilon_S: \underbrace{\text{Ran}_J(T) \diamond \text{Ran}_J(S) \diamond J}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} J^*(\text{Ran}_J(T) \diamond \text{Ran}_J(S))} \hookrightarrow \text{Ran}_J(T) \diamond S$$

under the adjunction $J^* \dashv \text{Ran}_J$, where $\epsilon: \text{Ran}_J \diamond J \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}$ is the counit of the adjunction $J^* \dashv \text{Ran}_J$.

5.6.3.4. The Right Skew Left Unitors.

00NH **Definition 5.6.3.4.1.** The **right J -skew left unit** of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ is the natural transformation

$$\lambda^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), \triangleright}: \text{id} \Rightarrow \triangleright_J \circ (\mathbb{W}^{\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)}_{\triangleright} \times \text{id}),$$

⁷⁴Since $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ is posetal, this is to say that if $S \subset S'$ and $R \subset R'$, then $S \triangleright_J R \subset S' \triangleright_J R'$.

whose component

$$\lambda_R^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleright} : R \hookrightarrow \underbrace{J \triangleright_J R}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Ran}_J(J \diamond R)}$$

at R is given by

$$\lambda_R^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleright} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sigma \diamond \text{id}_R,$$

where $\sigma : \text{id}_B \Rightarrow \text{Ran}_J(J)$ is the universal transformation included in the data of the right Kan extension $\text{Ran}_J(J)$.

5.6.3.5. The Right Skew Right Unitors.

00NK **Definition 5.6.3.5.1.** The **right J -skew right unitor of $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$** is the natural transformation

$$\rho^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleright} : \triangleright_J \circ (\text{id} \times \mathbb{1}_\triangleright^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)}) \Rightarrow \text{id},$$

whose component

$$\rho_S^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleright} : \underbrace{S \triangleright_J J}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Ran}_J(S \diamond J)} \hookrightarrow S$$

at S is given by

$$\rho_S^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleright} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \epsilon_R,$$

where $\epsilon : \text{Ran}_J \diamond J \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)}$ is the counit of the adjunction $J^* \dashv \text{Ran}_J$.

5.6.3.6. The Right Skew Monoidal Structure on $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$.

00NM **Definition 5.6.3.6.1.** The **right J -skew monoidal category of functors from A to B** is the right skew monoidal category

$$(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), \triangleright_J, \mathbb{1}_\triangleright^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)}, \alpha^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleright}, \lambda^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleright}, \rho^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleright})$$

consisting of

- *The Underlying Category.* The posetal category associated to the poset $\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)$ of relations from A to B of [Item 2 of Definition 5.1.1.2](#);
- *The Skew Monoidal Product.* The functor \triangleright_J of [Definition 5.6.3.1.1](#);
- *The Skew Monoidal Unit.* The functor $\mathbb{1}_\triangleright^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B)}$ of [Definition 5.6.3.2.1](#);
- *The Skew Associators.* The natural transformation $\alpha^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleright}$ of [Definition 5.6.3.3.1](#);
- *The Skew Left Unitors.* The natural transformation $\lambda^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleright}$ of [Definition 5.6.3.4.1](#);
- *The Skew Right Unitors.* The natural transformation $\rho^{\mathbf{Rel}(A,B),\triangleright}$ of [Definition 5.6.3.5.1](#).

00NN **5.6.4. Right Relative Preorders.** Let A and B be sets and let $J : A \nrightarrow B$ be a relation.

00NP **Definition 5.6.4.1.1.** A **right J -relative preorder from A to B** is equivalently:

- An \mathbb{E}_1 -skew monoid in $(N_\bullet(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B)), \triangleright_J, J)$;
- A skew monoid in $(\mathbf{Rel}(A, B), \triangleright_J, J)$.

00NQ **Remark 5.6.4.1.2.** In detail, a **right J -relative preorder** (R, μ_R, η_R) from A to B consists of

- *The Underlying Relation.* A relation

$$R: A \nrightarrow B,$$

called the **underlying relation** of (R, μ_R, η_R) ;

- *The Multiplication Inclusion.* An inclusion of relations

$$\mu_R: R \rhd_J R \subset R,$$

called the **multiplication** of (R, μ_R, η_R) ;

- *The Unit Inclusion.* An inclusion of relations

$$\eta_R: J \subset R,$$

called the **unit** of (R, μ_R, η_R) .

00NR Remark 5.6.4.1.3. In other words, a **right J -relative preorder from A to B** is a relation $R: A \nrightarrow B$ from A to B satisfying the following conditions:

- (1) *J -Transitivity.* For each $a \in A$ and each $c \in B$, we have

$$a \sim_{\text{Ran}_J(R) \diamond R} c,$$

i.e. the following condition is satisfied:⁷⁵

- (*) If there exists some $b \in B$ such that:

– We have $a \sim_R b$;

– We have $b \sim_{\text{Ran}_J(R)} c$, i.e. for each $x \in A$, if $x \sim_J b$, then $x \sim_R c$;⁷⁶

then $a \sim_R c$.

- (2) *J -Unitarity.* For each $a \in A$ and each $b \in B$, the following condition is satisfied:

- (*) If $a \sim_J b$, then $a \sim_R b$.

Appendices

⁷⁵Illustration: If we have

then $a \sim_R c$.

⁷⁶Illustration:

5.A. Other Chapters

Sets	(1) Sets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
	(2) Constructions With Sets	Monoids With Zero
	(3) Pointed Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
	(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
	(5) Relations	Groups
	(6) Spans	(29) Groups
	(7) Posets	(30) Constructions With Groups
Indexed and Fibred Sets	(7) Indexed Sets	Hyper Algebra
	(8) Fibred Sets	(31) Hypermonoids
	(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(32) Hypergroups
Category Theory	(11) Categories	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
	(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(34) Quantales
	(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	Near-Rings
	(14) Constructions With Categories	(35) Near-Semirings
	(15) Profunctors	(36) Near-Rings
	(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	Real Analysis
	(17) Kan Extensions	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
Bicategories	(18) Bicategories	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
	(19) Internal Adjunctions	Measure Theory
Internal Category Theory	(20) Internal Categories	(39) Measurable Spaces
Cyclic Stuff	(21) The Cycle Category	(40) Measures and Integration
Cubical Stuff	(22) The Cube Category	Probability Theory
Globular Stuff	(23) The Globe Category	(40) Probability Theory
Cellular Stuff	(24) The Cell Category	Stochastic Analysis
Monoids	(25) Monoids	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
		(42) Itô Calculus
		(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
		Differential Geometry
		(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
		Schemes
		(45) Schemes

5.2. Other Chapters

Sets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
(1) Sets	
(2) Constructions With Sets	Monoids With Zero
(3) Pointed Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
(5) Relations	Groups
(6) Spans	(29) Groups
(7) Posets	(30) Constructions With Groups
Indexed and Fibred Sets	Hyper Algebra
(7) Indexed Sets	(31) Hypermonoids
(8) Fibred Sets	(32) Hypergroups
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
Category Theory	(34) Quantales
(11) Categories	Near-Rings
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(35) Near-Semirings
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	(36) Near-Rings
(14) Constructions With Categories	Real Analysis
(15) Profunctors	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
(17) Kan Extensions	Measure Theory
Bicategories	(39) Measurable Spaces
(18) Bicategories	(40) Measures and Integration
(19) Internal Adjunctions	Probability Theory
Internal Category Theory	(40) Probability Theory
(20) Internal Categories	Stochastic Analysis
Cyclic Stuff	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
(21) The Cycle Category	(42) Itô Calculus
Cubical Stuff	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
(22) The Cube Category	Differential Geometry
Globular Stuff	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
(23) The Globe Category	Schemes
Cellular Stuff	(45) Schemes
(24) The Cell Category	
Monoids	
(25) Monoids	

CHAPTER 6

Spans

00NS This chapter contains some material about spans. Notably, we discuss and explore:

- (1) The basic definitions around spans ([Section 6.1](#));
- (2) The relation between spans and functions ([Proposition 6.8.1.1.1](#));
- (3) The relation between spans and relations ([Propositions 6.8.2.2.1](#) and [6.8.3.1.1](#) and [Remark 6.8.5.1.1](#)).
- (4) “Hyperpointed sets” (??). I don’t know why I wrote this...

TODO:

- (1) https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/0022404994900094?ref=pdf_download&fr=RR-2&rr=834107b75c906aa4
- (2) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1605.08100>
- (3) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1603.08181>
- (4) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1601.02307>
- (5) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1507.01460>
- (6) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1506.08870>
- (7) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.00048>
- (8) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1501.07592>
- (9) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1501.04664>
- (10) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1501.00792>
- (11) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1412.6560>
- (12) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1412.0212>
- (13) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1409.0837>
- (14) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1408.5220>
- (15) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1308.6548>
- (16) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1304.0219>
- (17) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1210.8192>
- (18) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1210.1433>
- (19) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1201.3789>
- (20) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1112.0560>
- (21) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1109.1598>
- (22) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1101.4594>
- (23) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1012.6001>
- (24) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1011.3243>
- (25) <https://arxiv.org/abs/0910.2996>
- (26) <https://arxiv.org/abs/0810.2361>
- (27) <https://arxiv.org/abs/0803.2429>
- (28) <https://arxiv.org/abs/0712.2525>
- (29) <https://arxiv.org/abs/0706.1286>
- (30) <https://arxiv.org/abs/math/0611930>

-
- (31) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2311.15342>
 - (32) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2310.19428>
 - (33) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2309.08084>
 - (34) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2308.01662>
 - (35) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2301.11860>
 - (36) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2301.01199>
 - (37) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2212.09060>
 - (38) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2208.07183>
 - (39) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2205.06892>
 - (40) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2203.16179>
 - (41) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2201.09551>
 - (42) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2112.04599>
 - (43) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2111.10968>
 - (44) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2107.07621>
 - (45) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2106.14743>
 - (46) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2105.14654>
 - (47) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2102.08051>
 - (48) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2102.04386>
 - (49) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2101.06734>
 - (50) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2011.11042>
 - (51) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2010.15722>
 - (52) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2006.10375>
 - (53) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2006.10375>
 - (54) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2005.10496>
 - (55) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2003.11541>
 - (56) <https://arxiv.org/abs/2002.10334>
 - (57) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1909.00069>
 - (58) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1907.02695>
 - (59) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1905.06671>
 - (60) define a relational span
 - (61) consider giving Ran and Rift their dedicated sections on the relations chapter, perhaps together with the other sections on co/limits
 - (62) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1710.02742>
 - (63) <https://arxiv.org/search/math?searchtype=author&query=Walker,+Charles>
 - (64) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1706.09575>
 - (65) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1710.01465>
 - (66) fibred categories: <https://arxiv.org/abs/1806.02376>
 - (67) <https://arxiv.org/abs/1806.10477v2>
 - (68) double categorical limits in $\mathbf{Rel}^{\mathrm{dbl}}$
 - (69) double categorical limits in $\mathbf{Span}^{\mathrm{dbl}}$
 - (70) internal adjoint equivalences in \mathbf{Rel}
 - (71) internal adjoint equivalences in \mathbf{Span}
 - (72) 2-categorical limits in \mathbf{Rel} ;
 - (73) morphism of internal adjunctions in \mathbf{Rel} ;
 - (74) morphism of internal adjunctions in \mathbf{Span} ;
 - (75) morphism of co/monads in \mathbf{Span} ;
 - (76) What is $\mathrm{Adj}(\mathbf{Span}(A, B))$?
 - (77) monoids, comonoids, pseudomonoids, etc. in \mathbf{Span} .

- (78) write down the dumb intuition about spans inducing morphisms $\text{Sets}(S, A) \rightarrow \text{Sets}(S, B)$ instead of $\mathcal{P}(A) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$ from the similarity between

$$S \rightarrow A \times B$$

and

$$A \times B \rightarrow \{\text{t}, \text{f}\}.$$

This intuition is justified by taking $A = \text{pt}$ or $B = \text{pt}$.

- (79) What about using the direct image with compact support in $g(f^{-1}(a))$?
- (80) Monads in Span | develop this in the level of morphisms too
- (81) Comonads in Span are spans whose legs are equal | develop this in the level of morphisms too
- (82) Does Span have an internal **Hom**?
- (83) Examples of spans
- (84) Functional and total spans
- (85) closed symmetric monoidal category of spans
- (86) double category of relations
- (87) collage of a span
- (88) equivalence spans?
- (89) functoriality of powersets for spans
- (90) Is Span a closed bicategory?
- (91) skew monoidal structure on $\text{Span}(A, B)$
- (92) Adjunctions in Span
- (93) Isomorphisms in Span
- (94) Equivalences in Span
- (95) Interaction between the above notions in Span vs.in **Rel** via the comparison functors
- (96) $\text{Hom}_C(S, A) \times \text{Hom}_C(f^*(S), A)$.
- (97) Proof of non-existence of left Kan extensions/lifts in **Rel** (when do these exist btw?)
- (98) description of unitors and associators of span
- (99) add intuition for spans as relations with multiple witnesses:

- (a) Given a span $A \xleftarrow{f} S \xrightarrow{g} B$, we have a functor

$$\text{St}(S): (A \times B)_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$$

given by

$$\begin{aligned} [\text{St}(S)](a, b) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{St}(S)_{ab} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{s \in S \mid f(s) = a \text{ and } g(s) = b\}. \end{aligned}$$

- (b) Given a functor

$$S: (A \times B)_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets},$$

we have a map of sets

$$\text{Un}(S): \coprod_{(a,b) \in A \times B} S(a, b) \rightarrow A \times B,$$

determining a span from A to B .

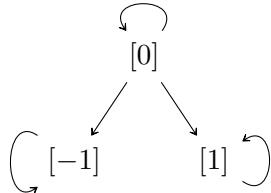
- (c) How do these interact with left/right Kan extensions/lifts?
- (d) Un/straightening for spans of categories: assignment $(a, b) \mapsto \text{Wits}_S(a, b)$.

(e) Fix the TODO below

6.1. Spans

6.1.1. The Walking Span.

00NV **Definition 6.1.1.1.1.** The **walking span** is the category Λ that looks like this:



6.1.2. Spans. Let A and B be sets.

00NX **Definition 6.1.2.1.1.** A **span from A to B** ¹ is a functor $F: \Lambda \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} F([-1]) &= A, \\ F([1]) &= B. \end{aligned}$$

00NY **Remark 6.1.2.1.2.** In detail, a **span from A to B** is a triple (S, f, g) consisting of^{2,3}

- *The Underlying Set.* A set S , called the **underlying set of (S, f, g)** ;
- *The Legs.* A pair of functions $f: S \rightarrow A$ and $g: S \rightarrow B$.

00NZ **Remark 6.1.2.1.3.** A span

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & S & \\ f \swarrow & & \searrow g \\ A & & B. \end{array}$$

from A to B may be thought of as a relation from A to B which can relate an element $a \in A$ to an element $b \in B$ in multiple ways via f and g , with the “set of witnesses of $a \sim_S b$ ” being given by

$$\text{Wit}_S(a, b) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{s \in S \mid a = f(s) \text{ and } g(s) = b\}.$$

This analogy is made precise by [Remark 6.8.5.1.1](#) and [Section 6.7](#).

6.1.3. Morphisms of Spans.

¹*Further Terminology:* Also called a **roof from A to B** or a **correspondence from A to B** .

²*Picture:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & S & \\ f \swarrow & & \searrow g \\ A & & B. \end{array}$$

³Every span (S, f, g) from A to B determines in particular a relation $R: A \nrightarrow B$ via

$$R \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(f(a), g(a)) \mid a \in A\},$$

i.e. where $R(a) = g(f^{-1}(a))$ for each $a \in A$; see [Proposition 6.8.2.2.1](#).

00P1 **Definition 6.1.3.1.1.** A **morphism of spans from** (R, f_1, g_1) **to** (S, f_2, g_2) ⁴ is a natural transformation $(R, f_1, g_1) \Rightarrow (S, f_2, g_2)$.

00P2 **Remark 6.1.3.1.2.** In detail, a **morphism of spans from** (R, f_1, g_1) **to** (S, f_2, g_2) is a function $\phi: R \rightarrow S$ making the diagram⁵

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & R & & S & \\ f_1 \swarrow & & \searrow \phi & & g_2 \swarrow \\ A & \xleftarrow{\quad} & B & \xrightarrow{\quad} & A \\ & \searrow & \swarrow f_2 & & \searrow \\ & & B & & \end{array}$$

commute.

6.1.4. Functional Spans. Let $\lambda = \left(A \xleftarrow{f} S \xrightarrow{g} B \right)$ be a span.

00P4 **Definition 6.1.4.1.1.** The span λ is **functional** if f the following equivalent conditions are satisfied:

- (1) The associated relation $g \circ f^{-1}$ of λ is functional.
 - (2) For each $s, t \in S$, if $f(s) = f(t)$, then $g(s) = g(t)$.
 - (3) this “ f -relative injectivity” condition is the same as being a monomorphism/monoid/whatever in nice category | maybe this is the same as being a skew monoid in $\text{Span}(A, B)$ or something?
- (1) a⁶

⁴Further Terminology: Also called a **morphism of roofs from** (R, f_1, g_1) **to** (S, f_2, g_2) or a **morphism of correspondences from** (R, f_1, g_1) **to** (S, f_2, g_2) .

⁵Alternative Picture:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & R & \\ f_1 \swarrow & \downarrow \phi & \searrow g_1 \\ A & & B \\ f_2 \swarrow & \downarrow & \searrow g_2 \\ S & & \end{array}$$

⁶Here we could perhaps also use the direct image with compact support $g_!$ of g (see ??) instead of the usual direct image, although the expression for $g_!(f^{-1}(a))$ seems a bit weird. It can also actually be given as a right Kan extension (?? of ??):

$$\begin{aligned} g_!(f^{-1}(a)) &= g_!(\{s \in S \mid f(s) = a\}) \\ &= \{b \in B \mid g^{-1}(b) \subset \{s \in S \mid f(s) = a\}\} \\ &= \{b \in B \mid \text{for each } s \in S, \text{ if } g(s) = b, \text{ then } f(s) = a\} \\ &= [\text{Ran}_g^\dagger(f)](a) \end{aligned}$$

as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Ran}_g^\dagger(f): A \nrightarrow B & & \\ f \downarrow & \nearrow g & \downarrow \text{Ran}_g(f) \\ S & & A \end{array}$$

00P5 Definition 6.1.4.1.2. The span λ is **total** if f is surjective.

Let $\lambda = (A \xleftarrow{f} S \xrightarrow{g} B)$ be a span. A morphism of spans from id_A to $\lambda \diamond \lambda^\dagger$ is a morphism

$$s: A \rightarrow S \times_B S$$

making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A & \\ id_A \swarrow & \downarrow s & \searrow id_A \\ A & & A \\ \swarrow f \circ \text{opr}'_1 & \downarrow & \searrow \swarrow f \circ \text{opr}'_2 \\ S \times_B S & & S \times_B S \end{array}$$

commute, where $S \times_B S$ is the pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S \times_B S & \longrightarrow & S \\ \downarrow \lrcorner & & \downarrow g \\ S & \xrightarrow{g} & B \end{array}$$

$$S \times_B S \cong \{(s, t) \in S \times S \mid g(s) = g(t)\}$$

of S with itself along g . In particular, $\text{opr}_1 \circ s$ and $\text{opr}_2 \circ s$ are both left-inverses/retractions for f , i.e. we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{opr}_1 \circ s) \circ f &\cong \text{id}_A, \\ (\text{opr}_2 \circ s) \circ f &\cong \text{id}_A. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, by ?? of ??, f is injective if $A \neq \emptyset$.

6.1.5. Total Spans.

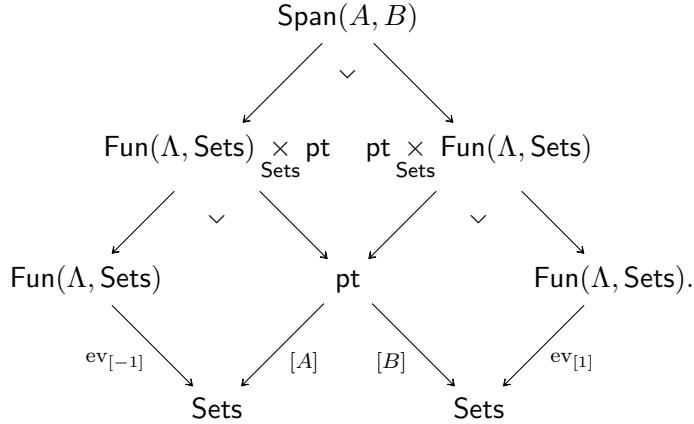
6.2. Categories of Spans

6.2.1. The Category of Spans Between Two Sets. Let A and B be sets.

00P9 Definition 6.2.1.1.1. The **category of spans from A to B** is the category $\text{Span}(A, B)$ defined by

$$\text{Span}(A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Fun}(\Lambda, \text{Sets}) \underset{\text{ev}_{[-1]}, \text{Sets}, [A]}{\times} \text{pt} \underset{[B], \text{Sets}, \text{ev}_{[1]}}{\times} \text{Fun}(\Lambda, \text{Sets}),$$

as in the diagram



00PA Remark 6.2.1.1.2. In detail, the **category of spans from A to B** is the category $\text{Span}(A, B)$ where

- *Objects.* The objects of $\text{Span}(A, B)$ are spans from A to B ;
- *Morphisms.* The morphisms of $\text{Span}(A, B)$ are morphisms of spans;
- *Identities.* The unit map

$$\mathbb{W}_{(S,f,g)}^{\text{Span}(A,B)} : \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Span}(A,B)}((S,f,g), (S,f,g))$$

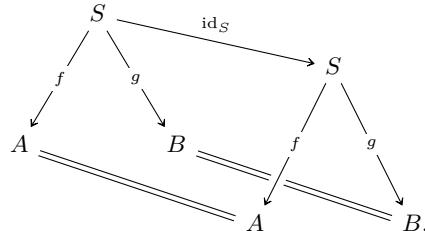
of $\text{Span}(A, B)$ at (S, f, g) is defined by⁷

$$\text{id}_{(S,f,g)}^{\text{Span}(A,B)} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_S;$$

- *Composition.* The composition map

$$\circ_{R,S,T}^{\text{Span}(A,B)} : \text{Hom}_{\text{Span}(A,B)}(S, T) \times \text{Hom}_{\text{Span}(A,B)}(R, S) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Span}(A,B)}(R, T)$$

⁷Picture:



of $\text{Span}(A, B)$ at $((R, f_1, g_1), (S, f_2, g_2), (T, f_3, g_3))$ is defined by⁸

$$\psi \circ_{R,S,T}^{\text{Span}(A,B)} \phi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi \circ \phi.$$

00PB Proposition 6.2.1.1.3. Let A and B be sets.

00PC (1) *As a Pullback.* We have an isomorphism of categories

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Span}(A, B) & \longrightarrow & \text{Sets}_{/B} \\ \downarrow & \dashv & \downarrow \text{忘} \\ \text{Span}(A, B) \cong \text{Sets}_{/A} \times_{\text{Sets}} \text{Sets}_{/B}, & & \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{忘} \\ \text{Sets}_{/A} & \xrightarrow{\text{忘}} & \text{Sets}. \end{array}$$

Proof. *Item 1, As a Pullback:* In detail, the pullback $\text{Sets}_{/A} \times_{\text{Sets}} \text{Sets}_{/B}$ is the category where

- *Objects.* The objects of $\text{Sets}_{/A} \times_{\text{Sets}} \text{Sets}_{/B}$ consist of pairs $((S, f), (S', g))$ of objects of Sets consisting of
 - A pair (S, f) in $\text{Obj}(\text{Sets}_{/A})$ consisting of a set S and a map $f: S \rightarrow A$;
 - A pair (S', g) in $\text{Obj}(\text{Sets}_{/B})$ consisting of a set S' and a map $g: S' \rightarrow B$;
such that

$$\underbrace{\text{忘}(S, f)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S} = \underbrace{\text{忘}(S', g)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S'}.$$

Thus the objects of $\text{Sets}_{/A} \times_{\text{Sets}} \text{Sets}_{/B}$ are the same as spans from A to B .

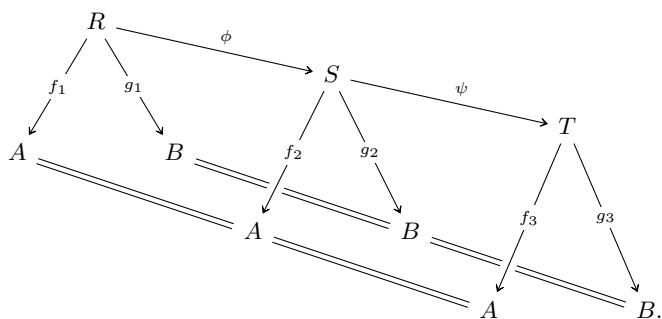
- *Morphisms.* A morphism of $\text{Sets}_{/A} \times_{\text{Sets}} \text{Sets}_{/B}$ from (S, f, g) to (S', f', g') consists of a pair of morphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \phi: S &\rightarrow S' \\ \psi: S &\rightarrow S' \end{aligned}$$

such that the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S & \xrightarrow{\phi} & S' \\ f \searrow & & \swarrow f' \\ A & & B \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} S & \xrightarrow{\psi} & S' \\ g \searrow & & \swarrow g' \\ B & & A \end{array}$$

⁸Picture:



such that

$$\underbrace{\mathfrak{f}(\phi)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \phi} = \underbrace{\mathfrak{f}(\psi)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi}.$$

Thus the morphisms of $\mathbf{Sets}_{/A} \times_{\mathbf{Sets}} \mathbf{Sets}_{/B}$ are also the same as morphisms of spans from (S, f, g) to (S, f', g') .

- *Identities and Composition.* The identities and composition of $\mathbf{Sets}_{/A} \times_{\mathbf{Sets}} \mathbf{Sets}_{/B}$ are also the same as those in $\mathbf{Span}(A, B)$.

This finishes the proof. \square

6.2.2. The Bicategory of Spans.

00PE **Definition 6.2.2.1.1.** The **bicategory of spans** is the bicategory \mathbf{Span} where

- *Objects.* The objects of \mathbf{Span} are sets;
- *Hom-Categories.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Span})$, we have

$$\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{Span}}(A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbf{Span}(A, B);$$

- *Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Span})$, the unit functor

$$\mathbb{W}_A^{\mathbf{Span}} : \text{pt} \rightarrow \mathbf{Span}(A, A)$$

of \mathbf{Span} at A is the functor picking the span $(A, \text{id}_A, \text{id}_A)$:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A & \\ \text{id}_A \swarrow & & \searrow \text{id}_A \\ A & & A. \end{array}$$

- *Composition.* For each $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Span})$, the composition bifunctor

$$\circ_{A, B, C}^{\mathbf{Span}} : \mathbf{Span}(B, C) \times \mathbf{Span}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Span}(A, C)$$

of \mathbf{Span} at (A, B, C) is the bifunctor where

- *Action on Objects.* The composition of two spans

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R & & S \\ f_1 \swarrow & \searrow g_1 & \quad \quad \quad f_2 \swarrow & \searrow g_2 \\ A & & B & & C \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} & & \\ & & \end{array}$$

is the span $(R \times_B S, f_1 \circ \text{pr}_1, g_2 \circ \text{pr}_2)$, constructed as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & R \times_B S & & & \\ & \swarrow f_1 \circ \text{pr}_1 & \downarrow \text{pr}_1 & \searrow \text{pr}_2 & \\ R & & S & & \\ \swarrow f_1 & \downarrow g_1 & \swarrow f_2 & \downarrow g_2 & \searrow g_2 \circ \text{pr}_2 \\ A & & B & & C \end{array}$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* The horizontal composition of 2-morphisms is defined via functoriality of pullbacks: given morphisms of spans

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & R & \\ f \swarrow & \downarrow \phi & \searrow g \\ A & & B \\ \uparrow f' & \downarrow g' & \uparrow h' \\ R' & & S' \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} & S & \\ h \swarrow & \downarrow \psi & \searrow k \\ B & & C \\ \uparrow h' & \downarrow k' & \uparrow \\ S' & & \end{array}$$

their horizontal composition is the morphism of spans

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & R \times_B S & \\ f \circ \text{opr}_1 \swarrow & \downarrow \exists! & \searrow k \circ \text{opr}_2 \\ A & & C \\ \uparrow h' \circ \text{opr}'_1 & \downarrow & \uparrow k' \circ \text{opr}'_2 \\ R' \times_B S' & & \end{array}$$

constructed as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & R \times_B S & & & \\ & \swarrow f \circ \text{opr}_1 & \downarrow \text{pr}_1 & \searrow \text{pr}_2 & \swarrow k \circ \text{opr}_2 \\ & R & & S & \\ & \swarrow f & \downarrow g & \swarrow h & \searrow k \\ A & & B & & C \\ \uparrow f' & \uparrow g' & \uparrow h' & \uparrow k' & \uparrow \\ R' & & S' & & \end{array}$$

- *Associators and Unitors.* The associator and unitors are defined using the universal property of the pullback.

6.2.3. The Monoidal Bicategory of Spans.

6.2.4. The Double Category of Spans.

00PH **Definition 6.2.4.1.1.** The **double category of spans** is the double category Span^{dbl} where

- *Objects.* The objects of Span^{dbl} are sets;
- *Vertical Morphisms.* The vertical morphisms of Span^{dbl} are functions $f: A \rightarrow B$;
- *Horizontal Morphisms.* The horizontal morphisms of Span^{dbl} are spans $(S, \phi, \psi): A \dashv X$;
- *2-Morphisms.* A 2-cell

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & (R, \phi_R, \psi_R) & \\ A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & B \\ f \downarrow & \Downarrow \alpha & \downarrow g \\ X & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Y \\ & (S, \phi_S, \psi_S) & \end{array}$$

of Span^{dbl} is a morphism of spans from the span

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & R & & & \\ & \swarrow \phi_R & & \searrow \psi_R & \\ A & & B & & Y \\ & \searrow & \downarrow g & & \end{array}$$

to the span

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & A \times_X S & & & \\ & \swarrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\ & A & & S & \\ & \swarrow f & \searrow f & \swarrow \phi_S & \searrow \psi_S \\ X & & X & & Y; \end{array}$$

- *Horizontal Identities.* The horizontal unit functor

$$\mathbb{1}^{\text{Span}^{\text{dbl}}} : (\text{Span}^{\text{dbl}})_0 \rightarrow (\text{Span}^{\text{dbl}})_1$$

of Span^{dbl} is the functor where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}((\text{Span}^{\text{dbl}})_0)$, we have

$$\mathbb{1}_A \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (A, \text{id}_A, \text{id}_A),$$

as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A & \\ & \swarrow \text{id}_A & \searrow \text{id}_A \\ A & & A; \end{array}$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each vertical morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ of Span^{dbl} , i.e. each map of sets f from A to B , the identity

2-morphism

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{\quad \not\perp_A \quad} & A \\ f \downarrow & \parallel & \downarrow f \\ B & \xrightarrow{\quad \not\perp_f \quad} & B \\ & & \not\perp_B \end{array}$$

of f is the morphism of spans from

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A & \\ & \swarrow \text{id}_A & \searrow \text{id}_A \\ A & & A \\ & \searrow f & \end{array}$$

to

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & A \times_B B & & \\ & \swarrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\ & A & & B & \\ f \swarrow & \text{id}_B \parallel & \searrow & \text{id}_B \parallel & \\ B & & B & & B \end{array}$$

given by the isomorphism $A \xrightarrow{\cong} A \times_B B$;

- *Vertical Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Span}^{\text{dbl}})$, we have

$$\text{id}_A^{\text{Span}^{\text{dbl}}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_A;$$

- *Identity 2-Morphisms.* For each horizontal morphism $R: A \dashv B$ of Span^{dbl} , the identity 2-morphism

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{\quad S \quad} & B \\ \text{id}_A \downarrow & \parallel & \downarrow \text{id}_B \\ A & \xrightarrow{\quad S \quad} & B \end{array}$$

of R is the morphism of spans from

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & S & \\ \phi_S \swarrow & \downarrow \psi_S & \text{id}_B \parallel \\ A & & B \\ & & \searrow \end{array}$$

to

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & A \times_A S & & \\
 & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\
 id_A & \parallel & A & \parallel & S \\
 & \swarrow & & \downarrow \phi_S & \searrow \psi_S \\
 A & & A & & B
 \end{array}$$

given by the isomorphism $S \xrightarrow{\cong} A \times_A S$;

- *Horizontal Composition.* The horizontal composition functor

$$\odot^{\text{Span}^{\text{dbl}}} : (\text{Span}^{\text{dbl}})_1 \times_{(\text{Span}^{\text{dbl}})_0} (\text{Span}^{\text{dbl}})_1 \rightarrow (\text{Span}^{\text{dbl}})_1$$

of Span^{dbl} is the functor where

- *Action on Objects.* For each composable pair

$$A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C$$

of horizontal morphisms of Span^{dbl} , we have

$$(S, \phi_S, \psi_S) \odot (R, \phi_R, \psi_R) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S \circ_{A, B, C}^{\text{Span}} R,$$

where $S \circ_{A, B, C}^{\text{Span}} R$ is the composition of (R, ϕ_R, ψ_R) and (S, ϕ_S, ψ_S) defined as in [Definition 6.2.2.1.1](#);

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each horizontally composable pair

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{(R, \phi_R, \psi_R)} & B \\
 f \downarrow & \parallel \alpha & \downarrow g \\
 X & \xrightarrow{(T, \phi_T, \psi_T)} & Y
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{(S, \phi_S, \psi_S)} & C \\
 g \downarrow & \parallel \beta & \downarrow h \\
 Y & \xrightarrow{(U, \phi_U, \psi_U)} & Z
 \end{array}$$

of 2-morphisms of Span^{dbl} ,

- *Vertical Composition of 1-Morphisms.* For each composable pair $A \xrightarrow{F} B \xrightarrow{G} C$ of vertical morphisms of Span^{dbl} , i.e. maps of sets, we have

$$g \circ^{\text{Span}^{\text{dbl}}} f \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} g \circ f;$$

- *Vertical Composition of 2-Morphisms.* For each vertically composable pair

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{(R, \phi_R, \psi_R)} & X \\
 f \downarrow & \parallel \alpha & \downarrow g \\
 B & \xrightarrow{(S, \phi_S, \psi_S)} & Y
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{(S, \phi_S, \psi_S)} & Y \\
 h \downarrow & \parallel \beta & \downarrow k \\
 C & \xrightarrow{(T, \phi_T, \psi_T)} & Z
 \end{array}$$

of 2-morphisms of Span^{dbl} ,

- *Associators and Unitors.* The associator and unitors of Span^{dbl} are defined using the universal property of the pullback.

6.2.5. Properties of The Bicategory of Spans.

00PK Proposition 6.2.5.1.1. Let $\lambda = (A \xleftarrow{f} S \xrightarrow{g} B)$ be a span.

00PL (1) *Self-Duality.*

00PM (2) *Isomorphisms in Span.*

00PN (3) *Equivalences in Span.*

00PP (4) *Adjunctions in Span.* Let A and B be sets.⁹

00PQ (a) We have a natural bijection

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{Adjunctions in Span} \\ \text{from } A \text{ to } B \end{array} \right\} \cong \left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{Spans } A \xleftarrow{f} S \xrightarrow{g} B \\ \text{from } A \text{ to } B \text{ with} \\ f \text{ an isomorphism} \end{array} \right\}.$$

00PR (b) We have an equivalence of categories

$$\text{MapSpan}(A, B) \xrightarrow{\text{eq.}} \text{Sets}(A, B)_{\text{disc}},$$

where $\text{MapSpan}(A, B)$ is the full subcategory of $\text{Span}(A, B)$ spanned by the spans $A \xleftarrow{f} S \xrightarrow{g} B$ from A to B with f an isomorphism.

00PS (c) We have a biequivalence of bicategories

$$\text{MapSpan} \xrightarrow{\text{eq.}} \text{Sets}_{\text{bidisc}},$$

where MapSpan is the sub-bicategory of Span whose Hom-categories are given by $\text{MapSpan}(A, B)$.

00PT (5) *Monads in Span.*

00PU (6) *Comonads in Span.*

00PV (7) *Monomorphisms in Span.*

00PW (8) *Epimorphisms in Span.*

00PX (9) *Existence of Right Kan Extensions.*

00PY (10) *Existence of Right Kan Lifts.*

00PZ (11) *Closedness.*

Proof. *Item 1, Self-Duality:*

Item 2, Isomorphisms in Span:

Item 3, Equivalences in Span:

Item 4, Adjunctions in Span: We first prove **Item 4a.**

We proceed step by step:

- (1) *From Adjunctions in Span to Functions.* An adjunction in Span from A to B consists of a pair of spans

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & R & \\ f \swarrow & & \searrow g \\ A & & B \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} & S' & \\ h \swarrow & & \searrow k \\ B & & A \end{array}$$

⁹In the literature (e.g. [ref]),...are called maps and denoted by $\text{MapSpan}(A, B)$

together with maps

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} A \\ \text{id}_A \diagup \diagdown \quad \text{id}_A \\ \phi \quad | \\ \text{fopr}'_1 \swarrow \searrow \quad \text{kopr}'_2 \\ S \times_B S' \end{array} & \text{and} & \begin{array}{c} S' \times_A S \\ h\text{opr}_1 \swarrow \quad \searrow g\text{opr}_2 \\ \psi \quad | \\ \text{id}_B \quad \quad \quad \text{id}_B \\ B \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

We claim that these conditions

- (2) *From Functions to Adjunctions in **Rel**.*
- (3) *Invertibility: From Functions to Adjunctions Back to Functions.*
- (4) *Invertibility: From Adjunctions to Functions Back to Adjunctions.*

We now proceed to the proof of **Item 4b**. For this, we will construct a functor

$$F: \text{Sets}(A, B)_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{MapSpan}(A, B)$$

and prove it to be essentially surjective and fully faithful, and thus an equivalence by ?? of ?. Indeed, given a map $f: A \rightarrow B$, let $F(f)$ be the representable span associated to f of [Definition 6.5.1.1.1](#), and let F send the unique (identity) morphism from f to itself to the identity morphism of $F(f)$ in $\text{MapSpan}(A, B)$. We now prove that F is fully faithful and essentially surjective:

- (1) *F Is Fully Faithful:* Given maps $f, g: A \rightrightarrows B$, we need to show that

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{MapSpan}(A, B)}(F(f), F(g)) = \begin{cases} \text{pt} & \text{if } f = g, \\ \emptyset & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Indeed, a morphism from $F(f)$ to $F(g)$ takes the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} A \\ \text{id}_A \diagup \diagdown \quad f \\ \phi \quad | \\ \text{id}_A \quad \quad \quad g \\ A \end{array} & &
 \end{array}$$

From the relations $\text{id}_A = \text{id}_A \circ \phi$ and $f = g \circ \phi$, we see that $\phi = \text{id}_A$, and thus from the relation $f = g \circ \phi$ there is such a morphism iff $f = g$.

- (2) *F Is Essentially Surjective:* Let λ be a span of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} S \\ \phi \swarrow \quad \searrow f \\ A \quad \quad \quad B. \end{array} & &
 \end{array}$$

we claim that $\lambda \cong F(f \circ \phi^{-1})$. Indeed, we have morphisms

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S & & A \\ \phi \swarrow \quad \downarrow f & & \parallel \quad \searrow f \circ \phi^{-1} \\ A & B & \text{and} & A & B, \\ \parallel \quad \downarrow \phi & \nearrow f \circ \phi^{-1} & & \parallel \quad \downarrow \phi^{-1} & \nearrow f \\ A & & & S & \end{array}$$

inverse to each other in $\text{MapSpan}(A, B)$, and thus $\lambda \cong F(f \circ \phi^{-1})$.

Finally, we prove [Item 4c](#).

[Item 5](#), *Monads in Span*:

[Item 6](#), *Comonads in Span*:

[Item 7](#), *Monomorphisms in Span*:

[Item 8](#), *Epimorphisms in Span*:

[Item 9](#), *Existence of Right Kan Extensions*:

[Item 10](#), *Existence of Right Kan Lifts*:

[Item 11](#), *Closedness*:

□

6.3. Limits of Spans

6.3.1. tmp2.

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Rel}(A, X)}(\text{Lan}_S(R), T) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Rel}(B, X)}(R, T \diamond S)$$

- (1) $\text{Lan}_S(R) \subset T$, i.e. if $a \sim_{\text{Lan}_S(R)} x$, then $a \sim_T x$.
- (2) $R \subset T \diamond S$, i.e. if $b \sim_R x$, then there exists some $a \in A$ such that $a \sim_S b$ and $b \sim_T x$.

6.3.2. tmp.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S & & \\ f \swarrow \quad \searrow g & & \\ A & & B \\ \phi_{S'} \swarrow \quad \searrow \psi_{S'} & \mapsto & f \circ \text{opr}_1 \swarrow \quad \searrow \psi_{S' \circ \text{opr}_2} \\ B & X & A & X \\ \phi_{S''} \swarrow \quad \searrow \psi_{S''} & \mapsto & ? \swarrow \quad \searrow ? \\ A & X & B & X \end{array}$$

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Span}(A, X)}(S \times_B S', K) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Span}(B, X)}(S', R(K))$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S \times_B S' & & S' \\ f \circ \text{opr}_1 \swarrow \quad \downarrow \xi \quad \searrow \psi_{S' \circ \text{opr}_2} & & \phi_{S'} \swarrow \quad \downarrow \xi^\dagger \quad \searrow \psi_{S'} \\ A & X & B \\ \phi_{S''} \swarrow \quad \uparrow \quad \nearrow \psi_{S''} & & ? \swarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \nearrow ? \\ S'' & & \Pi_g(S'') \end{array}$$

6.3.3. Left Kan Extensions. Let $\lambda = \left(A \xleftarrow{f} S \xrightarrow{g} B \right)$ be a span.

00Q2 **Proposition 6.3.3.1.1.** The left Kan extension

$$\text{Lan}_\lambda: \text{Span}(A, X) \rightarrow \text{Span}(B, X)$$

along λ in Span exists and is the functor given on objects by sending a span λ' in $\text{Span}(A, X)$ as in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & S' & \\ \phi \swarrow & & \searrow \psi \\ A & & X \end{array}$$

to the span

$$\text{Lan}_\lambda(\lambda') \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\text{Lan}_\lambda(S'), \text{Lan}_\lambda(\phi), \text{Lan}_\lambda(\psi)),$$

in $\text{Span}(B, X)$ where

- The set $\text{Lan}_\lambda(S')$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Lan}_\lambda(S') &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Sigma_g(S') \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S' \end{aligned}$$

where $\Sigma_g(S')$ is the dependent sum of $\phi: S' \rightarrow A$ along g of ??;

- The map $\text{Lan}_\lambda(\phi): \text{Lan}_\lambda(S') \rightarrow B$ is given by $\Sigma_g(\phi)$;
- The map $\text{Lan}_\lambda(\psi): \text{Lan}_\lambda(S') \rightarrow X$ is given by ψ .

Proof.

□

6.3.4. Right Kan Extensions. Let $\lambda = \left(A \xleftarrow{f} S \xrightarrow{g} B \right)$ be a span.

00Q4 **Proposition 6.3.4.1.1.** The right Kan extension

$$\text{Ran}_\lambda: \text{Span}(A, X) \rightarrow \text{Span}(B, X)$$

along λ in Span exists and is the functor given on objects by sending a span λ' in $\text{Span}(A, X)$ as in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & S' & \\ \phi_{S'} \swarrow & & \searrow \psi_{S'} \\ A & & X \end{array}$$

to the span

$$\text{Ran}_\lambda(\lambda') \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\text{Ran}_\lambda(S'), \text{Ran}_\lambda(\phi_{S'}), \text{Ran}_\lambda(\psi_{S'})),$$

in $\text{Span}(B, X)$ where

- The set $\text{Ran}_\lambda(S')$ is given by

$$\text{Ran}_\lambda(S') \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{b \in B} \prod_{s \in g^{-1}(b)} \phi_{S'}^{-1}(f(s));$$

- The map $\text{Ran}_\lambda(\phi_{S'}): \text{Ran}_\lambda(S') \rightarrow B$ is given by

$$[\text{Ran}_\lambda(\phi_{S'})](b, (s'_s)_{s \in g^{-1}(b)}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} b;$$

for each $(b, (s'_s)_{s \in g^{-1}(b)}) \in \text{Ran}_\lambda(S')$;

- The map $\text{Ran}_\lambda(\psi_{S'}): \text{Ran}_\lambda(S') \rightarrow X$ is given by

$$[\text{Ran}_\lambda(\psi_{S'})](b, (s'_s)_{s \in g^{-1}(b)}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi_{S'}(s'_i)$$

for each $(b, (s'_s)_{s \in g^{-1}(b)}) \in \text{Ran}_\lambda(S')$, where the i in s'_i denotes any $s \in g^{-1}(b)$, as we have $\psi_{S'}(s'_i) = \psi_{S'}(s'_j)$ for all $s \in g^{-1}(b)$.¹⁰

Proof.

□

6.3.5. Right Kan Lifts. (Although right Kan lifts aren't really limits, this is probably the most appropriate to place this section.)

Let $\lambda = (A \xleftarrow{f} S \xrightarrow{g} B)$ be a span.

00Q6 **Proposition 6.3.5.1.1.** The right Kan lift

$$\text{Rift}_\lambda: \text{Span}(X, B) \rightarrow \text{Span}(X, A)$$

along λ in Span exists and is the functor given on objects by sending a span λ' in $\text{Span}(X, B)$ as in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & S' & \\ \phi \swarrow & & \searrow \psi \\ X & & B \end{array}$$

to the span

$$\text{Rift}_\lambda(\lambda') \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\text{Rift}_\lambda(S'), \text{Rift}_\lambda(\phi), \text{Rift}_\lambda(\psi)),$$

in $\text{Span}(X, A)$ where

- The set $\text{Rift}_\lambda(S')$ is given by

$$\text{Rift}_\lambda(S') \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Pi_f(S'),$$

where $\Pi_f(S')$ is the dependent product of $\psi: S' \rightarrow A$ along f of ??;

- The map $\text{Rift}_\lambda(\phi): \text{Rift}_\lambda(S') \rightarrow X$ is given by ϕ ;
- The map $\text{Rift}_\lambda(\psi): \text{Rift}_\lambda(S') \rightarrow A$ is given by $\Pi_f(\psi)$.

Proof.

□

6.4. Colimits of Spans

6.5. Constructions With Spans

6.5.1. Representable Spans.

00QA **Definition 6.5.1.1.1.** Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function.

- The **representable span associated to f** is the span

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A & \\ \text{id}_A \nearrow & & \searrow f \\ A & & B \end{array}$$

from A to B .

¹⁰Indeed

- The **corepresentable span associated to f** is the span

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A & \\ f \swarrow & & \searrow \text{id}_A \\ B & & A \end{array}$$

from B to A .

6.5.2. Composition of Spans.

00QC **Definition 6.5.2.1.1.** The **composition** of two spans

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R & & S \\ f_1 \swarrow \quad \searrow g_1 & & f_2 \swarrow \quad \searrow g_2 \\ A & B & \\ & & B & C \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} & S & \\ & f_2 \swarrow \quad \searrow g_2 & \\ B & & C \end{array}$$

is the span $(R \times_B S, f_1 \circ \text{pr}_1, g_2 \circ \text{pr}_2)$, constructed as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & R \times_B S & & \\ & \nearrow f_1 \circ \text{pr}_1 & \downarrow \text{pr}_1 \vee \text{pr}_2 & \searrow g_2 \circ \text{pr}_2 & \\ R & & S & & \\ \downarrow f_1 & \quad \downarrow \text{pr}_1 & \downarrow \text{pr}_2 & \quad \downarrow g_2 & \downarrow \\ A & B & & & C. \end{array}$$

6.5.3. Horizontal Composition of Morphisms of Spans.

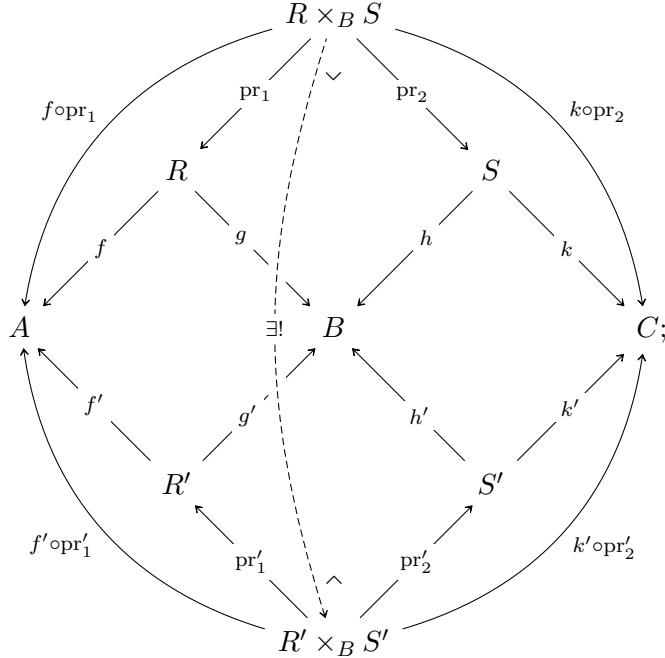
00QE **Definition 6.5.3.1.1.** The **horizontal composition** of a pair of 2-morphisms of spans

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R & & S \\ f \swarrow \quad \searrow g & & h \swarrow \quad \searrow k \\ A & B & \\ \downarrow \phi & & \downarrow \psi \\ R' & & S' \\ \uparrow f' \quad \swarrow g' & & \uparrow h' \quad \swarrow k' \\ & & & & C, \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} & S & \\ & h \swarrow \quad \searrow k & \\ B & & C, \\ \downarrow h' & \downarrow \psi & \downarrow k' \\ S' & & \end{array}$$

is the morphism of spans

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & R \times_B S & \\ f \circ \text{pr}_1 \swarrow \quad \searrow k \circ \text{pr}_2 & & \\ A & & C, \\ \downarrow \exists! & & \\ R' \times_B S' & & \end{array}$$

constructed as in the diagram



6.5.4. Properties of Composition of Spans.

00QG Proposition 6.5.4.1.1. Let $\lambda = (A \xleftarrow{f} S \xrightarrow{g} B)$ be a span.

00QH (1) Functoriality.

Proof.

□

6.5.5. The Inverse of a Span.

6.6. Functoriality of Spans

6.6.1. Direct Images.

6.6.2. Functoriality of Spans on Powersets.

6.7. Un/Straightening for Spans

6.7.1. Straightening for Spans. Let A and B be sets and let (S, f, g) be a span from A to B .

00QQ Definition 6.7.1.1.1. The **straightening** of (S, f, g) is the $(A \times B)$ -indexed set

$$\text{St}_{A,B}(S): (A \times B)_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$$

defined as the straightening of S , viewed as an $(A \times B)$ -fibred set, as in ??.

00QR Remark 6.7.1.1.2. In detail, $\text{St}_{A,B}(S)$ is the $(A \times B)$ -indexed set defined by¹¹

$$\begin{aligned} [\text{St}_{A,B}(S)](a,b) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Wit}_S(a,b) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S_{ab} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{s \in S \mid f(s) = a \text{ and } g(s) = b\}. \end{aligned}$$

00QS Proposition 6.7.1.1.3. Let A and B be sets and let (S, f, g) be a span.

00QT (1) Functoriality. The assignment $(S, f, g) \mapsto \text{St}_{A,B}(S)$ defines a functor

$$\text{St}_{A,B}: \text{Span}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{ISets}(A \times B)$$

- *Action on Objects.* For each $(S, f, g) \in \text{Obj}(\text{Span}(A, B))$, we have

$$[\text{St}_{A,B}](S, f, g) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{St}_{A,B}(S);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $(S_1, f_1, g_1), (S_2, f_2, g_2) \in \text{Obj}(\text{Span}(A, B))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\text{St}_{A,B|S_1, S_2}: \text{Hom}_{\text{Span}(A, B)}(S_1, S_2) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(A \times B)}(\text{St}_{A,B}(S_1), \text{St}_{A,B}(S_2))$$

of $\text{St}_{A,B}$ at (S_1, S_2) is given by sending a morphism

$$\phi: (S_1, f_1, g_1) \rightarrow (S_2, f_2, g_2)$$

of spans from A to B to the morphism

$$\text{St}_{A,B}(\phi): \text{St}_{A,B}(S_1) \rightarrow \text{St}_{A,B}(S_2)$$

of $(A \times B)$ -indexed sets defined by

$$\text{St}_{A,B}(\phi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\phi_{ab}^*\}_{(a,b) \in A \times B},$$

where ϕ_{ab}^* is the transport map associated to ϕ at $(a, b) \in A \times B$ of ??.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* This is the special case of ?? of ?? where $K = A \times B$. \square

6.7.2. Unstraightening for Spans. Let A and B be sets and let $S: (A \times B)_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be an $(A \times B)$ -indexed set.

00QV Definition 6.7.2.1.1. The **unstraightening** of S is the span

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \text{Un}_{A,B}(S) & \\ f_{\text{Un}_{A,B}(S)} \swarrow & & \searrow g_{\text{Un}_{A,B}(S)} \\ A & & B \end{array}$$

from A to B where

$$\text{Un}_{A,B}(S) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{(a,b) \in A \times B} S(a, b)$$

¹¹Here we may think of $\text{Wit}_S(a, b)$ as the “set of witnesses in S that $a \sim b$ holds”; see **Remark 6.1.2.1.3.**

and where the maps $f_{\text{Un}_{A,B}(S)}$ and $g_{\text{Un}_{A,B}(S)}$ are given by

$$\begin{aligned} f_{\text{Un}_{A,B}(S)}((a, b), s) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} a, \\ g_{\text{Un}_{A,B}(S)}((a, b), s) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} b \end{aligned}$$

for each $((a, b), s) \in \text{Un}_{A,B}(S)$.

00QW Proposition 6.7.2.1.2. Let A and B be sets.

00QX (1) Functoriality. The assignment $S \mapsto \text{Un}_{A,B}(S)$ defines a functor

$$\text{Un}_{A,B}: \mathbf{ISets}(A \times B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Span}(A, B)$$

- *Action on Objects.* For each $S \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{ISets}(A \times B))$, we have

$$[\text{Un}_{A,B}](S) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Un}_{A,B}(S);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $S, S' \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{ISets}(A \times B))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\text{Un}_{A,B|S,S'}: \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{ISets}(A \times B)}(S, S') \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Span}(A, B)}(\text{Un}_{A,B}(S), \text{Un}_{A,B}(S'))$$

of $\text{Un}_{A,B}$ at (S, S') is defined by

$$\text{Un}_{A,B|S,S'}(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{(a,b) \in A \times B} f_{ab}.$$

00QY (2) Interaction With Fibres. Viewing the legs of $\text{Un}_{A,B}(S)$ as a morphism $(f, g): \text{Un}_{A,B}(S) \rightarrow A \times B$, we have a bijection of sets

$$(f, g)^{-1}_{\text{Un}_{A,B}(S)}(a, b) \cong S(a, b)$$

for each $(a, b) \in A \times B$.

00QZ (3) As a Pullback. We have a bijection of sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Un}_{A,B}(S) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Sets}_* \\ \text{Un}_{A,B}(S) \cong (A \times B)_{\text{disc}} \times_{\mathbf{Sets}} \mathbf{Sets}_*, & \downarrow & \downarrow \circlearrowleft \\ (A \times B)_{\text{disc}} & \xrightarrow[S]{} & \mathbf{Sets}. \end{array}$$

00R0 (4) As a Colimit. We have a bijection of sets

$$\text{Un}_{A,B}(S) \cong \text{colim}(S).$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* This is the special case of ?? of ?? where $K = A \times B$.

Item 2, Interaction With Fibres: This is the special case of ?? of ?? where $K = A \times B$.

Item 3, As a Pullback: This is the special case of ?? of ?? where $K = A \times B$.

Item 4, As a Colimit: This is the special case of ?? of ?? where $K = A \times B$. \square

6.7.3. The Un/Straightening Equivalence for Spans.

00R2 Theorem 6.7.3.1.1. We have an isomorphism of categories

$$(\text{St}_{A,B} \dashv \text{Un}_{A,B}): \mathbf{Span}(A, B) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\text{St}_{A,B}} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\text{Un}_{A,B}} \end{array} \mathbf{ISets}(A \times B).$$

Proof. This is the special case of ?? where $K = A \times B$. \square

6.8. Comparison of Spans to Functions and Relations

6.8.1. Comparison to Functions.

00R5 Proposition 6.8.1.1.1. We have a pseudofunctor

$$\iota: \mathbf{Sets}_{\text{bidisc}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Span}$$

from $\mathbf{Sets}_{\text{bidisc}}$ to \mathbf{Span} where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets}_{\text{bidisc}})$, we have

$$\iota(A) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A;$$

- *Action on Hom-Categories.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets}_{\text{bidisc}})$, the action on Hom-categories

$$\iota_{A,B}: \mathbf{Sets}(A, B)_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Span}(A, B)$$

of ι at (A, B) is the functor defined on objects by sending a function $f: A \rightarrow B$ to the span

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A & \\ id_A \swarrow & \parallel & \searrow f \\ A & & B \end{array}$$

from A to B .

- *Strict Unity Constraints.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets}_{\text{bidisc}})$, the strict unity constraint

$$\iota_A^0: id_{\iota(A)} \Rightarrow \iota(id_A)$$

of ι at A is given by the identity morphism of spans

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A & \\ id_A \swarrow & \parallel & \searrow id_A \\ A & id & A, \\ id_A \swarrow & \parallel & \searrow id_A \\ A & & A \end{array}$$

as indeed $id_{\iota(A)} = \iota(id_A)$;

- *Pseudofunctionality Constraints.* For each $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Sets}_{\text{bidisc}})$, each $f \in \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{Sets}_{\text{bidisc}}}(A, B)$, and each $g \in \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{Sets}_{\text{bidisc}}}(B, C)$, the pseudofunctionality constraint

$$\iota_{g,f}^2: \iota(g) \circ \iota(f) \Rightarrow \iota(g \circ f)$$

of ι at (f, g) is the morphism of spans from the span

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & A \times_B B & & \\ & \swarrow id_{A \times_B B} & \downarrow pr_1 \vee pr_2 & \searrow & \\ & A & & B & \\ id_A \swarrow & \parallel & f \searrow & id_B \swarrow & g \searrow \\ A & & B & & C. \end{array}$$

to the span

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A & \\ id_A \swarrow & & \searrow g \circ f \\ A & & C \end{array}$$

given by the isomorphism $A \times_B B \cong A$.

Proof. Omitted. □

6.8.2. Comparison to Relations: From Span to Rel.

6.8.2.1. *Relations Associated to Spans.* Let $\lambda = (A \xleftarrow{f} S \xrightarrow{g} B)$ be a span.

00R8 Definition 6.8.2.1.1. The **relation associated to λ** is the relation

$$S(\lambda): A \nrightarrow B$$

from A to B defined as follows:

- Viewing relations from A to B as functions $A \times B \rightarrow \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$, we define

$$\iota_{A,B}(S)_b^a \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{true} & \text{if there exists } x \in S \text{ such} \\ & \text{that } a = f(x) \text{ and } b = g(x), \\ \text{false} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

for each $(a, b) \in A \times B$.

- Viewing relations from A to B as functions $A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$, we define

$$[\iota_{A,B}(S)](a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} g(f^{-1}(a))$$

for each $a \in A$.

- Viewing relations from A to B as subsets of $A \times B$, we define

$$\iota_{A,B}(S) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(f(x), g(x)) \mid x \in S\}.$$

00R9 Proposition 6.8.2.1.2. Let $\lambda = (A \xleftarrow{f} S \xrightarrow{g} B)$ be a span.

00RA (1) *Interaction With Identities.*

00RB (2) *Interaction With Composition.*

00RC (3) *Interaction With Inverses.*

Proof. □

6.8.2.2. The Comparison Functor from Span to Rel.

00RE Proposition 6.8.2.2.1. We have a pseudofunctor

$$\iota: \text{Span} \rightarrow \text{Rel}$$

from **Span** to **Rel** where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Span})$, we have

$$\iota(A) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A;$$

- *Action on Hom-Categories.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Span})$, the action on Hom-categories

$$\iota_{A,B}: \text{Span}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Rel}(A, B)$$

of ι at (A, B) is the functor where
– *Action on Objects*. Given a span

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & S & \\ f \swarrow & & \searrow g \\ A & & B \end{array}$$

from A to B , the image

$$\iota_{A,B}(S) : A \nrightarrow B$$

of S by ι is the relation from A to B defined as follows:

- * Viewing relations as functions $A \times B \rightarrow \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$, we define

$$\iota_{A,B}(S)_b^a \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{true} & \text{if there exists } x \in S \\ & \text{such that } a = f(x) \\ & \text{and } b = g(x), \\ \text{false} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

for each $(a, b) \in A \times B$;

- * Viewing relations as functions $A \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(B)$, we define

$$[\iota_{A,B}(S)](a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} g(f^{-1}(a))$$

for each $a \in A$;

- * Viewing relations as subsets of $A \times B$, we define

$$\iota_{A,B}(S) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(f(x), g(x)) \mid x \in S\}.$$

- *Action on Morphisms*. Given a morphism of spans

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & R & \\ f_R \swarrow & \downarrow & \searrow g_R \\ A & \phi & B, \\ \uparrow f_S & \downarrow & \nearrow g_S \\ S & & \end{array}$$

we have a corresponding inclusion of relations

$$\iota_{A,B}(\phi) : \iota_{A,B}(R) \subset \iota_{A,B}(S),$$

since we have $a \sim_{\iota_{A,B}(R)} b$ iff there exists $x \in R$ such that $a = f_R(x)$ and $b = g_R(x)$, in which case we then have

$$\begin{aligned} a &= f_R(x) \\ &= f_S(\phi(x)), \\ b &= g_R(x) \\ &= g_S(\phi(x)), \end{aligned}$$

so that $a \sim_{\iota_{A,B}(S)} b$, and thus $\iota_{A,B}(R) \subset \iota_{A,B}(S)$.

Proof. Omitted. □

6.8.3. Comparison to Relations: From **Rel** to **Span**.

00RG Proposition 6.8.3.1.1. We have a lax functor

$$(\iota, \iota^2, \iota^0) : \mathbf{Rel} \rightarrow \mathbf{Span}$$

from \mathbf{Rel} to \mathbf{Span} where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Span})$, we have

$$\iota(A) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A;$$

- *Action on Hom-Categories.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Span})$, the action on Hom-categories

$$\iota_{A,B} : \mathbf{Rel}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Span}(A, B)$$

of ι at (A, B) is the functor where

- *Action on Objects.* Given a relation $R : A \nrightarrow B$ from A to B , we define a span

$$\iota_{A,B}(R) : A \nrightarrow B$$

from A to B by

$$\iota_{A,B}(R) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (R, \text{pr}_1|_R, \text{pr}_2|_R),$$

where $R \subset A \times B$ and $\text{pr}_1|_R$ and $\text{pr}_2|_R$ are the restriction of the projections

$$\text{pr}_1 : A \times B \rightarrow A,$$

$$\text{pr}_2 : A \times B \rightarrow B$$

to R ;

- *Action on Morphisms.* Given an inclusion $\phi : R \subset S$ of relations, we have a corresponding morphism of spans

$$\iota_{A,B}(\phi) : \iota_{A,B}(R) \rightarrow \iota_{A,B}(S)$$

as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & R & \\ \text{pr}_1|_R \swarrow & \downarrow & \searrow \text{pr}_2|_R \\ A & & B \\ \text{pr}_1|_S \swarrow & \downarrow & \searrow \text{pr}_2|_S \\ & S & \end{array}$$

- *The Lax Functoriality Constraints.* The lax functoriality constraint

$$\iota_{R,S}^2 : \iota(S) \circ \iota(R) \Longrightarrow \iota(S \diamond R)$$

of ι at (R, S) is given by the morphism of spans from

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & R \times_B S & & & \\ & \swarrow \text{pr}_1 \quad \searrow \text{pr}_2 & & & \\ R & & S & & \\ \text{pr}_1|_R \swarrow & \downarrow \text{pr}_1 & \searrow \text{pr}_2 & \swarrow \text{pr}_2|_S \circ \text{pr}_2 & \\ A & & B & & C \\ \text{pr}_1|_R \swarrow & \text{pr}_2|_R \searrow & \text{pr}_1|_S \swarrow & \text{pr}_2|_S \searrow & \\ & & & & \end{array}$$

to

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & S \diamond R & \\ \text{pr}_1|_{S \diamond R} & \swarrow & \searrow \text{pr}_2|_{S \diamond R} \\ A & & C \end{array}$$

given by the natural inclusion $R \times_B S \hookrightarrow S \diamond R$, since we have

$$R \times_B S = \{((a_R, b_R), (b_S, c_S)) \in R \times S \mid b_R = b_S\};$$

$$S \diamond R = \left\{ (a, c) \in A \times C \mid \begin{array}{l} \text{there exists some } b \in B \text{ such} \\ \text{that } (a, b) \in R \text{ and } (b, c) \in S \end{array} \right\};$$

- *The Lax Unity Constraints.* The lax unity constraint¹²

$$\iota_A^0: \underbrace{\text{id}_{\iota(A)}}_{(A, \text{id}_A, \text{id}_A)} \Rightarrow \underbrace{\iota(\chi_A)}_{(\Delta_A, \text{pr}_1|_{\Delta_A}, \text{pr}_2|_{\Delta_A})}$$

of ι at A is given by the diagonal morphism of A , as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A & \\ \text{id}_A & \diagup & \diagdown \text{id}_A \\ A & \delta_A & A \\ \text{pr}_1|_{\Delta_A} & \uparrow & \downarrow \text{pr}_2|_{\Delta_A} \\ & \Delta_A & \end{array}$$

Proof. Omitted. □

6.8.4. Comparison to Relations: The Wehrheim–Woodward Construction.

6.8.5. Comparison to Multirelations.

00RK Remark 6.8.5.1.1. The pseudofunctor of [Proposition 6.8.2.2.1](#) and the lax functor of [Proposition 6.8.3.1.1](#) fail to be equivalences of bicategories. This happens essentially because a span $(S, f, g): A \nrightarrow B$ from A to B may relate elements $a \in A$ and $b \in B$ by more than one element, e.g. there could be $s \neq s' \in S$ such that $a = f(s) = f(s')$ and $b = g(s) = g(s')$.

Thus, in a sense, spans may be thought of as “relations with multiplicity”. And indeed, if instead of considering relations from A to B , i.e. functions

$$R: A \times B \rightarrow \{\text{true, false}\}$$

from $A \times B$ to $\{\text{true, false}\} \cong \{0, 1\}$, we consider functions

$$R: A \times B \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$$

from $A \times B$ to $\mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$, then we obtain the notion of a **multirelation from A to B** , and these turn out to assemble together with sets into a bicategory **MRel** that is biequivalent to **Span**; see [\[some-algebraic-laws-for-spans-and-their-connections-with-m](#)

6.8.6. Comparison to Relations via Double Categories.

00RM Remark 6.8.6.1.1. There are double functors between the double categories Rel^{dbl} and Span^{dbl} analogous to the functors of [Propositions 6.8.2.2.1](#) and [6.8.3.1.1](#), assembling moreover into a strict-lax adjunction of double functors; see [\[higher-dimensional-categories\]](#).

¹²Which is in fact strong, as δ_A is an isomorphism.

Appendices

6.A. Other Chapters

Sets	(1) Sets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
	(2) Constructions With Sets	Monoids With Zero
	(3) Pointed Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
	(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
	(5) Relations	Groups
	(6) Spans	(29) Groups
	(7) Posets	(30) Constructions With Groups
Indexed and Fibred Sets	(7) Indexed Sets	Hyper Algebra
	(8) Fibred Sets	(31) Hypermonoids
	(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(32) Hypergroups
Category Theory	(11) Categories	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
	(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(34) Quantales
	(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	Near-Rings
	(14) Constructions With Categories	(35) Near-Semirings
	(15) Profunctors	(36) Near-Rings
	(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	Real Analysis
	(17) Kan Extensions	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
Bicategories	(18) Bicategories	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
	(19) Internal Adjunctions	Measure Theory
Internal Category Theory	(20) Internal Categories	(39) Measurable Spaces
Cyclic Stuff	(21) The Cycle Category	(40) Measures and Integration
Cubical Stuff	(22) The Cube Category	Probability Theory
Globular Stuff	(23) The Globe Category	(40) Probability Theory
Cellular Stuff	(24) The Cell Category	Stochastic Analysis
Monoids	(25) Monoids	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
		(42) Itô Calculus
		(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
		Differential Geometry
		(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
		Schemes
		(45) Schemes

6.2. Other Chapters

Sets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
(1) Sets	
(2) Constructions With Sets	Monoids With Zero
(3) Pointed Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
(5) Relations	Groups
(6) Spans	(29) Groups
(7) Posets	(30) Constructions With Groups
Indexed and Fibred Sets	Hyper Algebra
(7) Indexed Sets	(31) Hypermonoids
(8) Fibred Sets	(32) Hypergroups
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
Category Theory	(34) Quantales
(11) Categories	Near-Rings
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(35) Near-Semirings
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	(36) Near-Rings
(14) Constructions With Categories	Real Analysis
(15) Profunctors	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
(17) Kan Extensions	Measure Theory
Bicategories	(39) Measurable Spaces
(18) Bicategories	(40) Measures and Integration
(19) Internal Adjunctions	Probability Theory
Internal Category Theory	(40) Probability Theory
(20) Internal Categories	Stochastic Analysis
Cyclic Stuff	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
(21) The Cycle Category	(42) Itô Calculus
Cubical Stuff	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
(22) The Cube Category	Differential Geometry
Globular Stuff	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
(23) The Globe Category	Schemes
Cellular Stuff	(45) Schemes
(24) The Cell Category	
Monoids	
(25) Monoids	

CHAPTER 7

Posets

00RN Rename this to “Preorders, Partial Orders, and Posets”.

7.1. Section

7.1.1. Section.

7.1.1.1. *Section.*

Appendices

7.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

With

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

With

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings

<p>(34) Quantales</p> <p>Near-Rings</p> <p>(35) Near-Semirings</p> <p>(36) Near-Rings</p> <p>Real Analysis</p> <p>(37) Real Analysis in One Variable</p> <p>(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables</p> <p>Measure Theory</p> <p>(39) Measurable Spaces</p> <p>(40) Measures and Integration</p> <p>Probability Theory</p>	<p>(40) Probability Theory</p> <p>Stochastic Analysis</p> <p>(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion</p> <p>(42) Itô Calculus</p> <p>(43) Stochastic Differential Equations</p> <p>Differential Geometry</p> <p>(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds</p> <p>Schemes</p> <p>(45) Schemes</p>
--	---

7.2. Other Chapters

<p>Sets</p> <p>(1) Sets</p> <p>(2) Constructions With Sets</p> <p>(3) Pointed Sets</p> <p>(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets</p> <p>(5) Relations</p> <p>(6) Spans</p> <p>(7) Posets</p> <p>Indexed and Fibred Sets</p> <p>(7) Indexed Sets</p> <p>(8) Fibred Sets</p> <p>(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets</p> <p>Category Theory</p> <p>(11) Categories</p> <p>(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories</p> <p>(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma</p> <p>(14) Constructions With Categories</p> <p>(15) Profunctors</p> <p>(16) Cartesian Closed Categories</p> <p>(17) Kan Extensions</p> <p>Bicategories</p> <p>(18) Bicategories</p> <p>(19) Internal Adjunctions</p> <p>Internal Category Theory</p>	<p>(20) Internal Categories</p> <p>Cyclic Stuff</p> <p>(21) The Cycle Category</p> <p>Cubical Stuff</p> <p>(22) The Cube Category</p> <p>Globular Stuff</p> <p>(23) The Globe Category</p> <p>Cellular Stuff</p> <p>(24) The Cell Category</p> <p>Monoids</p> <p>(25) Monoids</p> <p>(26) Constructions With Monoids</p> <p>Monoids With Zero</p> <p>(27) Monoids With Zero</p> <p>(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero</p> <p>Groups</p> <p>(29) Groups</p> <p>(30) Constructions With Groups</p> <p>Hyper Algebra</p> <p>(31) Hypermonoids</p> <p>(32) Hypergroups</p> <p>(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings</p> <p>(34) Quantales</p> <p>Near-Rings</p> <p>(35) Near-Semirings</p>
--	--

- (36) Near-Rings
- Real Analysis
- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
- Measure Theory
- (39) Measurable Spaces
- (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory
- (40) Probability Theory
- Stochastic Analysis
- (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
- (42) Itô Calculus
- (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
- Differential Geometry
- (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
- Schemes
- (45) Schemes

Part 2

Indexed and Fibred Sets

CHAPTER 8

Indexed Sets

00RS This chapter contains a discussion of indexed sets, the set-theoretical counterpart to indexed categories. In particular, here we explore:

- (1) Indexed sets, i.e. functors $K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ with K a set;
- (2) The limits and colimits in the category of K -indexed sets;
- (3) Constructions with indexed sets like dependent sums, dependent products, and internal Homs.

8.1. Indexed Sets

8.1.1. Foundations. Let K be a set.

00RV **Definition 8.1.1.1.1.** A K -indexed set is a functor $X: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$.

00RW **Remark 8.1.1.1.2.** By ??, a K -indexed set consists of a K -indexed collection

$$X^\dagger: K \rightarrow \text{Obj}(\text{Sets}),$$

of sets, assigning a set $X_x^\dagger \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X_x$ to each element x of K .

8.1.2. Morphisms of Indexed Sets. Let $X: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ and $Y: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be indexed sets.

00RY **Definition 8.1.2.1.1.** A morphism of K -indexed sets from X to Y ¹ is a natural transformation

$$f: X \Rightarrow Y, \quad K_{\text{disc}} \begin{array}{c} X \\ \swarrow f \downarrow \searrow \\ Y \end{array} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$$

from X to Y .

00RZ **Remark 8.1.2.1.2.** In detail, a morphism of K -indexed sets consists of a K -indexed collection

$$\{f_x: X_x \rightarrow Y_x\}_{x \in K}$$

of maps of sets.

8.1.3. The Category of Sets Indexed by a Fixed Set. Let K be a set.

00S1 **Definition 8.1.3.1.1.** The category of K -indexed sets is the category $\text{ISets}(K)$ defined by

$$\text{ISets}(K) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Fun}(K_{\text{disc}}, \text{Sets}).$$

00S2 **Remark 8.1.3.1.2.** In detail, the category of K -indexed sets is the category $\text{ISets}(K)$ where

¹Further Terminology: Also called a K -indexed map of sets from X to Y .

- *Objects.* The objects of $\text{ISets}(K)$ are K -indexed sets as in [Definition 8.1.1.1](#);
- *Morphisms.* The morphisms of $\text{ISets}(K)$ are morphisms of K -indexed sets as in [Definition 8.1.2.1](#);
- *Identities.* For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets}(K))$, the unit map

$$\mathbb{1}_X^{\text{ISets}(K)} : \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K)}(X, X)$$

of $\text{ISets}(K)$ at X is defined by

$$\text{id}_X^{\text{ISets}(K)} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\text{id}_{X_x}\}_{x \in K};$$

- *Composition.* For each $X, Y, Z \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets}(K))$, the composition map

$$\circ_{X, Y, Z}^{\text{ISets}(K)} : \text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K)}(Y, Z) \times \text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K)}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K)}(X, Z)$$

of $\text{ISets}(K)$ at (X, Y, Z) is defined by

$$\{g_x\}_{x \in K} \circ_{X, Y, Z}^{\text{ISets}(K)} \{f_x\}_{x \in K} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{g_x \circ f_x\}_{x \in K}.$$

8.1.4. The Category of Indexed Sets.

00S4 **Definition 8.1.4.1.1.** The **category of indexed sets** is the category ISets defined as the Grothendieck construction of the functor $\text{ISets} : \text{Sets}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Cats}$ of [Proposition 8.4.1.4](#):

$$\text{ISets} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int^{\text{Sets}} \text{ISets}.$$

00S5 **Remark 8.1.4.1.2.** In detail, the **category of indexed sets** is the category ISets where

- *Objects.* The objects of ISets are pairs (K, X) consisting of
 - *The Indexing Set.* A set K ;
 - *The Indexed Set.* A K -indexed set $X : K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$;
- *Morphisms.* A morphism of ISets from (K, X) to (K', Y) is a pair (ϕ, f) consisting of
 - *The Reindexing Map.* A map of sets $\phi : K \rightarrow K'$;
 - *The Morphism of Indexed Sets.* A morphism of K -indexed sets $f : X \rightarrow \phi_*(Y)$ as in the diagram

$$f : X \rightarrow \phi_*(Y), \quad \begin{array}{ccc} K_{\text{disc}} & \xrightarrow{\phi} & K'_{\text{disc}} \\ & \searrow \cong \nearrow f & \\ & X & Y \\ & & \text{Sets}; \end{array}$$

- *Identities.* For each $(K, X) \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets})$, the unit map

$$\mathbb{1}_{(K, X)}^{\text{ISets}} : \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{ISets}((K, X), (K, X))$$

of ISets at (K, X) is defined by

$$\text{id}_{(K, X)}^{\text{ISets}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\text{id}_K, \text{id}_X).$$

- *Composition.* For each $\mathbf{X} = (K, X)$, $\mathbf{Y} = (K', Y)$, $\mathbf{Z} = (K'', Z) \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets})$, the composition map

$$\circ_{\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z}}^{\text{ISets}} : \text{ISets}(\mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z}) \times \text{ISets}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}) \rightarrow \text{ISets}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Z})$$

of ISets at $(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z})$ is defined by

$$(\psi, g) \circ (\phi, f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\psi \circ \phi, (g \star \text{id}_\phi) \circ f),$$

as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} K_{\text{disc}} & \xrightarrow{\phi} & K'_{\text{disc}} & \xrightarrow{\psi} & K''_{\text{disc}} \\ & \searrow f & \downarrow Y & \nearrow g & \\ X & & \text{Sets} & & Z \end{array}$$

for each $(\phi, f) \in \text{ISets}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y})$ and each $(\psi, g) \in \text{ISets}(\mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z})$.

8.2. Limits of Indexed Sets

8.2.1. Products of K -Indexed Sets. Let $X: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ and $Y: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be indexed sets.

00S8 Definition 8.2.1.1.1. The **product of X and Y** is the K -indexed set $X \times Y: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ defined by

$$(X \times Y)_k \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X_k \times Y_k$$

for each $k \in K$.

Proof. That this agrees with the categorical product in $\text{ISets}(K)$ follows from ?? of ?? \square

8.2.2. Pullbacks of K -Indexed Sets. Let $X, Y, Z: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be K -indexed sets and let $f: X \rightarrow Z$ and $g: Y \rightarrow Z$ be morphisms of K -indexed sets.

00SA Definition 8.2.2.1.1. The **pullback of X and Y over Z** is the K -indexed set $X \times_Z Y: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ defined by

$$(X \times_Z Y)_k \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X_k \times_{Z_k} Y_k$$

for each $k \in K$.

Proof. That this agrees with the categorical pullback in $\text{ISets}(K)$ follows from ?? of ?? \square

8.2.3. Equalisers of K -Indexed Sets. Let $X, Y: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be K -indexed sets and let $f, g: X \rightrightarrows Y$ be morphisms of K -indexed sets.

00SC Definition 8.2.3.1.1. The **equaliser of f and g** is the K -indexed set $\text{Eq}(f, g): K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ defined by

$$(\text{Eq}(f, g))_k \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Eq}(f_k, g_k)$$

for each $k \in K$.

Proof. That this agrees with the categorical equaliser in $\text{ISets}(K)$ follows from ?? of ?? \square

8.2.4. Products in ISets . Let $X: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ and $Y: K'_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be indexed sets.

00SE Definition 8.2.4.1.1. The **product of X and Y** is the $(K \times K')$ -indexed set

$$X \times Y: (K \times K')_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$$

defined by

$$(X \times Y)_{(k,k')} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X_k \times Y_{k'}$$

for each $(k, k') \in K \times K'$.

Proof. We claim that this agrees with the categorical product in ISets . \square

8.2.5. Pullbacks in ISets . Let $X: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be a K -indexed set, let $Y: K'_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be a K' -indexed set, let $Z: K''_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be a K'' -indexed set, and let $(\phi, f): X \rightarrow Z$ and $(\psi, g): Y \rightarrow Z$ be morphisms of indexed sets (as in Remark 8.1.4.1.2).

00SG Definition 8.2.5.1.1. The **pullback of X and Y over Z** is the $(K \times_{K''} K)$ -indexed set

$$X \times_Z Y: (K \times_{K''} K)_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$$

defined by

$$\begin{aligned} (X \times_Z Y)_{(k,k')} &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X_k \times_{Z_{\phi(k)}} Y_{k'} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X_k \times_{Z_{\psi(k)}} Y_{k'} \end{aligned}$$

for each $(k, k') \in K \times_{K''} K'$.

Proof. We claim that this agrees with the categorical pullback in ISets . \square

8.2.6. Equalisers in ISets . Let $X: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be a K -indexed set, let $Y: K'_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be a K' -indexed set, and let $(\phi, f), (\psi, g): X \rightarrow Y$ be morphisms of indexed sets (as in Remark 8.1.4.1.2).

00SJ Definition 8.2.6.1.1. The **equaliser of (ϕ, f) and (ψ, g)** is the $\text{Eq}(\phi, \psi)$ -indexed set $\text{Eq}(f, g): \text{Eq}(\phi, \psi) \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ defined by

$$(\text{Eq}(f, g))_k \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Eq}(f_k, g_k)$$

for each $k \in \text{Eq}(\phi, \psi)$.

Proof. We claim that this agrees with the categorical equaliser in ISets . \square

8.3. Colimits of Indexed Sets

8.3.1. Coproducts of K -Indexed Sets. Let $X: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ and $Y: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be indexed sets.

00SM Definition 8.3.1.1.1. The **coproduct** of X and Y is the K -k-indexed set $X \coprod Y: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ defined by

$$(X \coprod Y)_k \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X_k \coprod Y_k$$

for each $k \in K$.

Proof. That this agrees with the categorical coproduct in $\text{ISets}(K)$ follows from ?? of ??.

8.3.2. Pushouts of K -Indexed Sets. Let $X, Y, Z: K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be K -indexed sets and let $f: Z \rightarrow X$ and $g: Z \rightarrow Y$ be morphisms of K -indexed sets.

00SP **Definition 8.3.2.1.1.** The **pushout** of X and Y is the K -indexed set $X \coprod_z Y : K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ defined by

$$(X \coprod_z Y)_k \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X_k \coprod_{z_k} Y_k$$

for each $k \in K$.

Proof. That this agrees with the categorical pushout in $\text{ISets}(K)$ follows from ?? of ??.

8.3.3. Coequalisers of K -Indexed Sets. Let $X, Y : K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be K -indexed sets and let $f, g : X \rightrightarrows Y$ be morphisms of K -indexed sets.

00SR **Definition 8.3.3.1.1.** The **coequaliser** of X and Y is the K -indexed set $\text{CoEq}(f, g) : K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ defined by

$$(\text{CoEq}(f, g))_k \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{CoEq}(f_k, g_k)$$

for each $k \in K$.

Proof. That this agrees with the categorical coequaliser in $\text{ISets}(K)$ follows from ?? of ??.

8.4. Constructions With Indexed Sets

8.4.1. Change of Indexing. Let $\phi : K \rightarrow K'$ be a function and let X be a K' -indexed set.

00SU **Definition 8.4.1.1.1.** The **change of indexing of X to K** is the K -indexed set $\phi^*(X)$ defined by

$$\phi^*(X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X \circ \phi_{\text{disc}}.$$

00SV **Remark 8.4.1.1.2.** In detail, the **change of indexing of X to K** is the K -indexed set $\phi^*(X)$ defined by

$$\phi^*(X)_x \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X_{\phi(x)}$$

for each $x \in K$.

00SW **Proposition 8.4.1.1.3.** The assignment $X \mapsto \phi^*(X)$ defines a functor

$$\phi^* : \text{ISets}(K') \rightarrow \text{ISets}(K),$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets}(K'))$, we have

$$[\phi^*](X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \phi^*(X);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets}(K'))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\phi_{X,Y}^* : \text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K')}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K)}(\phi^*(X), \phi^*(Y))$$

of ϕ^* at (X, Y) is the map sending a morphism of K' -indexed sets

$$f = \{f_x : X_x \rightarrow Y_x\}_{x \in K'}$$

from X to Y to the morphism of K -indexed sets defined by

$$\phi^*(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ f_{\phi(x)} : X_{\phi(x)} \rightarrow Y_{\phi(x)} \right\}_{x \in K}.$$

Proof. Omitted. □

00SX Proposition 8.4.1.1.4. The assignment $K \mapsto \text{ISets}(K)$ defines a functor

$$\text{ISets}: \text{Sets}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Cats},$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $K \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, we have

$$[\text{ISets}](K) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{ISets}(K);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $K, K' \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\text{ISets}_{K,K'}: \text{Sets}^{\text{op}}(K, K') \rightarrow \text{Fun}(\text{ISets}(K), \text{ISets}(K'))$$

of ISets at (K, K') is the map defined by

$$\text{ISets}_{K,K'}(\phi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \phi^*$$

for each $\phi \in \text{Sets}^{\text{op}}(K, K')$.

Proof. Omitted. □

8.4.2. Dependent Sums. Let $\phi: K \rightarrow K'$ be a function and let X be a K -indexed set.

00SZ Definition 8.4.2.1.1. The **dependent sum** of X is the K' -indexed set $\Sigma_{\phi}(X)$ ² defined by

$$\Sigma_{\phi}(X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Lan}_{\phi}(X),$$

and hence given by

$$\Sigma_{\phi}(X)_x \cong \coprod_{y \in \phi^{-1}(x)} X_y$$

for each $x \in K'$.

00T0 Proposition 8.4.2.1.2. The assignment $X \mapsto \Sigma_{\phi}(X)$ defines a functor

$$\Sigma_{\phi}: \text{ISets}(K) \rightarrow \text{ISets}(K'),$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets}(K))$, we have

$$[\Sigma_{\phi}](X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Sigma_{\phi}(X);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets}(K))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\Sigma_{\phi|X,Y}: \text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K)}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K')}(\Sigma_{\phi}(X), \Sigma_{\phi}(Y))$$

of Σ_{ϕ} at (X, Y) is the map sending a morphism of K -indexed sets

$$f: X \rightarrow Y$$

to the morphism of K' -indexed sets defined by

$$\Sigma_{\phi}(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Lan}_{\phi}(f);$$

$$\cong \coprod_{y \in \phi^{-1}(X)} f_y.$$

Proof. Omitted. □

²Further Notation: Also written $\phi_*(X)$.

8.4.3. Dependent Products. Let $\phi: K \rightarrow K'$ be a function and let X be a K -indexed set.

00T2 Definition 8.4.3.1.1. The **dependent product of X** is the K' -indexed set $\Pi_\phi(X)$ ³ defined by

$$\Pi_\phi(X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Ran}_\phi(X),$$

and hence given by

$$\Pi_\phi(X)_x \cong \prod_{y \in \phi^{-1}(x)} X_y$$

for each $x \in K'$.

00T3 Proposition 8.4.3.1.2. The assignment $X \mapsto \Pi_\phi(X)$ defines a functor

$$\Pi_\phi: \text{ISets}(K) \rightarrow \text{ISets}(K'),$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets}(K))$, we have

$$[\Pi_\phi](X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Pi_\phi(X);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets}(K))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\Pi_{\phi|X,Y}: \text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K)}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K')}(\Pi_\phi(X), \Pi_\phi(Y))$$

of Π_ϕ at (X, Y) is the map sending a morphism of K -indexed sets

$$f: X \rightarrow Y$$

to the morphism of K' -indexed sets defined by

$$\Pi_\phi(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Ran}_\phi(f);$$

$$\cong \prod_{y \in \phi^{-1}(x)} f_y.$$

Proof. Omitted. □

8.4.4. Internal Hom. Let K be a set and let X and Y be K -indexed sets.

00T5 Definition 8.4.4.1.1. The **internal Hom of indexed sets from X to Y** is the indexed set $\text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K)}(X, Y)$ defined by

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K)}(X, Y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Sets}(X_x, Y_x)$$

for each $x \in K$.

8.4.5. Adjointness of Indexed Sets. Let $\phi: K \rightarrow K'$ be a map of sets.

00T7 Proposition 8.4.5.1.1. We have a triple adjunction

$$(\Sigma_\phi \dashv \phi^* \dashv \Pi_\phi): \quad \text{ISets}(K) \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{\Sigma_\phi} \\[-1ex] \perp \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\phi^*} \end{array} \text{ISets}(K').$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\Pi_\phi} \\[-1ex] \perp \\[-1ex] \xrightarrow{\phi_*} \end{array}$$

Proof. This follows from ?? of ??.

□

³Further Notation: Also written $\phi_!(X)$.

Appendices

8.A. Other Chapters

Sets	(1) Sets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
	(2) Constructions With Sets	Monoids With Zero
	(3) Pointed Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
	(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
	(5) Relations	Groups
	(6) Spans	(29) Groups
	(7) Posets	(30) Constructions With Groups
Indexed and Fibred Sets	(7) Indexed Sets	Hyper Algebra
	(8) Fibred Sets	(31) Hypermonoids
	(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(32) Hypergroups
Category Theory	(11) Categories	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
	(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(34) Quantales
	(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	Near-Rings
	(14) Constructions With Categories	(35) Near-Semirings
	(15) Profunctors	(36) Near-Rings
	(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	Real Analysis
	(17) Kan Extensions	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
Bicategories	(18) Bicategories	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
	(19) Internal Adjunctions	Measure Theory
Internal Category Theory	(20) Internal Categories	(39) Measurable Spaces
Cyclic Stuff	(21) The Cycle Category	(40) Measures and Integration
Cubical Stuff	(22) The Cube Category	Probability Theory
Globular Stuff	(23) The Globe Category	(40) Probability Theory
Cellular Stuff	(24) The Cell Category	Stochastic Analysis
Monoids	(25) Monoids	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
		(42) Itô Calculus
		(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
		Differential Geometry
		(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
		Schemes
		(45) Schemes

8.2. Other Chapters

Sets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
(1) Sets	
(2) Constructions With Sets	Monoids With Zero
(3) Pointed Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
(5) Relations	
(6) Spans	Groups
(7) Posets	(29) Groups
Indexed and Fibred Sets	(30) Constructions With Groups
(7) Indexed Sets	
(8) Fibred Sets	Hyper Algebra
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(31) Hypermonoids
Category Theory	(32) Hypergroups
(11) Categories	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(34) Quantales
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	
(14) Constructions With Categories	Near-Rings
(15) Profunctors	(35) Near-Semirings
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	(36) Near-Rings
(17) Kan Extensions	Real Analysis
Bicategories	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(18) Bicategories	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
(19) Internal Adjunctions	
Internal Category Theory	Measure Theory
(20) Internal Categories	(39) Measurable Spaces
Cyclic Stuff	(40) Measures and Integration
(21) The Cycle Category	Probability Theory
Cubical Stuff	(40) Probability Theory
(22) The Cube Category	Stochastic Analysis
Globular Stuff	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
(23) The Globe Category	(42) Itô Calculus
Cellular Stuff	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
(24) The Cell Category	Differential Geometry
Monoids	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
(25) Monoids	Schemes
	(45) Schemes

CHAPTER 9

Fibred Sets

00T8 This chapter contains a discussion of the un/straightening equivalence in the context of sets, as well as a general discussion of indexed and fibred sets. In particular, it contains:

- (1) A discussion of indexed sets (i.e. functors $K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Sets}$ with K a set), constructions with them like dependent sums and dependent products, and their properties (????);
- (2) A discussion of fibred sets (i.e. maps of sets $X \rightarrow K$), constructions with them like dependent sums and dependent products, and their properties ([Sections 9.1](#) and [9.2](#));
- (3) A discussion of the un/straightening equivalence for indexed and fibred sets (??).

9.1. Fibred Sets

9.1.1. Foundations. Let K be a set.

00TB Definition 9.1.1.1.1. A **K -fibred set** is a pair (X, ϕ) consisting of¹

- *The Underlying Set.* A set X , called the **underlying set of** (X, ϕ) ;
- *The Fibration.* A map of sets $\phi: X \rightarrow K$.

9.1.2. Morphisms of Fibred Sets.

00TD Definition 9.1.2.1.1. A **morphism of K -fibred sets from** (X, ϕ) **to** (Y, ψ) is a function $f: X \rightarrow Y$ such that the diagram²

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ \phi \searrow & & \swarrow \psi \\ & K & \end{array}$$

commutes.

9.1.3. The Category of Fibred Sets Over a Fixed Base.

¹Further Terminology: The **fibre of** (X, ϕ) **over** $x \in K$ is the set $\phi^{-1}(x)$ (also written ϕ_x) defined by

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \phi^{-1}(x) & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow \lrcorner & & \downarrow \phi \\ \text{pt} & \xrightarrow{[x]} & K. \end{array}$$

²Further Terminology: The **transport map associated to f at $x \in K$** is the function

$$f_x^*: \phi^{-1}(x) \rightarrow \psi^{-1}(x)$$

00TF Definition 9.1.3.1.1. The **category of K -fibred sets** is the category $\text{FibSets}(K)$ defined as the slice category $\text{Sets}_{/K}$ of Sets over K :

$$\text{FibSets}(K) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Sets}_{/K}.$$

00TG Remark 9.1.3.1.2. In detail $\text{FibSets}(K)$ is the category where

- *Objects.* The objects of $\text{FibSets}(K)$ are pairs (X, ϕ) consisting of
 - *The Fibred Set.* A set X ;
 - *The Fibration.* A function $\phi: X \rightarrow K$;
- *Morphisms.* A morphism of $\text{FibSets}(K)$ from (X, ϕ) to (Y, ψ) is a function $f: X \rightarrow Y$ making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ \phi \searrow & & \swarrow \psi \\ & X & \end{array}$$

commute;

- *Identities.* For each $(X, \phi) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K))$, the unit map

$$\text{id}_{(X, \phi)}^{\text{FibSets}(K)}: \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}((X, \phi), (X, \phi))$$

of $\text{FibSets}(K)$ at (X, ϕ) is given by

$$\text{id}_{(X, \phi)}^{\text{FibSets}(K)} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_X,$$

as witnessed by the commutativity of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xlongequal{\text{id}_X} & X \\ \phi \searrow & & \swarrow \phi \\ & K & \end{array}$$

in Sets ;

- *Composition.* For each $\mathbf{X} = (X, \phi)$, $\mathbf{Y} = (Y, \psi)$, $\mathbf{Z} = (Z, \chi) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K))$, the composition map

$$\circ_{\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z}}^{\text{FibSets}(K)}: \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(\mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z}) \times \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Z})$$

of $\text{FibSets}(K)$ at $(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z})$ is defined by

$$\circ_{\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z}}^{\text{FibSets}(K)} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \circ_{X, Y, Z}^{\text{Sets}},$$

given by the dashed map in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \phi^{-1}(x) & \longrightarrow & X & & \\ \downarrow & \lrcorner \urcorner & \downarrow \phi & \searrow f & \\ \psi^{-1}(x) & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Y & & \\ \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow & & \downarrow \psi \\ \text{pt} & \xrightarrow{[x]} & K & & \\ \lrcorner \urcorner & & \lrcorner \urcorner & & \\ \text{pt} & \xrightarrow{[x]} & K & & \end{array}$$

as witnessed by the commutativity of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y & \xrightarrow{g} & Z \\ & \searrow \phi & \downarrow \psi & \swarrow \chi & \\ & & K & & \end{array}$$

in Sets .

9.1.4. The Category of Fibred Sets.

00TJ **Definition 9.1.4.1.1.** The **category of fibred sets** is the category FibSets defined as the Grothendieck construction of the functor $\text{FibSets}: \text{Sets}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Cats}$ of [Proposition 9.2.1.1.3](#):

$$\text{FibSets} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int^{\text{Sets}} \text{FibSets}.$$

00TK **Remark 9.1.4.1.2.** In detail, the **category of fibred sets** is the category FibSets where

- *Objects.* The objects of FibSets are pairs $(K, (X, \phi_X))$ consisting of
 - *The Base Set.* A set K ;
 - *The Fibred Set.* A K -fibred set $\phi_X: X \rightarrow K$;
- *Morphisms.* A morphism of FibSets from $(K, (X, \phi_X))$ to $(K', (Y, \phi_Y))$ is a pair (ϕ, f) consisting of
 - *The Base Map.* A map of sets $\phi: K \rightarrow K'$;
 - *The Morphism of Fibred Sets.* A morphism of K -fibred sets

$$f: (X, \phi_X) \rightarrow \phi_Y^*(Y), \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \times_{K'} K \\ \phi_X \searrow & & \swarrow \text{pr}_2 \\ & & K; \end{array}$$

- *Identities.* For each $(K, X) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets})$, the unit map

$$\text{id}_{(K, X)}^{\text{FibSets}}: \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{FibSets}((K, X), (K, X))$$

of FibSets at (K, X) is defined by

$$\text{id}_{(K, X)}^{\text{FibSets}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\text{id}_K, \sim),$$

where \sim is the isomorphism $X \rightarrow X \times_K K$ as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\sim} & X \times_K K \\ \phi_X \searrow & & \swarrow \text{pr}_2 \\ & & K; \end{array}$$

- *Composition.* For each $\mathbf{X} = (K, X), \mathbf{Y} = (K', Y), \mathbf{Z} = (K'', Z) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets})$, the composition map

$$\circ^{\text{FibSets}}_{\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z}}: \text{FibSets}(\mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z}) \times \text{FibSets}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}) \rightarrow \text{FibSets}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Z})$$

of FibSets at $(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z})$ is defined by

$$g \circ^{\text{FibSets}}_{\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z}} f \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (g \times_{K'} \text{id}_K) \circ f$$

as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \cong Z \times_{K''} K & & \\
 & X \xrightarrow{f} & Y \times_{K'} K \xrightarrow{g \times_{K'} \text{id}_K} & (Z \times_{K''} K') \times_{K'} K & \\
 & \phi_X \searrow & \downarrow \text{pr}_2 & \nearrow \text{pr}_2 & \\
 & & K; & &
 \end{array}$$

for each $f \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}))$ and each $g \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(\mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z}))$.

9.2. Constructions With Fibred Sets

9.2.1. Change of Base. Let $f: K \rightarrow K'$ be a function and let (X, ϕ_X) be a K' -fibred set.

00TN Definition 9.2.1.1.1. The **change of base** of (X, ϕ_X) to K is the K -fibred set $f^*(X)$ defined by

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 f^*(X) & \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_2} & X \\
 \text{pr}_1 \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow \phi_X \\
 K & \xrightarrow{f} & K'.
 \end{array}$$

00TP Proposition 9.2.1.1.2. The assignment $X \mapsto f^*(X)$ defines a functor

$$f^*: \text{FibSets}(K') \rightarrow \text{FibSets}(K),$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $(X, \phi_X) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K'))$, we have
 $f^*(X, \phi_X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f^*(X)$;
- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $(X, \phi_X), (Y, \phi_Y) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K'))$,
the action on Hom-sets

$$f_{X,Y}^*: \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(f^*(X), f^*(Y))$$

of f^* at $((X, \phi_X), (Y, \phi_Y))$ is the map sending a morphism of K' -fibred sets

$$g: (X, \phi_X) \rightarrow (Y, \phi_Y)$$

to the morphism of K -fibred sets given by the dashed morphism in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 f^*(X) & \longrightarrow & X & & \\
 \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow \phi_X & \searrow g & \\
 f^*(Y) & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Y & & \\
 \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow & & \downarrow \phi_Y \\
 K & \xrightarrow{f} & K' & & \\
 \parallel & & \parallel & & \parallel \\
 K & \xrightarrow{f} & K' & &
 \end{array}$$

Proof. Omitted. \square

00TQ Proposition 9.2.1.1.3. The assignment $K \mapsto \text{FibSets}(K)$ defines a functor

$$\text{FibSets}: \text{Sets}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Cats},$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $K \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, we have

$$[\text{FibSets}](K) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{FibSets}(K);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $K, K' \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\text{Sets}_{/(-)|K, K'}: \text{Sets}^{\text{op}}(K, K') \rightarrow \text{Fun}(\text{FibSets}(K), \text{FibSets}(K'))$$

of $\text{Sets}_{/(-)}$ at (K, K') is the map sending a map of sets $f: K \rightarrow K'$ to the functor

$$\text{Sets}_{/f}: \text{FibSets}(K') \rightarrow \text{FibSets}(K)$$

defined by

$$\text{Sets}_{/f} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f^*.$$

Proof. Omitted. \square

9.2.2. Dependent Sums. Let $f: K \rightarrow K'$ be a function and let (X, ϕ_X) be a K -fibred set.

00TS Definition 9.2.2.1.1. The **dependent sum**³ of (X, ϕ_X) is the K' -fibred set $\Sigma_f(X)$ ⁴ defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \Sigma_f(X) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\Sigma_f(X), \Sigma_f(\phi_X)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (X, f \circ \phi_X). \end{aligned}$$

00TT Proposition 9.2.2.1.2. Let $f: K \rightarrow K'$ be a function.

00TU (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $X \mapsto \Sigma_f(X)$ defines a functor

$$\Sigma_f: \text{FibSets}(K) \rightarrow \text{FibSets}(K'),$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $(X, \phi_X) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K))$, we have

$$\Sigma_f(X, \phi_X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\Sigma_f(X), \Sigma_f(\phi_X));$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $(X, \phi_X), (Y, \phi_Y) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\Sigma_{f|X,Y}: \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(\Sigma_f(X), \Sigma_f(Y))$$

³The name “dependent sum” comes from the fact that the fibre $\Sigma_f(\phi_X)^{-1}(x)$ of $\Sigma_f(X)$ at $x \in K'$ is given by

$$\Sigma_f(\phi_X)^{-1}(x) \cong \coprod_{y \in f^{-1}(x)} \phi_X^{-1}(y);$$

see Item 2 of Proposition 9.2.2.1.2.

⁴Further Notation: Also written $f_*(X)$.

of Σ_f at $((X, \phi_X), (Y, \phi_Y))$ is the map sending a morphism of K -fibred sets

$$g: (X, \phi_X) \rightarrow (Y, \phi_Y)$$

to the morphism of K' -fibred sets defined by

$$\Sigma_f(g) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} g.$$

00TV (2) *Interaction With Fibres.* We have a bijection of sets

$$\Sigma_f(\phi_X)^{-1}(k') \cong \coprod_{k \in f^{-1}(k')} \phi_X^{-1}(k)$$

for each $k' \in K'$.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Omitted.

Item 2, Interaction With Fibres: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Sigma_f(\phi_X)^{-1}(k') &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{pt} \times_{[k'], K', f \circ \phi_X} X \\ &\cong \{x \in X \mid f(\phi_X(x)) = k'\} \\ &\cong \coprod_{k \in f^{-1}(k')} \{x \in X \mid \phi_X(x) = k\} \\ &\cong \coprod_{k \in f^{-1}(k')} \phi_X^{-1}(k) \end{aligned}$$

for each $k' \in K'$. □

9.2.3. Dependent Products. Let $f: K \rightarrow K'$ be a function and let (X, ϕ_X) be a K -fibred set.

00TX **Definition 9.2.3.1.1.** The **dependent product**⁵ of (X, ϕ_X) is the K' -fibred set $\Pi_f(X)$ ⁶ consisting of⁷

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $\Pi_f(X)$ defined by

$$\Pi_f(X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{k' \in K'} \prod_{k \in f^{-1}(k')} \phi_X^{-1}(k);$$

- *The Fibration.* The map of sets

$$\Pi_f(\phi_X): \Pi_f(X) \rightarrow K'$$

defined by sending an element of

$$\Pi_f(X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{k' \in K'} \prod_{k \in f^{-1}(k')} \phi_X^{-1}(k)$$

to its index k' in K' .

00TY **Example 9.2.3.1.2.** Here are some examples of dependent products of sets.

⁵The name “dependent product” comes from the fact that the fibre $\Pi_f(\phi_X)^{-1}(k')$ of $\Pi_f(X)$ at $k' \in K'$ is given by

$$\Pi_f(\phi_X)^{-1}(k') \cong \prod_{k \in f^{-1}(k')} \phi_X^{-1}(k);$$

see [Item 2 of Proposition 9.2.3.1.3](#).

⁶*Further Notation:* Also written $f_!(X)$.

⁷We can also define dependent products via the internal **Hom** in **FibSets**(K'); see [Item 3 of Proposition 9.2.3.1.3](#).

00TZ

- (1) *Spaces of Sections.* Let $K = X$, $K' = \text{pt}$, let $\phi: E \rightarrow X$ be a map of sets, and write $!_X: X \rightarrow \text{pt}$ for the terminal map from X to pt. We have a bijection of sets

$$\begin{aligned}\Pi_{!_X}((E, \phi)) &\cong \Gamma_X(\phi) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{h \in \text{Sets}(X, E) \mid \phi \circ h = \text{id}_X\}.\end{aligned}$$

00U0

- (2) *Function Spaces.* Let $K = K' = \text{pt}$ and write $!_X: X \rightarrow \text{pt}$ and $!_Y: Y \rightarrow \text{pt}$ for the terminal maps from X and Y to pt. We have a bijection of sets

$$\text{Sets}(X, Y) \cong \Pi_{!_X}(!^*_X(Y, !_Y)).$$

Proof. *Item 1, Spaces of Sections:* Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\Pi_{!_X}((E, \phi)) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{\star \in \text{pt}} \prod_{k \in !_X^{-1}(\star)} \phi_X^{-1}(k) \\ &= \prod_{x \in X} \phi_X^{-1}(x) \\ &\cong \{h \in \text{Sets}(X, E) \mid \phi_X \circ h = \text{id}_X\} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Gamma_X(\phi).\end{aligned}$$

Item 2, Function Spaces: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\Pi_{!_X}(!^*_X(Y, !_Y)) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Pi_{!_X}(X \times_{!_X, \text{pt}, !_Y} Y) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{\star \in \text{pt}} \prod_{x \in !_X^{-1}(\star)} \text{pr}_1^{-1}(x) \\ &= \prod_{x \in X} Y \\ &\cong \text{Sets}(X, Y).\end{aligned}$$

This finishes the proof. \square

00U1

Proposition 9.2.3.1.3. Let $f: K \rightarrow K'$ be a function.

00U2

- (1) *Functoriality.* The assignment $X \mapsto \Pi_f(X)$ defines a functor

$$\Pi_f: \text{FibSets}(K) \rightarrow \text{FibSets}(K'),$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $(X, \phi_X) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K))$, we have

$$\Pi_f(X, \phi_X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Pi_f(X);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $(X, \phi_X), (Y, \phi_Y) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\Pi_{f|X,Y}: \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(\Pi_f(X), \Pi_f(Y))$$

of Π_f at $((X, \phi_X), (Y, \phi_Y))$ is the map sending a morphism of K -fibred sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\xi} & Y \\ \phi_X \searrow & & \swarrow \phi_Y \\ & K & \end{array}$$

to the morphism

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Pi_f(X) & \xrightarrow{\Pi_f(\xi)} & \Pi_f(Y) \\ \Pi_f(\xi): (\Pi_f(X), \Pi_f(\phi_X)) \rightarrow (\Pi_f(Y), \Pi_f(\phi_Y)) & \swarrow \Pi_f(\phi_X) & \searrow \Pi_f(\phi_Y) \\ & K & \end{array}$$

of K' -fibred sets given by⁸

$$[\Pi_f(\xi)]((x_k)_{k \in f^{-1}(k')}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\xi(x_k))_{k \in f^{-1}(k')}$$

for each $(x_k)_{k \in f^{-1}(k')} \in \Pi_f(X)$.

- 00U3** (2) *Interaction With Fibres.* We have a bijection of sets

$$\Pi_f(\phi_X)^{-1}(k') \cong \prod_{k \in f^{-1}(k')} \phi_X^{-1}(k);$$

for each $k' \in K'$.

- 00U4** (3) *Construction Using the Internal Hom.* We have

$$\Pi_f(X, \phi_X) = \left(K' \times_{\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K')}}^{((K, f), (K, f))} \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K')}((K, f), (X, f \circ \phi_X)), \text{pr}_1 \right),$$

forming a pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Pi_f(X, \phi_X) & \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_2} & \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K')}((K, f), (X, f \circ \phi_X)) \\ \text{pr}_1 \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow (\phi_X)_* \\ K' & \xrightarrow[I]{} & \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K')}((K, f), (K, f)), \end{array}$$

where the bottom map is given by

$$I(k') \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_{f^{-1}(k')}$$

for each $k' \in K'$ and where $\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K')}$ denotes the internal Hom of $\mathbf{FibSets}(K')$ of [Definition 9.2.4.1.1](#).

- 00U5** (4) *Internal Homs via Dependent Products.* We have

$$\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y) \cong \Pi_{\phi_X}(\phi_X^*(Y)).$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Omitted.

Item 2, Interaction With Fibres: Clear.

Item 3, Construction Using the Internal Hom: Using the explicit formula for pullbacks of sets given in ??, we see that the pullback

$$K' \times_{\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K')}}^{((K, f), (K, f))} \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K')}((K, f), (X, f \circ \phi_X))$$

⁸Note that we indeed have $\xi(x_k) \in \phi_Y^{-1}(k)$, since

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_Y(\xi(x_k)) &= [\phi_Y \circ \xi](x_k) \\ &= \phi_X(x_k) \\ &= k, \end{aligned}$$

where we have used that ξ is a morphism of K -fibred sets for the second equality.

is given by

$$\left\{ (k', h) \in \coprod_{k' \in K'} \text{Sets}\left(f^{-1}(k'), \phi_X^{-1}(f^{-1}(k'))\right) \mid \phi_X \circ h = \text{id}_{f^{-1}(k')}\right\},$$

which is isomorphic to

$$\coprod_{k' \in K'} \left\{ h \in \text{Sets}\left(f^{-1}(k'), \phi_X^{-1}(f^{-1}(k'))\right) \mid \phi_X \circ h = \text{id}_{f^{-1}(k')}\right\}.$$

We claim that

$$\left\{ h \in \text{Sets}\left(f^{-1}(k'), \phi_X^{-1}(f^{-1}(k'))\right) \mid \phi_X \circ h = \text{id}_{f^{-1}(k')}\right\} \cong \prod_{k \in f^{-1}(k')} \phi_X^{-1}(k),$$

so that the pullback is indeed given by $\Pi_f(X)$. There are two cases:

- (1) If $f^{-1}(k') = \emptyset$, then there is only one map from $f^{-1}(k')$ to $\phi_X^{-1}(f^{-1}(k'))$ (the inclusion), so $\text{Sets}\left(f^{-1}(k'), \phi_X^{-1}(f^{-1}(k'))\right) \cong \text{pt}$. Since products indexed by the empty set are isomorphic to pt, the isomorphism follows.
- (2) Otherwise, by the condition $\phi_X \circ h = \text{id}_{f^{-1}(k')}$, it follows that, for each $k \in f^{-1}(k')$, we must have

$$\phi_X(h(k)) = k,$$

and thus $h(k) \in \phi_X^{-1}(k)$. Therefore, a map from $f^{-1}(k')$ to $\phi_X^{-1}(f^{-1}(k'))$ consists of a choice of an element from $\phi_X^{-1}(k)$ for each $k \in f^{-1}(k')$, which is precisely given by an element of the product $\prod_{k \in f^{-1}(k')} \phi_X^{-1}(k)$, showing the bijection to be true.

Item 4, Internal Homs via Dependent Products: Indeed we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Pi_{\phi_X}(\phi_X^*(Y)) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Pi_{\phi_X}(X \times_K Y) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{k \in K} \prod_{x \in \phi_X^{-1}(k)} \text{pr}_1^{-1}(x) \\ &\cong \coprod_{k \in K} \prod_{x \in \phi_X^{-1}(k)} \{y \in Y \mid \phi_X(x) = \phi_Y(y)\} \\ &\cong \coprod_{k \in K} \prod_{x \in \phi_X^{-1}(k)} \{y \in Y \mid k = \phi_Y(y)\} \\ &\cong \coprod_{k \in K} \prod_{x \in \phi_X^{-1}(k)} \phi_Y^{-1}(k) \\ &\cong \coprod_{k \in K} \text{Sets}\left(\phi_X^{-1}(k), \phi_Y^{-1}(k)\right) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbf{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y). \end{aligned}$$

This finishes the proof. \square

9.2.4. Internal Homs. Let K be a set and let (X, ϕ_X) and (Y, ϕ_Y) be K -fibred sets.

00U7 Definition 9.2.4.1.1. The **internal Hom of fibred sets from** (X, ϕ_X) **to** (Y, ϕ_Y) is the fibred set $\mathbf{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y)$ consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y)$ defined by

$$\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{k \in K} \mathbf{Sets}(\phi_X^{-1}(k), \phi_Y^{-1}(k));$$

- *The Fibration.* The map of sets⁹

$$\phi_{\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y)}: \underbrace{\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y)}_{\coprod_{k \in K} \mathbf{Sets}(\phi_X^{-1}(k), \phi_Y^{-1}(k))} \rightarrow K$$

defined by sending a map $f: \phi_X^{-1}(k) \rightarrow \phi_Y^{-1}(k)$ to its index $k \in K$.

Proof. Omitted. \square

00U8 Proposition 9.2.4.1.2. Let K be a set and let (X, ϕ_X) and (Y, ϕ_Y) be K -fibred sets.

00U9

- (1) *Functionality.* Let (X, ϕ_X) and (Y, ϕ_Y) be K -fibred sets.

(a) The assignment $X \mapsto \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y)$ defines a functor

$$\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K)}(X, -): \mathbf{FibSets}(K) \rightarrow \mathbf{FibSets}(K).$$

(b) The assignment $Y \mapsto \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y)$ defines a functor

$$\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K)}(-, Y): \mathbf{FibSets}(K)^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{FibSets}(K).$$

(c) The assignment $(X, Y) \mapsto \mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y)$ defines a functor

$$\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K)}(-_1, -_2): \mathbf{FibSets}(K)^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{FibSets}(K) \rightarrow \mathbf{FibSets}(K).$$

00UA

- (2) *Internal Homs via Dependent Products.* We have

$$\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y) \cong \Pi_{\phi_X}(\phi_X^*(Y)).$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functionality:* Omitted.

Item 2, Internal Homs via Dependent Products: This was proved in [Item 4 of Proposition 9.2.3.1.3](#). \square

9.2.5. Adjointness for Fibred Sets. Let $f: K \rightarrow K'$ be a map of sets.

00UC Proposition 9.2.5.1.1. We have a triple adjunction

$$(\Sigma_f \dashv f^* \dashv \Pi_f): \mathbf{FibSets}(K) \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{\perp} \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{f^*} \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\perp} \end{array} \mathbf{FibSets}(K').$$

Σ_f
 Π_f

We offer two proofs. The first uses the corresponding adjunction for indexed sets (??) and the un/straightening equivalence together with its compatibility with dependent sums and products to “transfer” the adjunction to fibred sets, while the second is a direct proof.

⁹The fibres of the internal **Hom** of $\mathbf{FibSets}(K)$ are precisely the sets $\mathbf{Sets}(\phi_X^{-1}(k), \phi_Y^{-1}(k))$, i.e. we have

$$\phi_{\mathbf{Hom}_{\mathbf{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y)|k} \cong \mathbf{Sets}(\phi_X^{-1}(k), \phi_Y^{-1}(k))$$

for each $k \in K$.

Proof. *The Adjunction $\Sigma_f \dashv f^*$:* The adjunction

$$(\Sigma_f \dashv f^*): \text{ISets}(K) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\quad \Sigma_f \quad} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\quad f^* \quad} \end{array} \text{ISets}(K')$$

of ?? gives a unit and counit of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \eta: \text{id}_{\text{ISets}(K)} &\Rightarrow \Sigma_f \circ f^*, \\ \epsilon: f^* \circ \Sigma_f &\Rightarrow \text{id}_{\text{ISets}(K')}. \end{aligned}$$

With these in hand, we construct natural transformations

$$\begin{aligned} \eta': \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)} &\Rightarrow \Sigma_f \circ f^*, \\ \epsilon': f^* \circ \Sigma_f &\Rightarrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')} \end{aligned}$$

as follows:

- (1) *The Unit.* We define $\eta': \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)} \Rightarrow \Sigma_f \circ f^*$ as the pasting of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \text{FibSets}(K') & & \\ & \nearrow \Sigma_f & \uparrow \text{St}_{K'} & \searrow f^* & \\ \text{FibSets}(K) & (1) & \text{ISets}(K') & (2) & \text{FibSets}(K) \\ \uparrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)} & \swarrow \text{St}_K & \uparrow \Sigma_f & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{ISets}(K)} & \uparrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)} \\ & (3) & \text{ISets}(K) & (5) & \\ & \nearrow \text{Un}_K & \uparrow \eta & \searrow f^* & \swarrow \text{Un}_K \\ \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)} \quad} & \text{FibSets}(K), & & \end{array}$$

where:

- (a) Subdiagram (1) commutes by ?? of ??.
- (b) Subdiagram (2) commutes by ?? of ??.
- (c) Subdiagram (3) commutes by ??.
- (d) Subdiagram (4) commutes by ??.
- (e) Subdiagram (5) commutes by unitality of composition.

- (2) *The Counit.* We define $\epsilon': f^* \circ \Sigma_f \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}$ as the pasting of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') & & \\
 \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')} & \searrow \text{Un}_K & & \swarrow \text{Un}_K & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')} \\
 & (2) \quad \text{ISets}(K') - \text{id}_{\text{Sets}(K)} \rightarrow \text{ISets}(K') & (1) & \text{ISets}(K') - \text{id}_{\text{Sets}(K')} \rightarrow \text{ISets}(K') & (3) \\
 & \downarrow \text{St}_{K'} & & \uparrow \epsilon & \downarrow \text{St}_{K'} \\
 \text{FibSets}(K') & (4) & \text{ISets}(K) & (5) & \text{FibSets}(K') \\
 & \searrow f^* & \downarrow \text{St}_K & \swarrow \Sigma_f & \\
 & & \text{FibSets}(K) & &
 \end{array}$$

where:

- (a) Subdiagram (1) commutes by unitality of composition.
- (b) Subdiagram (2) commutes by ??.
- (c) Subdiagram (3) commutes by ??.
- (d) Subdiagram (4) commutes by ?? of ??.
- (e) Subdiagram (5) commutes by ?? of ??.

Next, we prove the left triangle identity,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') \\
 \uparrow \Sigma_f & \nearrow \eta & \uparrow \epsilon \\
 \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K)
 \end{array} = \begin{array}{ccc}
 \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') \\
 \uparrow \Sigma_f & \nearrow \text{id}_{\Sigma_f} & \uparrow \Sigma_f \\
 \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K)
 \end{array}$$

whose left side in our case looks like this:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') \\
 & & \uparrow \Sigma_f & & \downarrow \text{Un}_K & & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')} \\
 & & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K) \\
 & & \uparrow \text{St}_{K'} & & \downarrow \text{St}_{K'} & & \downarrow \text{St}_{K'} \\
 & & \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') \\
 & & \uparrow \text{f}^* & & \uparrow \text{f}^* & & \uparrow \text{f}^* \\
 & & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K) \\
 & & \uparrow \text{St}_K & & \downarrow \text{St}_K & & \downarrow \text{St}_K \\
 & & \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') \\
 & & \uparrow \Sigma_f & & \downarrow \Sigma_f & & \downarrow \Sigma_f \\
 & & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K)
 \end{array}$$

It can be rearranged into

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') \\
 & & \uparrow \Sigma_f & & \downarrow \text{Un}_K & & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')} \\
 & & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K) \\
 & & \uparrow \text{St}_{K'} & & \downarrow \text{St}_{K'} & & \downarrow \text{St}_{K'} \\
 & & \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') \\
 & & \uparrow \text{f}^* & & \uparrow \text{f}^* & & \uparrow \text{f}^* \\
 & & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K) \\
 & & \uparrow \text{St}_K & & \downarrow \text{St}_K & & \downarrow \text{St}_K \\
 & & \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}} & \text{FibSets}(K') \\
 & & \uparrow \Sigma_f & & \downarrow \Sigma_f & & \downarrow \Sigma_f \\
 & & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K)
 \end{array}$$

where:

- (1) Subdiagram (1) commutes by ??.
- (2) Subdiagram (2) commutes by unitality of composition.

(3) Subdiagram (3) commutes by ??.

And then, it can be rearranged into

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & \text{FibSets}(K') & & \text{FibSets}(K') & \\
 \Sigma_f \nearrow & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')} & & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')} & \\
 \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{St}_{K'}} & \text{ISets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{ISets}(K)}} & \text{ISets}(K') \\
 & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)} & \eta \parallel & \uparrow \epsilon \parallel & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')} \\
 & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{ISets}(K)} & \text{ISets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{St}_{K'}} \text{FibSets}(K') \\
 \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)} \uparrow & \text{St}_K \nearrow & \Sigma_f \nearrow & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{ISets}(K)} & \text{Un}_K \swarrow \\
 & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\Sigma_f} \text{FibSets}(K')
 \end{array}$$

which by the left triangle identity for (η, ϵ) , becomes

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & \text{FibSets}(K') & & \text{FibSets}(K') & \\
 \Sigma_f \nearrow & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')} & & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K')} & \\
 \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{St}_{K'}} & \text{ISets}(K') & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{ISets}(K)}} & \text{ISets}(K') \\
 & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)} & \Sigma_f \nearrow & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{ISets}(K)} & \text{Un}_K \swarrow \\
 & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{ISets}(K)} & \text{ISets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{St}_{K'}} \text{FibSets}(K') \\
 \text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)} \uparrow & \text{St}_K \nearrow & \text{id} & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{ISets}(K)} & \text{Un}_K \swarrow \\
 & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}} & \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\Sigma_f} \text{FibSets}(K')
 \end{array}$$

finishing the proof of the left triangle identity. The proof of the right triangle identity is similar, and is thus omitted.

The Adjunction $f^ \dashv \Pi_f$:* This proof is similar to the proof of the adjunction $\Sigma_f \dashv f^*$, and is thus omitted. \square

We proceed to the direct proof of [Proposition 9.2.5.1.1](#).

Proof. *The Adjunction $\Sigma_f \dashv f^*$:* We claim there's a bijection

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(\Sigma_f(X), Y) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, f^*(Y)),$$

natural in $(X, \phi_X) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K))$ and $(Y, \phi_Y) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K'))$:

- *Map I.* We define a map

$$\Phi_{X,Y}: \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(\Sigma_f(X), Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, f^*(Y)),$$

by sending a morphism

$$\xi: \Sigma_f(X) \rightarrow Y, \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\xi} & Y \\ \phi_X \searrow & K & \swarrow \phi_Y \\ & f \searrow & \\ & K' & \end{array}$$

of K' -fibred sets to the morphism

$$\xi^\dagger: X \xrightarrow{\xi^\dagger} K \times_{K'} Y, \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\xi^\dagger} & K \times_{K'} Y \\ \phi_X \searrow & & \swarrow \text{pr}_1 \\ & K' & \end{array}$$

of K -fibred sets given by the dashed morphism in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 X & \xrightarrow{\quad \xi \quad} & Y \\
 \exists! \searrow & & \downarrow \phi_Y \\
 & K \times_{K'} Y - \text{pr}_2 \rightarrow Y & \\
 \phi_X \swarrow & \perp & \downarrow \\
 & \text{pr}_1 \downarrow & \\
 & K \xrightarrow{f} K' &
 \end{array}$$

- *Map II.* We define a map

$\Psi_{X,Y}: \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, f^*(Y)) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(\Sigma_f(X), Y)$,
given by sending a map

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \xi: X \rightarrow f^*(Y), & X \xrightarrow{\xi} K \times_{K'} Y & \\
 & \phi_X \searrow \quad \swarrow \text{pr}_1 & \\
 & K' &
 \end{array}$$

of K' -fibred sets to the map

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \xi^\dagger: \Sigma_f(X) \rightarrow Y, & X \xrightarrow{\xi^\dagger} Y & \\
 & \phi_X \searrow \quad \swarrow \phi_Y & \\
 & K \xrightarrow{f} K' &
 \end{array}$$

of K -fibred sets given by

$$\xi^\dagger \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{pr}_2 \circ \xi,$$

where we indeed have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \phi_Y \circ (\text{pr}_2 \circ \xi) &= (\phi_Y \circ \text{pr}_2) \circ \xi \\
 &= (f \circ \text{pr}_1) \circ \xi && \text{(by the pullback square of } K \times_{K'} Y \text{)} \\
 &= f \circ (\text{pr}_1 \circ \xi) \\
 &= f \circ \phi_X. && \text{(since } \xi \text{ is a morphism of } K' \text{-fibred sets)}
 \end{aligned}$$

- *Naturality I.* We need to show that, given a morphism

$$\alpha: (X, \phi_X) \rightarrow (X', \phi_{X'})$$

of K -fibred sets, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(\Sigma_f(X'), Y) & \xrightarrow{\Phi_{X',Y}} & \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X', f^*(Y)), \\
 \Sigma_f(\alpha)^* \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha^* \\
 \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(\Sigma_f(X), Y) & \xrightarrow{\Phi_{X,Y}} & \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, f^*(Y))
 \end{array}$$

commutes. Indeed, given a morphism

$$\xi: \Sigma_f(X') \rightarrow Y, \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X' & \xrightarrow{\xi} & Y \\ \phi_{X'} \searrow & K & \swarrow \phi_Y \\ f \downarrow & & K' \end{array}$$

of K' -fibred-sets, the map $\Phi_{X',Y}(\xi) \circ \alpha$ is the composition, coloured in **vermillion**, of the dashed arrow with α in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & X' & \xrightarrow{\exists!} & K \times_{K'} Y - \text{pr}_2 \rightarrow Y \\ \phi_{X'} \circ \alpha \searrow & & \phi_{X'} \downarrow & \exists! \nearrow & \downarrow \text{pr}_1 \\ & & X' & \xrightarrow{\xi} & K \xrightarrow{f} K' \\ & & \phi_{X'} \searrow & \xi \downarrow & \downarrow \phi_Y \\ & & K & \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_2} & Y \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ & & K & \xrightarrow{f} & K' \end{array}$$

while $\Phi_{X,Y}(\xi \circ \Sigma_f(\alpha))$ is given by the dashed arrow, coloured in **blue**. Since both the **blue arrow** and the **vermillion arrow** make the outer pullback diagram commute, it follows from the universal property of the pullback that they must be equal, i.e. that

$$\Phi_{X',Y}(\xi) \circ \alpha = \Phi_{X,Y}(\xi \circ \Sigma_f(\alpha)),$$

showing that the naturality diagram above indeed commutes.

- *Naturality II.* We need to show that, given a morphism

$$\beta: (Y, \phi_Y) \rightarrow (Y', \phi_{Y'})$$

of K -fibred sets, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(\Sigma_f(X), Y) & \xrightarrow{\Phi_{X,Y}} & \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, f^*(Y)), \\ \beta_* \downarrow & & \downarrow f^*(\beta)_* \\ \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(\Sigma_f(X), Y') & \xrightarrow{\Phi_{X,Y'}} & \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, f^*(Y')) \end{array}$$

commutes. Indeed, given a morphism

$$\xi: \Sigma_f(X') \rightarrow Y, \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X' & \xrightarrow{\xi} & Y \\ \phi_{X'} \searrow & K & \swarrow \phi_Y \\ f \downarrow & & K' \end{array}$$

of K' -fibred-sets, the map $f^*(\beta) \circ \Phi_{X,Y}(\xi)$ is the composition, coloured in **vermillion**, of the dashed arrow from X to $K \times_{K'} Y$

with the dashed arrow from $K \times_{K'} Y$ to $K \times_{K'} Y'$ in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
X & \xrightarrow{\quad \xi \quad} & Y & & \\
\downarrow \phi_X & \nearrow \exists! & \downarrow \phi_Y & \nearrow \beta & \\
K \times_{K'} Y & \dashrightarrow & K \times_{K'} Y' & \dashrightarrow & Y' \\
\downarrow f & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \phi_{Y'} & \\
K & \xrightarrow{f} & K & \xrightarrow{f} & K',
\end{array}$$

while $\Phi_{X,Y'}(\beta \circ \xi)$ is given by the dashed arrow from X to $K \times_{K'} Y'$, coloured in blue. Since both the blue arrow and the vermillion arrow make the outer pullback diagram for $K \times_{K'} Y'$ commute, it follows from the universal property of the pullback that they must be equal, i.e. that

$$f^*(\beta) \circ \Phi_{X,Y}(\xi) = \Phi_{X,Y'}(\beta \circ \xi),$$

showing that the naturality diagram above indeed commutes.

- *Invertibility I.* We claim that

$$\Psi_{X,Y} \circ \Phi_{X,Y} = \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(\Sigma_f(X), Y)}.$$

Indeed, $\Phi_{X,Y}$ sends a map

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{\xi} & Y \\
\xi: \Sigma_f(X) \rightarrow Y, & \downarrow \phi_X & \swarrow \phi_Y \\
& K & \\
& \downarrow f & \\
& K' &
\end{array}$$

of K' -fibred sets to the dashed morphism in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
X & \xrightarrow{\quad \xi \quad} & Y & & \\
\downarrow \phi_X & \nearrow \exists! & \downarrow \phi_Y & & \\
K \times_{K'} Y & \dashrightarrow & Y & & \\
\downarrow \text{pr}_1 & \downarrow & \downarrow & & \\
K & \xrightarrow{f} & K' & &
\end{array}$$

and $\Psi_{X,Y}$ then postcomposes that map with pr_2 , which, by the commutativity of the diagram above, is ξ again, showing the claimed equality to be true.

- *Invertibility II.* We claim that

$$\Phi_{X,Y} \circ \Psi_{X,Y} = \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, f^*(Y))}.$$

Indeed, $\Psi_{X,Y}$ sends a map

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\xi} & K \times_{K'} Y \\ \xi: X \rightarrow f^*(Y), & \phi_X \searrow & \swarrow \text{pr}_1 \\ & K' & \end{array}$$

of K' -fibred sets to $\text{pr}_2 \circ \xi$, which is then sent by $\Phi_{X,Y}$ to the dashed morphism in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{\quad \exists! \quad} & K \times_{K'} Y & \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_2 \circ \xi} & Y \\ \phi_X \curvearrowleft & \downarrow & \downarrow \text{pr}_1 & \downarrow & \downarrow \phi_Y \\ & (\dagger) & & & \\ & & K \times_{K'} Y & \dashv & Y \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ & & K & \xrightarrow{f} & K', \end{array}$$

which, by the commutativity of the subdiagram marked with (\dagger) , is given by ξ again, showing the claimed equality to be true.

The Adjunction $f^ \dashv \Pi_f$:* We claim there's a bijection

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(f^*(X), Y) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(X, \Pi_f(Y))$$

natural in $(X, \phi_X) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K'))$ and $(Y, \phi_Y) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K))$:

- (1) *Map I.* We define a map

$$\Phi_{X,Y}: \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(f^*(X), Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(X, \Pi_f(Y))$$

defined as follows. Given a morphism

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \xi: f^*(X) \rightarrow Y, & K \times_{K'} X & \xrightarrow{\xi} Y \\ & \text{pr}_1 \searrow & \swarrow \phi_Y \\ & K & \end{array}$$

of K -fibred sets, where

$$\begin{aligned} f^*(X) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} K \times_{K'} X \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(k, x) \in K \times X \mid f(k) = \phi_X(x)\}, \end{aligned}$$

we construct a morphism

$$\xi^\dagger: X \rightarrow \Pi_f(Y), \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\xi^\dagger} & \Pi_f(Y) \\ \phi_X \searrow & \swarrow \Pi_f(\phi_Y) & \\ & K' & \end{array}$$

of K' -fibred sets, where

$$\Pi_f(Y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{k' \in K'} \prod_{k \in f^{-1}(k')} \phi_Y^{-1}(k),$$

by defining

$$\xi^\dagger(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\xi(k, x))_{k \in f^{-1}(\phi_X(x))}$$

for each $x \in X$. There are two things to be checked here:

- We have $\xi(k, x) \in \phi_Y^{-1}(\phi_X(x))$ since $\phi_Y(\xi(k, x)) = \phi_X(x)$ as ξ is a morphism of K -fibred sets.
- The map ξ^\dagger is indeed a morphism of K' -fibred sets, i.e. we have

$$\Pi_f(\phi_Y) \circ \xi^\dagger = \phi_X,$$

since

$$[\Pi_f(\phi_Y)]((\xi(k, x))_{k \in f^{-1}(\phi_X(x))}) = \phi_X(x)$$

for each $x \in X$.

(2) *Map II.* We define a map

$$\Psi_{X,Y}: \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(X, \Pi_f(Y)) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(f^*(X), Y)$$

as follows. Given a morphism

$$\xi: X \rightarrow \Pi_f(Y), \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\xi} & \Pi_f(Y) \\ \phi_X \searrow & \swarrow \Pi_f(\phi_Y) & \\ & K' & \end{array}$$

of K' -fibred sets, where

$$\Pi_f(Y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{k' \in K'} \prod_{k \in f^{-1}(k')} \phi_Y^{-1}(k),$$

we construct a morphism

$$\xi^\dagger: f^*(X) \rightarrow Y, \quad \begin{array}{ccc} K \times_{K'} X & \xrightarrow{\xi^\dagger} & Y \\ \text{pr}_1 \searrow & \swarrow \phi_Y & \\ & K & \end{array}$$

of K -fibred sets, where

$$\begin{aligned} f^*(X) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} K \times_{K'} X \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(k, x) \in K \times X \mid f(k) = \phi_X(x)\}, \end{aligned}$$

by defining

$$\xi^\dagger(k, x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \xi(x)_k$$

for each $(k, x) \in f^*(X)$, where $\xi(x)_k$ is the k th component of $\xi(x) = (y_k)_{k \in f^{-1}(k')}$. We also need to check that ξ^\dagger is a morphism

of K -fibred sets, i.e. that

$$\phi_Y \circ \xi^\dagger = \text{pr}_1,$$

or

$$\phi_Y(\xi^\dagger(k, x)) = k,$$

for each $(k, x) \in f^*(X)$, which is clear, since $\xi^\dagger(k, x) \in \phi_Y^{-1}(k)$ by definition.

- (3) *Naturality I.* We need to show that, given a morphism

$$\alpha: (X, \phi_X) \rightarrow (X', \phi_{X'})$$

of K' -fibred sets, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(f^*(X'), Y) & \xrightarrow{\Phi_{X', Y}} & \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X', \Pi_f(Y)) \\ f^*(\alpha)^* \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha^* \\ \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(f^*(X), Y) & \xrightarrow{\Phi_{X, Y}} & \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, \Pi_f(Y)) \end{array}$$

commutes. Indeed, given a morphism $\xi: f^*(X') \rightarrow Y$ of K' -fibred sets, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [[\Phi_{X, Y} \circ f^*(\alpha)](\xi)](x) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [\Phi_{X, Y}(\xi \circ f^*(\alpha))](x) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} ([\xi \circ f^*(\alpha)](k, x))_{k \in f^{-1}(\phi_X(x))} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\xi(k, \alpha(x)))_{k \in f^{-1}(\phi_X(x))} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \alpha^*\left((\xi(k, x))_{k \in f^{-1}(\phi_X(x))}\right) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \alpha^*\left(\xi^\dagger(x)\right) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [[\alpha^* \circ \Phi_{X, Y}](\xi)](x) \end{aligned}$$

for each $x \in X$.

- (4) *Naturality II.* We need to show that, given a morphism

$$\beta: (Y, \phi_Y) \rightarrow (Y', \phi_{Y'})$$

of K -fibred sets, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(f^*(X), Y) & \xrightarrow{\Phi_{X, Y}} & \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, \Pi_f(Y)) \\ \beta_* \downarrow & & \downarrow \Pi_f(\beta)_* \\ \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(f^*(X), Y') & \xrightarrow{\Phi_{X, Y'}} & \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, \Pi_f(Y')) \end{array}$$

commutes. Indeed, given a morphism $\xi: X \rightarrow \Pi_f(Y)$ of K -fibred sets, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [[\Phi_{X,Y'} \circ \beta_*](\xi)](x) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [\Phi_{X,Y'}(\beta \circ \xi)](x) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [\Phi_{X,Y'}(\beta \circ \xi)](x) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} ([\beta \circ \xi](k, x))_{k \in f^{-1}(\phi_X(x))} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\beta(\xi(k, x)))_{k \in f^{-1}(\phi_X(x))} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Pi_f(\beta)_* \left((\xi(k, x))_{k \in f^{-1}(\phi_X(x))} \right) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [\Pi_f(\beta)_* \circ \xi^\dagger](x) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [\Pi_f(\beta)_* \circ \Phi_{X,Y'}(\xi)](x) \end{aligned}$$

for each $x \in X$.

(5) *Invertibility I.* We claim that

$$\Psi_{X,Y} \circ \Phi_{X,Y} = \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(f^*(X), Y)}.$$

Indeed, given a morphism $\xi: f^*(X') \rightarrow Y$ of K' -fibred sets, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [[\Psi_{X,Y} \circ \Phi_{X,Y}](\xi)](k, x) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [\Psi_{X,Y}(\Phi_{X,Y}(\xi))](k, x) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} ([\Phi_{X,Y}(\xi)](x))_k \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left((\xi(k_1, x))_{k_1 \in f^{-1}(\phi_X(x))} \right)_k \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \xi(k, x) \end{aligned}$$

for each $(k, x) \in f^*(X)$, and thus the stated equality follows.

(6) *Invertibility II.* We claim that

$$\Phi_{X,Y} \circ \Psi_{X,Y} = \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K')}(X, \Pi_f(Y))}.$$

Indeed, given a morphism $\xi: X \rightarrow \Pi_f(Y)$ of K -fibred sets, write

$$\xi(x) = (y_k)_{k \in f^{-1}(k'_x)}.$$

We then have

$$\begin{aligned} [[\Phi_{X,Y} \circ \Psi_{X,Y}](\xi)](x) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [\Phi_{X,Y}(\Psi_{X,Y}(\xi))](x) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} ([\Psi_{X,Y}(\xi)](k_1, x))_{k_1 \in f^{-1}(\phi_X(x))} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left((\xi(k_1))_{k_1} \right)_{k_1 \in f^{-1}(\phi_X(x))} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left(\left((y_k)_{k \in f^{-1}(k'_x)} \right)_{k_1} \right)_{k_1 \in f^{-1}(\phi_X(x))} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (y_{k_1})_{k_1 \in f^{-1}(\phi_X(x))} \\ &= (y_{k_1})_{k_1 \in f^{-1}(k'_x)} \\ &= (y_k)_{k \in f^{-1}(k'_x)} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \xi(x) \end{aligned}$$

for each $x \in X$, where the equality $\phi_X(x) = k'_x$ follows from the fact that ξ is a morphism of K' -fibred sets. Thus the stated equality follows.

This finishes the proof. \square

Appendices

9.A. Other Chapters

Sets	(1) Sets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
	(2) Constructions With Sets	Monoids With Zero
	(3) Pointed Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
	(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
	(5) Relations	Groups
	(6) Spans	(29) Groups
	(7) Posets	(30) Constructions With Groups
Indexed and Fibred Sets	(7) Indexed Sets	Hyper Algebra
	(8) Fibred Sets	(31) Hypermonoids
	(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(32) Hypergroups
Category Theory	(11) Categories	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
	(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(34) Quantales
	(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	Near-Rings
	(14) Constructions With Categories	(35) Near-Semirings
	(15) Profunctors	(36) Near-Rings
	(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	Real Analysis
	(17) Kan Extensions	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
Bicategories	(18) Bicategories	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
	(19) Internal Adjunctions	Measure Theory
Internal Category Theory	(20) Internal Categories	(39) Measurable Spaces
Cyclic Stuff	(21) The Cycle Category	(40) Measures and Integration
Cubical Stuff	(22) The Cube Category	Probability Theory
Globular Stuff	(23) The Globe Category	(40) Probability Theory
Cellular Stuff	(24) The Cell Category	Stochastic Analysis
Monoids	(25) Monoids	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
		(42) Itô Calculus
		(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
		Differential Geometry
		(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
		Schemes
		(45) Schemes

9.2. Other Chapters

Sets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
(1) Sets	
(2) Constructions With Sets	Monoids With Zero
(3) Pointed Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
(5) Relations	
(6) Spans	Groups
(7) Posets	(29) Groups
Indexed and Fibred Sets	(30) Constructions With Groups
(7) Indexed Sets	
(8) Fibred Sets	Hyper Algebra
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(31) Hypermonoids
Category Theory	(32) Hypergroups
(11) Categories	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(34) Quantales
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	
(14) Constructions With Categories	Near-Rings
(15) Profunctors	(35) Near-Semirings
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	(36) Near-Rings
(17) Kan Extensions	Real Analysis
Bicategories	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(18) Bicategories	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
(19) Internal Adjunctions	
Internal Category Theory	Measure Theory
(20) Internal Categories	(39) Measurable Spaces
Cyclic Stuff	(40) Measures and Integration
(21) The Cycle Category	Probability Theory
Cubical Stuff	(40) Probability Theory
(22) The Cube Category	Stochastic Analysis
Globular Stuff	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
(23) The Globe Category	(42) Itô Calculus
Cellular Stuff	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
(24) The Cell Category	Differential Geometry
Monoids	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
(25) Monoids	Schemes
	(45) Schemes

CHAPTER 10

Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

00UD This chapter contains a discussion of the un/straightening equivalence in the context of sets, as well as a general discussion of indexed and fibred sets. In particular, it contains:

- (1) A discussion of indexed sets (i.e. functors $K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ with K a set), constructions with them like dependent sums and dependent products, and their properties (????);
- (2) A discussion of fibred sets (i.e. maps of sets $X \rightarrow K$), constructions with them like dependent sums and dependent products, and their properties (????);
- (3) A discussion of the un/straightening equivalence for indexed and fibred sets ([Section 10.1](#)).

10.1. Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

10.1.1. Straightening for Fibred Sets. Let K be a set and let (X, ϕ) be a K -fibred set.

00UG **Definition 10.1.1.1.1.** The **straightening of** (X, ϕ) is the K -indexed set

$$\text{St}_K(X, \phi): K_{\text{disc}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$$

defined by

$$\text{St}_K(X, \phi)_x \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \phi^{-1}(x)$$

for each $x \in K$.

00UH **Proposition 10.1.1.1.2.** Let K be a set.

00UJ (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $(X, \phi) \mapsto \text{St}_K(X, \phi)$ defines a functor

$$\text{St}_K: \text{FibSets}(K) \rightarrow \text{ISets}(K)$$

- *Action on Objects.* For each $(X, \phi) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K))$, we have

$$[\text{St}_K](X, \phi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{St}_K(X, \phi);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $(X, \phi), (Y, \psi) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\text{St}_{K|X,Y}: \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K)}(\text{St}_K(X), \text{St}_K(Y))$$

of St_K at (X, Y) is given by sending a morphism

$$f: (X, \phi) \rightarrow (Y, \psi)$$

of K -fibred sets to the morphism

$$\text{St}_K(f): \text{St}_K(X, \phi) \rightarrow \text{St}_K(Y, \psi)$$

of K -indexed sets defined by

$$\text{St}_K(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{f_x^*\}_{x \in K},$$

- where f_x^* is the transport map associated to f at $x \in K$ of ??.
- 00UK** (2) *Interaction With Change of Base/Indexing.* Let $f: K \rightarrow K'$ be a map of sets. The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow{f^*} & \text{FibSets}(K) \\ \text{St}_{K'} \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{St}_K \\ \text{ISets}(K') & \xrightarrow{f^*} & \text{ISets}(K) \end{array}$$

commutes.

- 00UL** (3) *Interaction With Dependent Sums.* Let $f: K \rightarrow K'$ be a map of sets. The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\Sigma_f} & \text{FibSets}(K') \\ \text{St}_K \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{St}_{K'} \\ \text{ISets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\Sigma_f} & \text{ISets}(K') \end{array}$$

commutes.

- 00UM** (4) *Interaction With Dependent Products.* Let $f: K \rightarrow K'$ be a map of sets. The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Sets}_{/K} & \xrightarrow{\Pi_f} & \text{FibSets}(K') \\ \text{St}_K \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{St}_{K'} \\ \text{ISets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\Pi_f} & \text{ISets}(K') \end{array}$$

commutes.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Omitted.

Item 2, Interaction With Change of Base/Indexing: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{St}_K(f^*(X, \phi))_x &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{St}_K(K \times_{K'} X)_x \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\text{pr}_1^{K \times_{K'} X})^{-1}(x) \\ &= \{(k, y) \in K \times_{K'} X \mid \text{pr}_1^{K \times_{K'} X}(k, y) = x\} \\ &= \{(k, y) \in K \times_{K'} X \mid k = x\} \\ &= \{(k, y) \in K \times X \mid k = x \text{ and } f(k) = \phi(y)\} \\ &\cong \{y \in X \mid \phi(y) = f(x)\} \\ &= \phi^{-1}(f(x)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f^*(\phi^{-1}(x)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f^*(\text{St}_{K'}(X, \phi)_x) \end{aligned}$$

for each $(X, \phi) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K'))$ and each $x \in K$, and similarly for morphisms.

Item 3, Interaction With Dependent Sums: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{St}_{K'}(\Sigma_f(X, \phi))_x &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Sigma_f(\phi)^{-1}(x) \\ &\cong \coprod_{\substack{y \in X \\ f(y)=x}} \phi^{-1}(y) \\ &\cong \Sigma_f(\phi^{-1}(x)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Sigma_f(\text{St}_K(X, \phi)_x) \end{aligned}$$

for each $(X, \phi) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K))$ and each $x \in K'$, where we have used ?? of ?? for the first bijection, and similarly for morphisms.

Item 4, Interaction With Dependent Products: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{St}_{K'}(\Pi_f(X, \phi))_x &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Pi_f(\phi)^{-1}(x) \\ &\cong \prod_{\substack{y \in X \\ f(y)=x}} \phi^{-1}(y) \\ &\cong \Pi_f(\phi^{-1}(x)) \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Pi_f(\text{St}_K(X, \phi)_x) \end{aligned}$$

for each $(X, \phi) \in \text{Obj}(\text{FibSets}(K))$ and each $x \in K'$, where we have used ?? of ?? for the first bijection, and similarly for morphisms. \square

10.1.2. Unstraightening for Indexed Sets. Let K be a set and let X be a K -indexed set.

00UP Definition 10.1.2.1.1. The **unstraightening** of X is the K -fibred set

$$\phi_{\text{Un}_K} : \text{Un}_K(X) \rightarrow K$$

consisting of

- *The Underlying Set.* The set $\text{Un}_K(X)$ defined by

$$\text{Un}_K(X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{x \in K} X_x;$$

- *The Fibration.* The map of sets

$$\phi_{\text{Un}_K} : \text{Un}_K(X) \rightarrow K$$

defined by sending an element of $\coprod_{x \in K} X_x$ to its index in K .

00UQ Proposition 10.1.2.1.2. Let K be a set.

00UR (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $X \mapsto \text{Un}_K(X)$ defines a functor

$$\text{Un}_K : \text{ISets}(K) \rightarrow \text{FibSets}(K)$$

- *Action on Objects.* For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets}(K))$, we have

$$[\text{Un}_K](X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Un}_K(X);$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets}(K))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\text{Un}_{K|X,Y} : \text{Hom}_{\text{ISets}(K)}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{FibSets}(K)}(\text{Un}_K(X), \text{Un}_K(Y))$$

of Un_K at (X, Y) is defined by

$$\text{Un}_{K|X,Y}(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{x \in K} f_x^*.$$

- 00US** (2) *Interaction With Fibres.* We have a bijection of sets

$$\phi_{\text{Un}_K}^{-1}(x) \cong X_x$$

for each $x \in K$.

- 00UT** (3) *As a Pullback.* We have a bijection of sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Un}_K(X) & \rightarrow & \text{Sets}_* \\ \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow \text{忘} \\ \text{Un}_K(X) \cong K_{\text{disc}} \times_{\text{Sets}} \text{Sets}_*, & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ K_{\text{disc}} & \xrightarrow[X]{} & \text{Sets}. \end{array}$$

- 00UU** (4) *As a Colimit.* We have a bijection of sets

$$\text{Un}_K(X) \cong \text{colim}(X).$$

- 00UV** (5) *Interaction With Change of Indexing/Base.* Let $f: K \rightarrow K'$ be a map of sets. The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{ISets}(K') & \xrightarrow{f^*} & \text{ISets}(K) \\ \text{Un}_{K'} \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{Un}_K \\ \text{FibSets}(K') & \xrightarrow[f^*]{} & \text{FibSets}(K) \end{array}$$

commutes.

- 00UW** (6) *Interaction With Dependent Sums.* Let $f: K \rightarrow K'$ be a map of sets. The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{ISets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\Sigma_f} & \text{ISets}(K') \\ \text{Un}_K \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{Un}_{K'} \\ \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow[\Sigma_f]{} & \text{FibSets}(K') \end{array}$$

commutes.

- 00UX** (7) *Interaction With Dependent Products.* Let $f: K \rightarrow K'$ be a map of sets. The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{ISets}(K) & \xrightarrow{\Pi_f} & \text{ISets}(K') \\ \text{Un}_K \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{Un}_{K'} \\ \text{FibSets}(K) & \xrightarrow[\Pi_f]{} & \text{FibSets}(K') \end{array}$$

commutes.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Omitted.

Item 2, Interaction With Fibres: Omitted.

Item 3, As a Pullback: Omitted.

Item 4, As a Colimit: Clear.

Item 5, Interaction With Change of Indexing/Base: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Un}_K(f^*(X)) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Un}_K(X \circ f) \\
&\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{x \in K} X_{f(x)} \\
&\cong \left\{ (x, (y, a)) \in K \times \coprod_{y \in K'} X_y \mid f(x) = y \right\} \\
&\cong K \times_{K'} \coprod_{y \in K'} X_y \\
&\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} K \times_{K'} \text{Un}_{K'}(X) \\
&\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f^*(\text{Un}_{K'}(X))
\end{aligned}$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets}(K'))$. Similarly, it can be shown that we also have $\text{Un}_K(f^*(\phi)) = f^*(\text{Un}_{K'}(\phi))$ and that $\text{Un}_K \circ f^* = f^* \circ \text{Un}_{K'}$ also holds on morphisms.

Item 6, Interaction With Dependent Sums: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Un}_{K'}(\Sigma_f(X)) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{x \in K'} \Sigma_f(X)_x \\
&\cong \coprod_{x \in K'} \coprod_{y \in f^{-1}(x)} X_y \\
&\cong \coprod_{y \in K} X_y \\
&\cong \text{Un}_K(X) \\
&\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Sigma_f(\text{Un}_K(X))
\end{aligned}$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets}(K))$, where we have used ?? of ?? for the first bijection. Similarly, it can be shown that we also have $\text{Un}_{K'}(\Sigma_f(\phi)) = \Sigma_f(\phi_{\text{Un}_K})$ and that $\text{Un}_{K'} \circ \Sigma_f = \Sigma_f \circ \text{Un}_K$ also holds on morphisms.

Item 7, Interaction With Dependent Products: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Un}_{K'}(\Pi_f(X)) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \coprod_{x \in K'} \Pi_f(X)_x \\
&\cong \coprod_{x \in K'} \prod_{y \in f^{-1}(x)} X_y \\
&\cong \left\{ (x, h) \in \coprod_{x \in K'} \text{Sets}(f^{-1}(x), \phi_{\text{Un}_K}^{-1}(f^{-1}(x))) \mid \phi \circ h = \text{id}_{f^{-1}(x)} \right\} \\
&\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Pi_f \left(\coprod_{y \in K} X_y \right) \\
&\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Pi_f(\text{Un}_K(X))
\end{aligned}$$

for each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{ISets}(K))$, where we have used ?? of ?? for the first bijection. Similarly, it can be shown that we also have $\text{Un}_{K'}(\Pi_f(\phi)) = \Pi_f(\phi_{\text{Un}_K})$ and that $\text{Un}_{K'} \circ \Pi_f = \Pi_f \circ \text{Un}_K$ also holds on morphisms. \square

10.1.3. The Un/Straightening Equivalence.

00UZ Theorem 10.1.3.1.1. We have an isomorphism of categories

$$(St_K \dashv Un_K): \quad \text{FibSets}(K) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\text{St}_K} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\text{Un}_K} \end{array} \text{ISets}(K).$$

Proof. Omitted. □

10.2. Miscellany

10.2.1. Other Kinds of Un/Straightening.

00V2 Remark 10.2.1.1.1. There are also other kinds of un/straightening for sets, where **Sets** is replaced by **Rel** or **Span**:

- *Un/Straightening With Rel, I.* We have an isomorphism of sets

$$\text{Rel}(A, B) \cong \text{Sets}(B \times A, \{\text{true}, \text{false}\}).$$

by the definition of a relation from A to B , ??.

- *Un/Straightening With Rel, II.* We have an equivalence of categories

$$\text{LaxFun}(K_{\text{disc}}, \text{Rel}) \xrightarrow{\text{eq.}} \text{Cats}_{/K_{\text{disc}}}^{\text{fth}},$$

where $\text{Cats}_{/K_{\text{disc}}}^{\text{fth}}$ is the full subcategory of $\text{Cats}_{/K_{\text{disc}}}$ spanned by the faithful functors; see [Nie04, Theorem 3.1].

- *Un/Straightening With Span, I.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, we have a morphism of sets

$$\text{Span}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Sets}(A \times B, \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\})$$

which assemble into an equivalence of categories between $\text{Span}(\text{Sets})$ and the category **MRel** of “multirelations”; see ??.

- *Un/Straightening With Span, II.* We have an equivalence of categories

$$\text{LaxFun}(K_{\text{disc}}, \text{Span}) \xrightarrow{\text{eq.}} \text{Cats}_{/K_{\text{disc}}};$$

see [nLa24a, Section 3].

Appendices

10.A. Other Chapters

Sets	(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets
(1) Sets	
(2) Constructions With Sets	
(3) Pointed Sets	
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(11) Categories
(5) Relations	(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
(6) Spans	(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
(7) Posets	(14) Constructions With Categories
Indexed and Fibred Sets	
(7) Indexed Sets	(15) Profunctors
(8) Fibred Sets	(16) Cartesian Closed Categories

(17) Kan Extensions		
Bicategories		
(18) Bicategories		
(19) Internal Adjunctions		
Internal Category Theory		
(20) Internal Categories		
Cyclic Stuff		
(21) The Cycle Category		
Cubical Stuff		
(22) The Cube Category		
Globular Stuff		
(23) The Globe Category		
Cellular Stuff		
(24) The Cell Category		
Monoids		
(25) Monoids	With	
(26) Constructions	With	
Monoids		
Monoids With Zero		
(27) Monoids With Zero		
(28) Constructions	With	
Monoids With Zero		
Groups		
(29) Groups		
(30) Constructions With Groups		
Hyper Algebra		
(31) Hypermonoids		

10.2. Other Chapters

Sets	(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets
(1) Sets	
(2) Constructions With Sets	
(3) Pointed Sets	
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	Category Theory
(5) Relations	
(6) Spans	
(7) Posets	
Indexed and Fibred Sets	
(7) Indexed Sets	
(8) Fibred Sets	

Bicategories	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyper-rings
(18) Bicategories	
(19) Internal Adjunctions	
Internal Category Theory	(34) Quantales
(20) Internal Categories	
Cyclic Stuff	Near-Rings
(21) The Cycle Category	(35) Near-Semirings
Cubical Stuff	(36) Near-Rings
(22) The Cube Category	Real Analysis
Globular Stuff	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(23) The Globe Category	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
Cellular Stuff	Measure Theory
(24) The Cell Category	(39) Measurable Spaces
Monoids	(40) Measures and Integration
(25) Monoids	Probability Theory
(26) Constructions	(40) Probability Theory
Monoids	With Stochastic Analysis
Monoids With Zero	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
(27) Monoids With Zero	(42) Itô Calculus
(28) Constructions	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
Monoids With Zero	Differential Geometry
Groups	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
(29) Groups	Schemes
(30) Constructions With Groups	(45) Schemes
Hyper Algebra	
(31) Hypermonoids	
(32) Hypergroups	

Part 3

Category Theory

CHAPTER 11

Categories

00V3 Create tags (see [MSE 350788] for some of these):

- (1) define bicategory $\text{Adj}(C)$
- (2) internal **Hom** in categories of co/Cartesian fibrations
- (3) <https://mathoverflow.net/questions/460146/universal-property-of-isbell-duality>
- (4) <http://www.tac.mta.ca/tac/volumes/36/12/36-12abs.html>
- (5) justify adjunctions via homs
- (6) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/enrichment+versus+internalisation>
- (7) <https://arxiv.org/pdf/2004.08964.pdf>

11.1. Categories

11.1.1. Foundations.

00V6 **Definition 11.1.1.1.** A category $(C, \circ^C, \mathbb{1}^C)$ consists of^{1,2}

- *Objects.* A class $\text{Obj}(C)$ of **objects**;
- *Morphisms.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(C)$, a class $\text{Hom}_C(A, B)$, called the **class of morphisms of C from A to B** ;
- *Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(C)$, a map of sets

$$\mathbb{1}^C_A : \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Hom}_C(A, A),$$

called the **unit map of C at A** , determining a morphism

$$\text{id}_A : A \rightarrow A$$

of C , called the **identity morphism of A** ;

- *Composition.* For each $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(C)$, a map of sets

$$\circ^C_{A,B,C} : \text{Hom}_C(B, C) \times \text{Hom}_C(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_C(A, C),$$

called the **composition map of C at (A, B, C)** ;

such that the following conditions are satisfied:

¹*Further Notation:* We also write $C(A, B)$ for $\text{Hom}_C(A, B)$.

²*Further Notation:* We write $\text{Mor}(C)$ for the class of all morphisms of C .

(1) *Associativity.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \text{Hom}_C(C, D) \times (\text{Hom}_C(B, C) \times \text{Hom}_C(A, B)) & \\
 & \swarrow \alpha_{\text{Hom}_C(C, D), \text{Hom}_C(B, C), \text{Hom}_C(A, B)}^{\text{Sets}} & \searrow \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_C(C, D) \times \circ_{A, B, C}^C} \\
 (\text{Hom}_C(C, D) \times \text{Hom}_C(B, C)) \times \text{Hom}_C(A, B) & & \text{Hom}_C(C, D) \times \text{Hom}_C(A, C) \\
 & \swarrow \circ_{B, C, D}^C \times \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_C(A, B)} & \searrow \circ_{A, C, D}^C \\
 & \text{Hom}_C(B, D) \times \text{Hom}_C(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{A, B, D}^C} \text{Hom}_C(A, D)
 \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. for each composable triple (f, g, h) of morphisms of \mathcal{C} , we have

$$(f \circ g) \circ h = f \circ (g \circ h).$$

(2) *Left Unitality.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \text{pt} \times \text{Hom}_C(A, B) & & \\
 \downarrow \psi_B^C \times \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_C(A, B)} & \nearrow \lambda_{\text{Hom}_C(A, B)}^{\text{Sets}} & \\
 \text{Hom}_C(B, B) \times \text{Hom}_C(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{A, B, B}^C} & \text{Hom}_C(A, B)
 \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. for each morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ of \mathcal{C} , we have

$$\text{id}_B \circ f = f.$$

(3) *Right Unitality.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \text{Hom}_C(A, B) \times \text{pt} & & \\
 \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_C(A, B)} \times \psi_A^C & \nearrow \rho_{\text{Hom}_C(A, B)}^{\text{Sets}} & \\
 \text{Hom}_C(A, B) \times \text{Hom}_C(A, A) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{A, A, B}^C} & \text{Hom}_C(A, B)
 \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. for each morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ of \mathcal{C} , we have

$$f \circ \text{id}_A = f.$$

00V7 Definition 11.1.1.2. Let κ be a regular cardinal. A category \mathcal{C} is

- (1) **Locally small** if, for each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$, the class $\text{Hom}_C(A, B)$ is a set.
- (2) **Locally essentially small** if, for each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$, the class

$$\text{Hom}_C(A, B)/\{\text{isomorphisms}\}$$

is a set.

- (3) **Small** if C is locally small and $\text{Obj}(C)$ is a set.
- (4) κ -**Small** if C is locally small, $\text{Obj}(C)$ is a set, and we have $\#\text{Obj}(C) < \kappa$.

11.1.2. Examples of Categories.

00V9 Example 11.1.2.1.1. The **punctual category**³ is the category pt where

- *Objects.* We have

$$\text{Obj}(\text{pt}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\star\};$$

- *Morphisms.* The unique Hom-set of pt is defined by

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{pt}}(\star, \star) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\text{id}_\star\};$$

- *Identities.* The unit map

$$\mathbb{1}_\star^{\text{pt}} : \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{pt}}(\star, \star)$$

of pt at \star is defined by

$$\text{id}_\star^{\text{pt}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_\star;$$

- *Composition.* The composition map

$$\circ_{\star, \star, \star}^{\text{pt}} : \text{Hom}_{\text{pt}}(\star, \star) \times \text{Hom}_{\text{pt}}(\star, \star) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{pt}}(\star, \star)$$

of pt at (\star, \star, \star) is given by the bijection $\text{pt} \times \text{pt} \cong \text{pt}$.

00VA Example 11.1.2.1.2. We have an isomorphism of categories⁴

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Mon} & \longrightarrow & \text{Cats} \\ \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow \text{Obj} \\ \text{Mon} \cong \text{pt} \times_{\text{Sets}} \text{Cats}, & & \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \text{pt} & \xrightarrow{[\text{pt}]} & \text{Sets} \end{array}$$

via the delooping functor $B : \text{Mon} \rightarrow \text{Cats}$ of ?? of ??.

Proof. Omitted. □

00VB Example 11.1.2.1.3. The **empty category** is the category \emptyset_{cat} where

- *Objects.* We have

$$\text{Obj}(\emptyset_{\text{cat}}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \emptyset;$$

- *Morphisms.* We have

$$\text{Mor}(\emptyset_{\text{cat}}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \emptyset;$$

³Further Terminology: Also called the **singleton category**.

⁴This can be enhanced to an isomorphism of 2-categories

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Mon}_{2-\text{disc}} & \rightarrow & \text{Cats}_{2,*} \\ \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow \text{Obj} \\ \text{Mon}_{2-\text{disc}} \cong \text{pt}_{\text{bi}} \times_{\text{Sets}_{2-\text{disc}}} \text{Cats}_{2,*}, & & \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \text{pt}_{\text{bi}} & \xrightarrow{[\text{pt}]} & \text{Sets}_{2-\text{disc}} \end{array}$$

between the discrete 2-category $\text{Mon}_{2-\text{disc}}$ on Mon and the 2-category of pointed categories with one object.

- *Identities and Composition.* Having no objects, \emptyset_{cat} has no unit nor composition maps.

00VC Example 11.1.2.1.4. The n th ordinal category is the category \bowtie where⁵

- *Objects.* We have

$$\text{Obj}(\bowtie) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{[0], \dots, [n]\};$$

- *Morphisms.* For each $[i], [j] \in \text{Obj}(\bowtie)$, we have

$$\text{Hom}_{\bowtie}([i], [j]) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \{\text{id}_{[i]}\} & \text{if } [i] = [j], \\ \{[i] \rightarrow [j]\} & \text{if } [j] < [i], \\ \emptyset & \text{if } [j] > [i]; \end{cases}$$

- *Identities.* For each $[i] \in \text{Obj}(\bowtie)$, the unit map

$$\mathbb{1}_{[i]}^{\bowtie} : \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\bowtie}([i], [i])$$

of \bowtie at $[i]$ is defined by

$$\text{id}_{[i]}^{\bowtie} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_{[i]};$$

- *Composition.* For each $[i], [j], [k] \in \text{Obj}(\bowtie)$, the composition map

$$\circ_{[i], [j], [k]}^{\bowtie} : \text{Hom}_{\bowtie}([j], [k]) \times \text{Hom}_{\bowtie}([i], [j]) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\bowtie}([i], [k])$$

of \bowtie at $([i], [j], [k])$ is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{id}_{[i]} \circ \text{id}_{[i]} &= \text{id}_{[i]}, \\ ([j] \rightarrow [k]) \circ ([i] \rightarrow [j]) &= ([i] \rightarrow [k]). \end{aligned}$$

00VD Example 11.1.2.1.5. Here we list all the other categories that appear throughout this work.

- The category Sets_* of pointed sets of ??.
- The category Rel of sets and relations of ??.
- The category $\text{Span}(A, B)$ of spans from a set A to a set B of ??.
- The category $\text{ISets}(K)$ of K -indexed sets of ??.
- The category ISets of indexed sets of ??.

⁵In other words, \bowtie is the category associated to the poset

$$[0] \rightarrow [1] \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow [n-1] \rightarrow [n].$$

The category \bowtie for $n \geq 2$ may also be defined in terms of \vee and joins: we have isomorphisms of categories

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{1} &\cong \mathbb{1} \star \mathbb{1}, \\ \mathbb{1} &\cong \mathbb{1} \star \mathbb{1} \\ &\cong (\mathbb{1} \star \mathbb{1}) \star \mathbb{1}, \\ \mathbb{1} &\cong \mathbb{1} \star \mathbb{1} \\ &\cong (\mathbb{1} \star \mathbb{1}) \star \mathbb{1} \\ &\cong ((\mathbb{1} \star \mathbb{1}) \star \mathbb{1}) \star \mathbb{1}, \\ \mathbb{1} &\cong \mathbb{1} \star \mathbb{1} \\ &\cong (\mathbb{1} \star \mathbb{1}) \star \mathbb{1} \\ &\cong ((\mathbb{1} \star \mathbb{1}) \star \mathbb{1}) \star \mathbb{1} \\ &\cong (((\mathbb{1} \star \mathbb{1}) \star \mathbb{1}) \star \mathbb{1}) \star \mathbb{1}, \end{aligned}$$

and so on.

- The category $\text{FibSets}(K)$ of K -fibred sets of ??.
- The category FibSets of fibred sets of ??.

11.1.3. Subcategories. Let C be a category.

00VF **Definition 11.1.3.1.1.** A subcategory of C is a category \mathcal{A} satisfying the following conditions:

- (1) *Objects.* We have $\text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}) \subset \text{Obj}(C)$.
- (2) *Morphisms.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$, we have

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(A, B) \subset \text{Hom}_C(A, B).$$

- (3) *Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$, we have

$$\mathbb{1}_A^{\mathcal{A}} = \mathbb{1}_A^C.$$

- (4) *Composition.* For each $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$, we have

$$\circ_{A,B,C}^{\mathcal{A}} = \circ_{A,B,C}^C.$$

00VG **Definition 11.1.3.1.2.** A subcategory \mathcal{A} of C is **full** if the canonical inclusion functor $\mathcal{A} \rightarrow C$ is full, i.e. if, for each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$, the inclusion

$$\iota_{A,B}: \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(A, B) \hookrightarrow \text{Hom}_C(A, B)$$

is surjective (and thus bijective).

00VH **Definition 11.1.3.1.3.** A subcategory \mathcal{A} of a category C is **strictly full** if it satisfies the following conditions:

- (1) *Fullness.* The subcategory \mathcal{A} is full.
- (2) *Closedness Under Isomorphisms.* The class $\text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$ is closed under isomorphisms.⁶

00VJ **Definition 11.1.3.1.4.** A subcategory \mathcal{A} of C is **wide**⁷ if $\text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}) = \text{Obj}(C)$.

11.1.4. Skeletons of Categories.

00VL **Definition 11.1.4.1.1.** A⁸ **skeleton** of a category C is a full subcategory $\text{Sk}(C)$ with one object from each isomorphism class of objects of C .

00VM **Definition 11.1.4.1.2.** A category C is **skeletal** if $C \cong \text{Sk}(C)$.⁹

00VN **Proposition 11.1.4.1.3.** Let C be a category.

00VP (1) *Existence.* Assuming the axiom of choice, $\text{Sk}(C)$ always exists.

00VQ (2) *Pseudofunctoriality.* The assignment $C \mapsto \text{Sk}(C)$ defines a pseudofunctor

$$\text{Sk}: \text{Cats}_2 \rightarrow \text{Cats}_2.$$

00VR (3) *Uniqueness Up to Equivalence.* Any two skeletons of C are equivalent.

00VS (4) *Inclusions of Skeletons Are Equivalences.* The inclusion

$$\iota_C: \text{Sk}(C) \hookrightarrow C$$

⁶That is, given $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$ and $C \in \text{Obj}(C)$, if $C \cong A$, then $C \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$.

⁷Further Terminology: Also called **lluf**.

⁸Due to Item 3 of Proposition 11.1.4.1.3, we often refer to any such full subcategory $\text{Sk}(C)$ of C as *the* skeleton of C .

⁹That is, C is **skeletal** if isomorphic objects of C are equal.

of a skeleton of C into C is an equivalence of categories.

Proof. *Item 1, Existence:* See [nLab23, Section “Existence of Skeletons of Categories”].

Item 2, Pseudofunctionality: See [nLab23, Section “Skeletons as an Endo-Pseudofunctor on \mathbf{Cat} ”].

Item 3, Uniqueness Up to Equivalence: Clear.

Item 4, Inclusions of Skeletons Are Equivalences: Clear. \square

11.1.5. Precomposition and Postcomposition. Let C be a category and let $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(C)$.

00VU Definition 11.1.5.1.1. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ and $g: B \rightarrow C$ be morphisms of C .

- The **precomposition function associated to f** is the function

$$f^*: \text{Hom}_C(B, C) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_C(A, C)$$

defined by

$$f^*(\phi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \phi \circ f$$

for each $\phi \in \text{Hom}_C(B, C)$.

- The **postcomposition function associated to g** is the function

$$g_*: \text{Hom}_C(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_C(A, C)$$

defined by

$$g_*(\phi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} g \circ \phi$$

for each $\phi \in \text{Hom}_C(A, B)$.

00VV Proposition 11.1.5.1.2. Let $A, B, C, D \in \text{Obj}(C)$ and let $f: A \rightarrow B$ and $g: B \rightarrow C$ be morphisms of C .

00VW (1) *Interaction Between Precomposition and Postcomposition.* We have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}_C(B, C) & \xrightarrow{g_*} & \text{Hom}_C(B, D) \\ g_* \circ f^* = f^* \circ g_*, & \downarrow f^* & \downarrow f^* \\ \text{Hom}_C(A, C) & \xrightarrow{g_*} & \text{Hom}_C(A, D). \end{array}$$

00VX (2) *Interaction With Composition I.* We have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}_C(X, A) & \xrightarrow{f_*} & \text{Hom}_C(X, B) \\ (g \circ f)^* = f^* \circ g^*, & \searrow (g \circ f)_* & \downarrow g_* \\ & & \text{Hom}_C(X, C), \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}_C(C, X) & \xrightarrow{g^*} & \text{Hom}_C(B, X) \\ (g \circ f)_* = g_* \circ f_*, & \searrow (g \circ f)^* & \downarrow f^* \\ & & \text{Hom}_C(A, X). \end{array}$$

00VY

(3) *Interaction With Composition II.* We have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{pt} & \xrightarrow{[f]} & \text{Hom}_C(A, B) \\ & \searrow [g \circ f] & \downarrow g_* \\ & & \text{Hom}_C(A, C) \end{array} \quad [g \circ f] = g_* \circ [f], \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \text{pt} & \xrightarrow{[g]} & \text{Hom}_C(B, C) \\ & \searrow [g \circ f] & \downarrow f^* \\ & & \text{Hom}_C(A, C). \end{array}$$

00VZ

(4) *Interaction With Composition III.* We have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}_C(B, C) \times \text{Hom}_C(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{A, B, C}^C} & \text{Hom}_C(A, C) \\ f^* \circ \circ_{A, B, C}^C = \circ_{X, B, C}^C \circ (f^* \times \text{id}), & \downarrow \text{id} \times f^* & \downarrow f^* \\ \text{Hom}_C(B, C) \times \text{Hom}_C(X, B) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{X, B, C}^C} & \text{Hom}_C(X, C), \\ \text{Hom}_C(B, C) \times \text{Hom}_C(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{A, B, C}^C} & \text{Hom}_C(A, C) \\ g_* \circ \circ_{A, B, C}^C = \circ_{A, B, D}^C \circ (\text{id} \times g_*), & \downarrow g_* \times \text{id} & \downarrow g^* \\ \text{Hom}_C(B, D) \times \text{Hom}_C(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{A, B, D}^C} & \text{Hom}_C(A, D). \end{array}$$

00W0

(5) *Interaction With Identities.* We have

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{id}_A)^* &= \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_C(A, B)}, \\ (\text{id}_B)_* &= \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_C(A, B)}. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. *Item 1, Interaction Between Precomposition and Postcomposition:* Clear.

Item 2, Interaction With Composition I: Clear.

Item 3, Interaction With Composition II: Clear.

Item 4, Interaction With Composition III: Clear.

Item 5, Interaction With Identities: Clear. \square

11.2. The Quadruple Adjunction With Sets

11.2.1. Statement. Let C be a category.

00W3 **Proposition 11.2.1.1.1.** We have a quadruple adjunction

$$(\pi_0 \dashv (-)_{\text{disc}} \dashv \text{Obj} \dashv (-)_{\text{indisc}}): \quad \text{Sets} \leftrightarrow \text{Cats},$$

witnessed by bijections of sets

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(\pi_0(C), X) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}}(C, X_{\text{disc}}),$$

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}}(X_{\text{disc}}, C) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X, \text{Obj}(C)),$$

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(\text{Obj}(C), X) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}}(C, X_{\text{indisc}}),$$

natural in $C \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$ and $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$, where

- The functor

$$\pi_0: \text{Cats} \rightarrow \text{Sets},$$

the **connected components functor**, is the functor sending a category to its set of connected components of [Definition 11.2.3.1.1](#).

- The functor

$$(-)_{\text{disc}}: \text{Sets} \rightarrow \text{Cats},$$

the **discrete category functor**, is the functor sending a set to its associated discrete category of [Definition 11.2.5.1.1](#).

- The functor

$$\text{Obj}: \text{Cats} \rightarrow \text{Sets},$$

the **object functor**, is the functor sending a category to its set of objects.

- The functor

$$(-)_{\text{indisc}}: \text{Sets} \rightarrow \text{Cats},$$

the **indiscrete category functor**, is the functor sending a set to its associated indiscrete category of [Definition 11.2.6.1.1](#).

Proof. Omitted. □

11.2.2. Connected Components of Categories. Let C be a category.

00W5 **Definition 11.2.2.1.1.** A **connected component** of C is a full subcategory \mathcal{I} of C satisfying the following conditions:¹⁰

- (1) *Non-Emptiness.* We have $\text{Obj}(\mathcal{I}) \neq \emptyset$.
- (2) *Connectedness.* There exists a zigzag of arrows between any two objects of \mathcal{I} .

11.2.3. Sets of Connected Components of Categories. Let C be a category.

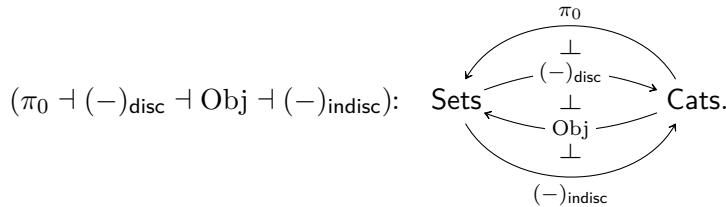
00W7 **Definition 11.2.3.1.1.** The **set of connected components** of C is the set $\pi_0(C)$ whose elements are the connected components of C .

00W8 **Proposition 11.2.3.1.2.** Let C be a category.

00W9 (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $C \mapsto \pi_0(C)$ defines a functor

$$\pi_0: \text{Cats} \rightarrow \text{Sets}.$$

00WA (2) *Adjointness.* We have a quadruple adjunction



¹⁰In other words, a **connected component** of C is an element of the set $\text{Obj}(C)/\sim$ with \sim the equivalence relation generated by the relation \sim' obtained by declaring $A \sim' B$ iff there exists a morphism of C from A to B .

- 00WB** (3) *Interaction With Groupoids.* If C is a groupoid, then we have an isomorphism of categories

$$\pi_0(C) \cong K(C),$$

where $K(C)$ is the set of isomorphism classes of C of ??.

- 00WC** (4) *Preservation of Colimits.* The functor π_0 of [Item 1](#) preserves colimits. In particular, we have bijections of sets

$$\pi_0(C \coprod \mathcal{D}) \cong \pi_0(C) \coprod \pi_0(\mathcal{D}),$$

$$\pi_0(C \coprod_{\mathcal{E}} \mathcal{D}) \cong \pi_0(C) \coprod_{\pi_0(\mathcal{E})} \pi_0(\mathcal{D}),$$

$$\pi_0\left(\text{CoEq}\left(C \xrightarrow[G]{F} \mathcal{D}\right)\right) \cong \text{CoEq}\left(\pi_0(C) \xrightarrow[\pi_0(G)]{\pi_0(F)} \pi_0(\mathcal{D})\right),$$

natural in $C, \mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$.

- 00WD** (5) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Coproducts.* The connected components functor of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$\left(\pi_0, \pi_0^{\coprod}, \pi_{0|\mathbb{P}}^{\coprod}\right) : (\text{Cats}, \coprod, \emptyset_{\text{cat}}) \rightarrow (\text{Sets}, \coprod, \emptyset),$$

being equipped with isomorphisms

$$\pi_{0|C, \mathcal{D}}^{\coprod} : \pi_0(C) \coprod \pi_0(\mathcal{D}) \xrightarrow{\cong} \pi_0(C \coprod \mathcal{D}),$$

$$\pi_{0|\mathbb{P}}^{\coprod} : \emptyset \xrightarrow{\cong} \pi_0(\emptyset_{\text{cat}}),$$

natural in $C, \mathcal{D} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$.

- 00WE** (6) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Products.* The connected components functor of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$\left(\pi_0, \pi_0^{\otimes}, \pi_{0|\mathbb{P}}^{\otimes}\right) : (\text{Cats}, \times, \text{pt}) \rightarrow (\text{Sets}, \times, \text{pt}),$$

being equipped with isomorphisms

$$\pi_{0|C, \mathcal{D}}^{\otimes} : \pi_0(C) \times \pi_0(\mathcal{D}) \xrightarrow{\cong} \pi_0(C \times \mathcal{D}),$$

$$\pi_{0|\mathbb{P}}^{\otimes} : \text{pt} \xrightarrow{\cong} \pi_0(\text{pt}),$$

natural in $C, \mathcal{D} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$.

Proof. [Item 1](#), *Functionality:* Clear.

[Item 2](#), *Adjointness:* This is proved in [Proposition 11.2.1.1.1](#).

[Item 3](#), *Interaction With Groupoids:* Clear.

[Item 4](#), *Preservation of Colimits:* This follows from [Item 2](#) and ?? of ??.

[Item 5](#), *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Coproducts:* Omitted.

[Item 6](#), *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Products:* Omitted.

□

11.2.4. Connected Categories.

- 00WG** **Definition 11.2.4.1.1.** A category C is **connected** if $\pi_0(C) \cong \text{pt}$.^{11,12}

¹¹Further Terminology: A category is **disconnected** if it is not connected.

¹²Example: A groupoid is connected iff any two of its objects are isomorphic.

11.2.5. Discrete Categories. Let X be a set.

00WJ **Definition 11.2.5.1.1.** The discrete category on a set X is the category X_{disc} where

- *Objects.* We have

$$\text{Obj}(X_{\text{disc}}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X;$$

- *Morphisms.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(X_{\text{disc}})$, we have

$$\text{Hom}_{X_{\text{disc}}}(A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{id}_A & \text{if } A = B, \\ \emptyset & \text{if } A \neq B; \end{cases}$$

- *Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(X_{\text{disc}})$, the unit map

$$\mathbb{1}_A^{X_{\text{disc}}} : \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{X_{\text{disc}}}(A, A)$$

of X_{disc} at A is defined by

$$\text{id}_A^{X_{\text{disc}}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_A;$$

- *Composition.* For each $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(X_{\text{disc}})$, the composition map

$$\circ_{A, B, C}^{X_{\text{disc}}} : \text{Hom}_{X_{\text{disc}}}(B, C) \times \text{Hom}_{X_{\text{disc}}}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{X_{\text{disc}}}(A, C)$$

of X_{disc} at (A, B, C) is defined by

$$\text{id}_A \circ \text{id}_A \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_A.$$

00WK **Proposition 11.2.5.1.2.** Let X be a set.

00WL (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $X \mapsto X_{\text{disc}}$ defines a functor

$$(-)_{\text{disc}} : \text{Sets} \rightarrow \text{Cats}.$$

00WM (2) *Adjointness.* We have a quadruple adjunction

$$(\pi_0 \dashv (-)_{\text{disc}} \dashv \text{Obj} \dashv (-)_{\text{indisc}}) : \text{Sets} \rightleftarrows \text{Cats.}$$

00WN (3) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Coproducts.* The functor of **Item 1** has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$\left((-)_{\text{disc}}, (-)_{\text{disc}}^{\coprod}, (-)_{\text{disc}|\mathbb{1}}^{\coprod} \right) : (\text{Sets}, \coprod, \emptyset) \rightarrow (\text{Cats}, \coprod, \emptyset_{\text{cat}}),$$

being equipped with isomorphisms

$$(-)_{\text{disc}|X, Y}^{\coprod} : X_{\text{disc}} \coprod Y_{\text{disc}} \xrightarrow{\cong} (X \coprod Y)_{\text{disc}},$$

$$(-)_{\text{disc}|\mathbb{1}}^{\coprod} : \emptyset_{\text{cat}} \xrightarrow{\cong} \emptyset_{\text{disc}},$$

natural in $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

00WP (4) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Products.* The functor of **Item 1** has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$\left((-)_{\text{disc}}, (-)_{\text{disc}}^{\otimes}, (-)_{\text{disc}|\mathbb{1}}^{\otimes} \right) : (\text{Sets}, \times, \text{pt}) \rightarrow (\text{Cats}, \times, \text{pt}),$$

being equipped with isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned} (-)_{\text{disc}|X,Y}^{\otimes}: X_{\text{disc}} \times Y_{\text{disc}} &\xrightarrow{\cong} (X \times Y)_{\text{disc}}, \\ (-)_{\text{disc}|\mathbb{W}}^{\otimes}: \text{pt} &\xrightarrow{\cong} \text{pt}_{\text{disc}}, \end{aligned}$$

natural in $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Clear.

Item 2, Adjointness: This is proved in [Proposition 11.2.1.1.1](#).

Item 3, Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Coproducts: Omitted.

Item 4, Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Products: Omitted.

□

11.2.6. Indiscrete Categories.

00WR Definition 11.2.6.1.1. The **indiscrete category on a set X** ¹³ is the category X_{indisc} where

- *Objects.* We have

$$\text{Obj}(X_{\text{indisc}}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X;$$

- *Morphisms.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(X_{\text{indisc}})$, we have

$$\text{Hom}_{X_{\text{disc}}}(A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{[A] \rightarrow [B]\};$$

- *Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(X_{\text{indisc}})$, the unit map

$$\mathbb{W}_A^{X_{\text{indisc}}}: \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{X_{\text{indisc}}}(A, A)$$

of X_{indisc} at A is defined by

$$\text{id}_A^{X_{\text{indisc}}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{[A] \rightarrow [A]\};$$

- *Composition.* For each $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(X_{\text{indisc}})$, the composition map

$$\circ_{A,B,C}^{X_{\text{indisc}}}: \text{Hom}_{X_{\text{indisc}}}(B, C) \times \text{Hom}_{X_{\text{indisc}}}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{X_{\text{indisc}}}(A, C)$$

of X_{disc} at (A, B, C) is defined by

$$([B] \rightarrow [C]) \circ ([A] \rightarrow [B]) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} ([A] \rightarrow [C]).$$

00WS Proposition 11.2.6.1.2. Let X be a set.

00WT (1) *Functoriality.* The assignment $X \mapsto X_{\text{indisc}}$ defines a functor

$$(-)_{\text{indisc}}: \text{Sets} \rightarrow \text{Cats}.$$

00WU (2) *Adjointness.* We have a quadruple adjunction

$$(\pi_0 \dashv (-)_{\text{disc}} \dashv \text{Obj} \dashv (-)_{\text{indisc}}): \text{Sets} \rightleftarrows \text{Cats.}$$

¹³*Further Terminology:* Also called the **chaotic category on X** .

00WV (3) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Products.* The functor of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$\left((-)_{\text{indisc}}, (-)_{\text{indisc}}^{\otimes}, (-)_{\text{indisc} \parallel \mathbb{1}}^{\otimes}\right): (\text{Sets}, \times, \text{pt}) \rightarrow (\text{Cats}, \times, \text{pt}),$$

being equipped with isomorphisms

$$(-)_{\text{indisc}|X,Y}^{\otimes}: X_{\text{indisc}} \times Y_{\text{indisc}} \xrightarrow{\cong} (X \times Y)_{\text{indisc}},$$

$$(-)_{\text{indisc} \parallel \mathbb{1}}^{\otimes}: \text{pt} \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{pt}_{\text{indisc}},$$

natural in $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\text{Sets})$.

Proof. [Item 1](#), *Functoriality:* Clear.

[Item 2](#), *Adjointness:* This is proved in [Proposition 11.2.1.1.1](#).

[Item 3](#), *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Products:* Omitted. \square

11.3. Groupoids

11.3.1. Foundations. Let C be a category.

00WY **Definition 11.3.1.1.1.** A morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ of C is an **isomorphism** if there exists a morphism $f^{-1}: B \rightarrow A$ of C such that

$$\begin{aligned} f \circ f^{-1} &= \text{id}_B, \\ f^{-1} \circ f &= \text{id}_A. \end{aligned}$$

00WZ **Definition 11.3.1.1.2.** A **groupoid** is a category in which every morphism is an isomorphism.

11.3.2. The Groupoid Completion of a Category. Let C be a category.

00X1 **Definition 11.3.2.1.1.** The **groupoid completion** of C ¹⁴ is the pair $(K_0(C), \iota_C)$ consisting of

- A groupoid $K_0(C)$;
- A functor $\iota_C: C \rightarrow K_0(C)$;

satisfying the following universal property:¹⁵

(UP) Given another such pair (\mathcal{G}, i) , there exists a unique functor $K_0(C) \xrightarrow{\exists!} \mathcal{G}$ making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & K_0(C) & \\ \iota_C \nearrow & \downarrow \exists! & \\ C & \xrightarrow{i} & \mathcal{G} \end{array}$$

commute.

00X2 **Proposition 11.3.2.1.2.** Let C be a category.

00X3 (1) *Functoriality.* The assignment $C \mapsto K_0(C)$ defines a functor

$$K_0: \text{Cats} \rightarrow \text{Grpd}.$$

¹⁴Further Terminology: Also called the **Grothendieck groupoid** of C or the **Grothendieck groupoid completion** of C .

¹⁵See [Item 5 of Proposition 11.3.2.1.2](#) for an explicit construction.

00X4 (2) *2-Functoriality.* The assignment $C \mapsto K_0(C)$ defines a 2-functor $K_0: \mathbf{Cats}_2 \rightarrow \mathbf{Grpd}_2$.

00X5 (3) *Adjointness.* We have an adjunction

$$(K_0 \dashv \iota): \mathbf{Cats} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{K_0} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\iota} \end{array} \mathbf{Grpd},$$

witnessed by a bijection of sets

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Grpd}}(K_0(C), \mathcal{G}) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Cats}}(C, \mathcal{G}),$$

natural in $C \in \mathrm{Obj}(\mathbf{Cats})$ and $\mathcal{G} \in \mathrm{Obj}(\mathbf{Grpd})$, forming, together with the functor **Core** of Item 1 of Proposition 11.3.3.1.3, a triple adjunction

$$(K_0 \dashv \iota \dashv \mathrm{Core}): \mathbf{Cats} \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{\perp} \\ \xleftarrow{\iota} \xrightarrow{\perp} \\ \xleftarrow{\perp} \end{array} \mathbf{Grpd},$$

witnessed by bijections of sets

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Grpd}}(K_0(C), \mathcal{G}) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Cats}}(C, \mathcal{G}),$$

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Cats}}(\mathcal{G}, \mathcal{D}) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Grpd}}(\mathcal{G}, \mathrm{Core}(\mathcal{D})),$$

natural in $C, \mathcal{D} \in \mathrm{Obj}(\mathbf{Cats})$ and $\mathcal{G} \in \mathrm{Obj}(\mathbf{Grpd})$.

00X6 (4) *2-Adjointness.* We have a 2-adjunction

$$(K_0 \dashv \iota): \mathbf{Cats} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{K_0} \\ \perp_2 \\ \xleftarrow{\iota} \end{array} \mathbf{Grpd},$$

witnessed by an isomorphism of categories

$$\mathrm{Fun}(K_0(C), \mathcal{G}) \cong \mathrm{Fun}(C, \mathcal{G}),$$

natural in $C \in \mathrm{Obj}(\mathbf{Cats})$ and $\mathcal{G} \in \mathrm{Obj}(\mathbf{Grpd})$, forming, together with the 2-functor **Core** of Item 2 of Proposition 11.3.3.1.3, a triple 2-adjunction

$$(K_0 \dashv \iota \dashv \mathrm{Core}): \mathbf{Cats} \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{\perp_2} \\ \xleftarrow{\iota} \xrightarrow{\perp_2} \\ \xleftarrow{\perp_2} \end{array} \mathbf{Grpd},$$

witnessed by isomorphisms of categories

$$\mathrm{Fun}(K_0(C), \mathcal{G}) \cong \mathrm{Fun}(C, \mathcal{G}),$$

$$\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{G}, \mathcal{D}) \cong \mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{G}, \mathrm{Core}(\mathcal{D})),$$

natural in $C, \mathcal{D} \in \mathrm{Obj}(\mathbf{Cats})$ and $\mathcal{G} \in \mathrm{Obj}(\mathbf{Grpd})$.

00X7 (5) *Interaction With Classifying Spaces.* We have an isomorphism of groupoids

$$K_0(C) \cong \Pi_{\leq 1}(|N_{\bullet}(C)|),$$

natural in $C \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$; i.e. the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Cats} & \xrightarrow{K_0} & \text{Grp} \\ N_\bullet \downarrow & \nwarrow \zeta_0 & \uparrow \Pi_{\leq 1} \\ \text{sSets} & \xrightarrow{|-|} & \text{Top} \end{array}$$

commutes up to natural isomorphism.

- 00X8** (6) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Coproducts.* The groupoid completion functor of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$(K_0, K_0^{\coprod}, K_{0\amalg}^{\coprod}): (\text{Cats}, \coprod, \emptyset_{\text{cat}}) \rightarrow (\text{Grpd}, \coprod, \emptyset_{\text{cat}})$$

being equipped with isomorphisms

$$K_{0|C,D}^{\coprod}: K_0(C) \coprod K_0(D) \xrightarrow{\cong} K_0(C \coprod D),$$

$$K_{0\amalg}^{\coprod}: \emptyset_{\text{cat}} \xrightarrow{\cong} K_0(\emptyset_{\text{cat}}),$$

natural in $C, D \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$.

- 00X9** (7) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Products.* The groupoid completion functor of [Item 1](#) has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$(K_0, K_0^\times, K_{0\amalg}^\times): (\text{Cats}, \times, \text{pt}) \rightarrow (\text{Grpd}, \times, \text{pt})$$

being equipped with isomorphisms

$$K_{0|C,D}^\times: K_0(C) \times K_0(D) \xrightarrow{\cong} K_0(C \times D),$$

$$K_{0\amalg}^\times: \text{pt} \xrightarrow{\cong} K_0(\text{pt}),$$

natural in $C, D \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$.

Proof. [Item 1](#), *Functoriality:* Omitted.

[Item 2](#), *2-Functoriality:* Omitted.

[Item 3](#), *Adjointness:* Omitted.

[Item 4](#), *2-Adjointness:* Omitted.

[Item 5](#), *Interaction With Classifying Spaces:* See Corollary 18.33 of <https://web.ma.utexas.edu/users/daf/392C-2012/Notes/lecture18.pdf>.

[Item 6](#), *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Coproducts:* Omitted.

[Item 7](#), *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Products:* Omitted.

□

11.3.3. The Core of a Category. Let C be a category.

- 00XB** **Definition 11.3.3.1.1.** The **core** of C is the pair $(\text{Core}(C), \iota_C)^{16}$ consisting of

- (1) A groupoid $\text{Core}(C)$;
- (2) A functor $\iota_C: \text{Core}(C) \hookrightarrow C$;

satisfying the following universal property:

¹⁶Further Notation: Also written C^\simeq .

(UP) Given another such pair (\mathcal{G}, i) , there exists a unique functor $\mathcal{G} \xrightarrow{\exists!} \text{Core}(C)$ making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \text{Core}(C) & \\ \exists! \nearrow & \downarrow \iota_C & \\ \mathcal{G} & \xrightarrow{i} & C \end{array}$$

commute.

00XC Construction 11.3.3.1.2. The core of C is the wide subcategory of C spanned by the isomorphisms of C , i.e. the category $\text{Core}(C)$ where¹⁷

(1) *Objects.* We have

$$\text{Obj}(\text{Core}(C)) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Obj}(C);$$

(2) *Morphisms.* The morphisms of $\text{Core}(C)$ are the isomorphisms of C .

Proof. This follows from the fact that functors preserve isomorphisms. \square

00XD Proposition 11.3.3.1.3. Let C be a category.

00XE (1) Functoriality. The assignment $C \mapsto \text{Core}(C)$ defines a functor

$$\text{Core}: \text{Cats} \rightarrow \text{Grpd}.$$

00XF (2) 2-Functoriality. The assignment $C \mapsto \text{Core}(C)$ defines a 2-functor

$$\text{Core}: \text{Cats}_2 \rightarrow \text{Grpd}_2.$$

00XG (3) Adjointness. We have an adjunction

$$(\iota \dashv \text{Core}): \text{Grpd} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\iota} \\ \perp \\ \xleftarrow{\text{Core}} \end{array} \text{Cats},$$

witnessed by a bijection of sets

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}}(\mathcal{G}, \mathcal{D}) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Grpd}}(\mathcal{G}, \text{Core}(\mathcal{D})),$$

natural in $\mathcal{G} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Grpd})$ and $\mathcal{D} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$, forming, together with the functor K_0 of Item 1 of Proposition 11.3.2.1.2, a triple adjunction

$$(K_0 \dashv \iota \dashv \text{Core}): \text{Cats} \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{\perp} \\ \iota \\ \xrightarrow{\perp} \\ \text{Core} \end{array} \text{Grpd},$$

witnessed by bijections of sets

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Grpd}}(K_0(C), \mathcal{G}) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}}(C, \mathcal{G}),$$

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}}(\mathcal{G}, \mathcal{D}) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Grpd}}(\mathcal{G}, \text{Core}(\mathcal{D})),$$

natural in $C, \mathcal{D} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$ and $\mathcal{G} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Grpd})$.

¹⁷Slogan: The groupoid $\text{Core}(C)$ is the maximal subgroupoid of C .

00XH (4) *2-Adjointness.* We have an adjunction

$$(\iota \dashv \text{Core}): \text{Grpd} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\iota} \\[-1ex] \perp_2 \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\text{Core}} \end{array} \text{Cats},$$

witnessed by an isomorphism of categories

$$\text{Fun}(\mathcal{G}, \mathcal{D}) \cong \text{Fun}(\mathcal{G}, \text{Core}(\mathcal{D})),$$

natural in $\mathcal{G} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Grpd})$ and $\mathcal{D} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$, forming, together with the 2-functor K_0 of Item 2 of Proposition 11.3.2.1.2, a triple 2-adjunction

$$(K_0 \dashv \iota \dashv \text{Core}): \text{Cats} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{K_0} \\[-1ex] \perp_2 \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\iota} \\[-1ex] \perp_2 \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\text{Core}} \end{array} \text{Grpd},$$

witnessed by isomorphisms of categories

$$\text{Fun}(K_0(C), \mathcal{G}) \cong \text{Fun}(C, \mathcal{G}),$$

$$\text{Fun}(\mathcal{G}, \mathcal{D}) \cong \text{Fun}(\mathcal{G}, \text{Core}(\mathcal{D})),$$

natural in $C, \mathcal{D} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$ and $\mathcal{G} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Grpd})$.

00XJ (5) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Products.* The core functor of Item 1 has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$(\text{Core}, \text{Core}^\times, \text{Core}_\wp^\times): (\text{Cats}, \times, \text{pt}) \rightarrow (\text{Grpd}, \times, \text{pt})$$

being equipped with isomorphisms

$$\text{Core}_{C,D}^\times: \text{Core}(C) \times \text{Core}(D) \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{Core}(C \times D),$$

$$\text{Core}_\wp^\times: \text{pt} \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{Core}(\text{pt}),$$

natural in $C, D \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$.

00XK (6) *Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Coproducts.* The core functor of Item 1 has a symmetric strong monoidal structure

$$(\text{Core}, \text{Core}^{\coprod}, \text{Core}_\wp^{\coprod}): (\text{Cats}, \coprod, \emptyset_{\text{cat}}) \rightarrow (\text{Grpd}, \coprod, \emptyset_{\text{cat}})$$

being equipped with isomorphisms

$$\text{Core}_{C,D}^{\coprod}: \text{Core}(C) \coprod \text{Core}(D) \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{Core}(C \coprod D),$$

$$\text{Core}_\wp^{\coprod}: \emptyset_{\text{cat}} \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{Core}(\emptyset_{\text{cat}}),$$

natural in $C, D \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Omitted.

Item 2, 2-Functoriality: Omitted.

Item 3, Adjointness: The adjunction $(K_0 \dashv \iota)$ follows from the universal property of the Gabriel–Zisman localisation of a category with respect to a class of morphisms (??), while the adjunction $(\iota \dashv \text{Core})$ is a reformulation of the universal property of the core of a category (Definition 11.3.3.1.1).¹⁸

¹⁸Reference: [Rie17, Example 4.1.15]

Item 4, 2-Adjointness: Omitted.

Item 5, Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Products: Omitted.

Item 6, Symmetric Strong Monoidality With Respect to Coproducts: Omitted.

□

11.4. Functors

11.4.1. Foundations. Let C and \mathcal{D} be categories.

00XN Definition 11.4.1.1.1. A functor $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ from C to \mathcal{D} ¹⁹ consists of²⁰

(1) *Action on Objects.* A map of sets

$$F: \text{Obj}(C) \rightarrow \text{Obj}(\mathcal{D}),$$

called the **action on objects** of F ;

(2) *Action on Morphisms.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(C)$, a map

$$F_{A,B}: \text{Hom}_C(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F_A, F_B),$$

called the **action on morphisms** of F at (A, B) ²¹;

satisfying the following conditions:

(1) *Preservation of Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \text{pt} & \\ & \downarrow \mathbb{1}_A^C & \searrow \mathbb{1}_{F_A}^{\mathcal{D}} \\ \text{Hom}_C(A, A) & \xrightarrow{F_{A,A}} & \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F_A, F_A) \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. we have

$$F(\text{id}_A) = \text{id}_{F_A}.$$

(2) *Preservation of Composition.* For each $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}_C(B, C) \times \text{Hom}_C(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{A,B,C}^C} & \text{Hom}_C(A, C) \\ \downarrow F_{B,C} \times F_{A,B} & & \downarrow F_{A,C} \\ \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F_B, F_C) \times \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F_A, F_B) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{F_A, F_B, F_C}^{\mathcal{D}}} & \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F_A, F_C) \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. for each composable pair (g, f) of morphisms of C , we have

$$F(g \circ f) = F(g) \circ F(f).$$

00XP Example 11.4.1.1.2. The **identity functor** of a category C is the functor $\text{id}_C: C \rightarrow C$ where

¹⁹Further Terminology: Also called a **covariant functor**.

²⁰Further Notation: Given functors $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ and $G: C^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$, we will sometimes write F_A for $F(A)$ (resp. G^A for $G(A)$) and F_f for $F(f)$ (resp. G^f for $G(f)$). This has been called Einstein notation in the literature.

²¹Further Terminology: Also called **action on Hom-sets of F at (A, B)** .

- (1) *Action on Objects.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$, we have

$$\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}(A) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A;$$

- (2) *Action on Morphisms.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$, the action on morphisms map

$$(\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}})_{A,B}: \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, B) \rightarrow \underbrace{\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}(A), \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}(B))}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, B)}$$

of $\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$ at (A, B) is defined by

$$(\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}})_{A,B} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, B)}.$$

Proof. *Preservation of Identities:* We have $\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}(\text{id}_A) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_A$ for each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$ by definition.

Preservation of Compositions: For each composable pair $A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} B$ of morphisms of \mathcal{C} , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}(g \circ f) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} g \circ f \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}(g) \circ \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}(f). \end{aligned}$$

This finishes the proof. \square

00XQ Definition 11.4.1.1.3. The **composition** of two functors $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ and $G: \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ is the functor $G \circ F$ where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$, we have

$$[G \circ F](A) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} G(F(A));$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$, the action on morphisms map

$$(G \circ F)_{A,B}: \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{E}}(G_{F_A}, G_{F_B})$$

of $G \circ F$ at (A, B) is defined by

$$[G \circ F](f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} G(F(f)).$$

Proof. *Preservation of Identities:* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$, we have

$$(\text{functoriality of } F) \quad G_{F_{\text{id}_A}} = G_{\text{id}_{F_A}}$$

$$(\text{functoriality of } G) \quad = \text{id}_{G_{F_A}}.$$

Preservation of Composition: For each composable pair (g, f) of morphisms of \mathcal{C} , we have

$$(\text{functoriality of } F) \quad G_{F_{g \circ f}} = G_{F_g \circ F_f}$$

$$(\text{functoriality of } G) \quad = G_{F_g} \circ G_{F_f}.$$

This finishes the proof. \square

00XR Proposition 11.4.1.1.4. Let $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a functor.

00XS (1) *Preservation of Isomorphisms.* If f is an isomorphism in \mathcal{C} , then $F(f)$ is an isomorphism in \mathcal{D} .²²

²²When the converse holds, we call F *conservative*, see [Definition 11.4.6.1.1](#).

Proof. *Item 1, Preservation of Isomorphisms:* Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} F(f)^{-1} \circ F(f) &= F(f^{-1} \circ f) \\ &= F(\text{id}_A) \\ &= \text{id}_{F(A)} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} F(f) \circ F(f)^{-1} &= F(f \circ f^{-1}) \\ &= F(\text{id}_A) \\ &= \text{id}_{F(A)}, \end{aligned}$$

showing $F(f)$ to be an isomorphism. \square

11.4.2. Faithful Functors. Let C and \mathcal{D} be categories.

00XU Definition 11.4.2.1.1. A functor $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is **faithful** if, for each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the action on morphisms map

$$F_{A,B}: \text{Hom}_C(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F_A, F_B)$$

of F at (A, B) is injective.

00XV Proposition 11.4.2.1.2. Let $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a functor

- 00XW (1) Characterisations.** The following conditions are equivalent:
- (a) The functor $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is faithful.
 - (b) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$, the precomposition functor

$$F^*: \text{Fun}(\mathcal{D}, X) \rightarrow \text{Fun}(C, X)$$

is faithful.

- (c) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$, the postcomposition functor

$$F_*: \text{Fun}(X, C) \rightarrow \text{Fun}(X, \mathcal{D})$$

is faithful.

Proof. *Item 1, Characterisations:* Omitted. \square

11.4.3. Full Functors. Let C and \mathcal{D} be categories.

00XY Definition 11.4.3.1.1. A functor $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is **full** if, for each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the action on morphisms map

$$F_{A,B}: \text{Hom}_C(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F_A, F_B)$$

of F at (A, B) is surjective.

00XZ Proposition 11.4.3.1.2. Let $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a functor

- 00Y0 (1) Characterisations.** The following conditions are equivalent:
- (a) The functor $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is full.
 - (b) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$, the precomposition functor

$$F^*: \text{Fun}(\mathcal{D}, X) \rightarrow \text{Fun}(C, X)$$

is full.

- (c) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$, the postcomposition functor

$$F_*: \text{Fun}(X, C) \rightarrow \text{Fun}(X, \mathcal{D})$$

is full.

Proof. *Item 1, Characterisations:* Omitted. \square

11.4.4. Fully Faithful Functors. Let C and \mathcal{D} be categories.

00Y2 Definition 11.4.4.1.1. A functor $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is **fully faithful** if F is full and faithful, i.e. if, for each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the action on morphisms map

$$F_{A,B}: \text{Hom}_C(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F_A, F_B)$$

of F at (A, B) is bijective.

00Y3 Proposition 11.4.4.1.2. Let $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a functor

00Y4 (1) Characterisations. The following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The functor $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is fully faithful.
- (b) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$, the precomposition functor

$$F^*: \text{Fun}(\mathcal{D}, X) \rightarrow \text{Fun}(C, X)$$

is fully faithful.

- (c) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$, the postcomposition functor

$$F_*: \text{Fun}(X, C) \rightarrow \text{Fun}(X, \mathcal{D})$$

is fully faithful.

00Y5 (2) Conservativity. If F is fully faithful, then F is conservative.

Proof. *Item 1, Characterisations:* Omitted.

Item 2, Conservativity: This is proved in Item 2 of Proposition 11.4.6.1.2. \square

11.4.5. Essentially Surjective Functors. Let C and \mathcal{D} be categories.

00Y7 Definition 11.4.5.1.1. A functor $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is **essentially surjective** if, for each $D \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{D})$, there exists some object A of C with $F(A) \cong D$.

11.4.6. Conservative Functors. Let C and \mathcal{D} be categories.

00Y9 Definition 11.4.6.1.1. A functor $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is **conservative** if it satisfies the following condition:

- (\star) For each $f \in \text{Mor}(C)$, if $F(f)$ is an isomorphism in \mathcal{D} , then f is an isomorphism in C .

00YA Proposition 11.4.6.1.2. Let $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a functor.

00YB (1) Characterisations. The following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The functor F is conservative.
- (b) For each $f \in \text{Mor}(C)$, the morphism $F(f)$ is an isomorphism in \mathcal{D} iff f is an isomorphism in C .

00YC (2) Interaction With Fully Faithfulness. Every fully faithful functor is conservative.

Proof. *Item 1, Characterisations:* This follows from Item 1 of Proposition 11.4.1.1.4.

Item 2, Interaction With Fully Faithfulness: Let $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a fully faithful functor, let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism of C , and suppose that F_f is

an isomorphism. We have

$$\begin{aligned} F(\text{id}_B) &= \text{id}_{F(B)} \\ &= F(f) \circ F(f)^{-1} \\ &= F(f \circ f^{-1}). \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, $F(\text{id}_A) = F(f^{-1} \circ f)$. But since F is fully faithful, we must have

$$\begin{aligned} f \circ f^{-1} &= \text{id}_B, \\ f^{-1} \circ f &= \text{id}_A, \end{aligned}$$

showing f to be an isomorphism. Thus F is conservative. \square

11.4.7. Equivalences of Categories.

00YE **Definition 11.4.7.1.1.** Let C and \mathcal{D} be categories.

- An **equivalence of categories** between C and \mathcal{D} consists of a pair of functors

$$\begin{aligned} F: C &\rightarrow \mathcal{D}, \\ G: \mathcal{D} &\rightarrow C \end{aligned}$$

together with natural isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \eta: \text{id}_C &\xrightarrow{\cong} G \circ F, \\ \epsilon: F \circ G &\xrightarrow{\cong} \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}. \end{aligned}$$

- An **adjoint equivalence of categories** between C and \mathcal{D} is an equivalence (F, G, η, ϵ) between C and \mathcal{D} which is also an adjunction.

00YF **Proposition 11.4.7.1.2.** Let $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a functor.

- 00YG** (1) *Characterisations.* If C and \mathcal{D} are small²³, then the following conditions are equivalent:²⁴
- 00YH** (a) The functor F is an equivalence of categories.
- 00YJ** (b) The functor F is fully faithful and essentially surjective.
- 00YK** (c) The induced functor

$$F|_{\text{Sk}(C)}: \text{Sk}(C) \rightarrow \text{Sk}(\mathcal{D})$$

is an *isomorphism* of categories.

00YL (2) *Two-Out-of-Three.* Let

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{G \circ F} & \mathcal{E} \\ F \searrow & \nearrow G & \\ & \mathcal{D} & \end{array}$$

be a diagram in **Cats**. If two out of the three functors among F , G , and $G \circ F$ are equivalences of categories, then so is the third.

²³Otherwise there will be size issues. One can also work with large categories and universes, or require F to be *constructively* essentially surjective; see [MSE1465107].

²⁴In ZFC, the equivalence between **Item 1a** and **Item 1b** is equivalent to the axiom of choice; see [MO 119454].

In Univalent Foundations, this is true without requiring neither the axiom of choice nor the law of the excluded middle.

00YM (3) *Stability Under Composition.* Let

$$C \xrightleftharpoons[G]{F} \mathcal{D} \xrightleftharpoons[G']{F'} \mathcal{E}$$

be a diagram in Cats . If (F, G) and (F', G') are equivalences of categories, then so is their composite $(F' \circ F, G' \circ G)$.

00YN (4) *Equivalences vs. Adjoint Equivalences.* Every equivalence of categories can be promoted to an adjoint equivalence.²⁵

00YP (5) *Interaction With Groupoids.* If C and \mathcal{D} are groupoids, then the following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The functor F is an equivalence of groupoids.
- (b) The following conditions are satisfied:

(i) The functor F induces a bijection

$$\pi_0(F): \pi_0(C) \rightarrow \pi_0(\mathcal{D})$$

of sets.

(ii) For each $A \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the induced map

$$F_{x,x}: \text{Aut}_C(A) \rightarrow \text{Aut}_{\mathcal{D}}(F_A)$$

is an isomorphism of groups.

Proof. *Item 1, Characterisations:* We claim that **Items 1a** to **1c** are indeed equivalent:

(1) *Item 1a* \implies *Item 1b*. Clear.

(2) *Item 1b* \implies *Item 1a*. Since F is essentially surjective and C and \mathcal{D} are small, we can choose, using the axiom of choice, for each $B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{D})$, an object j_B of C and an isomorphism $i_B: B \rightarrow F_{j_B}$ of \mathcal{D} .

Since F is fully faithful, we can extend the assignment $B \mapsto j_B$ to a *unique* functor $j: \mathcal{D} \rightarrow C$ such that the isomorphisms $i_B: B \rightarrow F_{j_B}$ assemble into a natural isomorphism $\eta: \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}} \xrightarrow{\cong} F \circ j$, with a similar natural isomorphism $\epsilon: \text{id}_C \xrightarrow{\cong} j \circ F$. Hence F is an equivalence.

(3) *Item 1a* \implies *Item 1c*. This follows from ??.

Item 2, Two-Out-of-Three: Omitted.

Item 3, Stability Under Composition: Clear.

Item 4, Equivalences vs. Adjoint Equivalences: See [Rie17, Proposition 4.4.5].

Item 5, Interaction With Groupoids: See [nLa24b, Proposition 4.4]. \square

11.4.8. Isomorphisms of Categories.

00YR **Definition 11.4.8.1.1.** An **isomorphism of categories** is a pair of functors

$$\begin{aligned} F: C &\rightarrow \mathcal{D}, \\ G: \mathcal{D} &\rightarrow C \end{aligned}$$

²⁵More precisely, we can promote an equivalence of categories (F, G, η, ϵ) to adjoint equivalences (F, G, η', ϵ) and (F, G, η, ϵ') .

such that we have

$$G \circ F = \text{id}_C,$$

$$F \circ G = \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}.$$

00YS Example 11.4.8.1.2. Categories can be equivalent but non-isomorphic. For example, the category consisting of two isomorphic objects is equivalent to pt , but not isomorphic to it.

00YT Proposition 11.4.8.1.3. Let $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a functor.

- 00YU**
- (1) *Characterisations.* If \mathcal{C} and \mathcal{D} are small, then the following conditions are equivalent:
 - (a) The functor F is an isomorphism of categories.
 - (b) The functor F is fully faithful and a bijection on objects.

Proof. *Item 1, Characterisations:* Omitted, but similar to Item 1 of Proposition 11.4.7.1.2. \square

11.4.9. The Natural Transformation Associated to a Functor.

00YW Definition 11.4.9.1.1. Every functor $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ defines a natural transformation²⁶

$$F^\dagger: \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}} \circ (F^{\text{op}} \times F),$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{F^{\text{op}} \times F} & \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{D} \\ \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}} \searrow & \nearrow F^\dagger & \swarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}} \\ & \text{Sets}, & \end{array}$$

called the **natural transformation associated to F** , consisting of the collection

$$\left\{ F_{A,B}^\dagger: \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F_A, F_B) \right\}_{(A,B) \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C})}$$

with

$$F_{A,B}^\dagger \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} F_{A,B}.$$

Proof. The naturality condition for F^\dagger is the requirement that for each morphism

$$(\phi, \psi): (X, Y) \rightarrow (A, B)$$

of $\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C}$, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) & \xrightarrow{\phi^* \circ \psi_* = \psi_* \circ \phi^*} & \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, B) \\ F_{X,Y} \downarrow & & \downarrow F_{A,B} \\ \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F_X, F_Y) & \xrightarrow{F(\phi)^* \circ F(\psi)_* = F(\psi)_* \circ F(\phi)^*} & \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F_A, F_B), \end{array}$$

²⁶This is the 1-categorical version of ?? of ??.

acting on elements as

$$\begin{array}{ccc} f & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \psi \circ f \circ \phi \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ F(f) & \mapsto & F(\psi) \circ F(f) \circ F(\phi) = F(\psi \circ f \circ \phi) \end{array}$$

commutes, which follows from the functoriality of F . \square

00YX **Proposition 11.4.9.1.2.** Let $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ and $G: \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ be functors.

00YY (1) *Interaction With Natural Isomorphisms.* The following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The natural transformation $F^\dagger: \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}} \circ (F^{\text{op}} \times F)$ associated to F is a natural isomorphism.
- (b) The functor F is fully faithful.

00YZ (2) *Interaction With Composition.* We have an equality of pasting diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{F^{\text{op}} \times F} & \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{D} \xrightarrow{G^{\text{op}} \times G} \mathcal{E}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{E} \\ \searrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}} \quad \nearrow F^\dagger \quad \downarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}} \quad \nearrow G^\dagger \quad \searrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{E}} \\ & \text{Sets} & \\ & = & \\ \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{(G \circ F)^{\text{op}} \times (G \circ F)} & \mathcal{E}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{E}, \\ \searrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}} \quad \nearrow (G \circ F)^\dagger \quad \searrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{E}} \\ & \text{Sets} & \end{array}$$

in Cats_2 , i.e. we have

$$(G \circ F)^\dagger = (G^\dagger \star \text{id}_{F^{\text{op}} \times F}) \circ F^\dagger.$$

00Z0 (3) *Interaction With Identities.* We have

$$\text{id}_C^\dagger = \text{id}_{\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(-1, -2)},$$

i.e. the natural transformation associated to id_C is the identity natural transformation of the functor $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(-1, -2)$.

Proof. *Item 1, Interaction With Natural Isomorphisms:* Clear.

Item 2, Interaction With Composition: Clear.

Item 3, Interaction With Identities: Clear. \square

11.5. Natural Transformations

11.5.1. Foundations. Let \mathcal{C} and \mathcal{D} be categories and $F, G: \mathcal{C} \rightrightarrows \mathcal{D}$ be functors.

00Z3 **Definition 11.5.1.1.1.** A transformation^{27,28} $\alpha: F \xrightarrow{\text{unnat}} G$ from F to G is a collection

$$\{\alpha_A: F(A) \rightarrow G(A)\}_{A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})}$$

of morphisms of \mathcal{D} .

²⁷Further Terminology: Also called an **unnatural transformation** for emphasis.

²⁸Further Notation: We write $\text{UnNat}(F, G)$ for the set of unnatural transformations from F to G .

00Z4 Definition 11.5.1.1.2. A **natural transformation**²⁹ $\alpha: F \Rightarrow G$ from F to G is a transformation

$$\{\alpha_A: F(A) \rightarrow G(A)\}_{A \in \text{Obj}(C)}$$

from F to G such that, for each morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ of C , the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(A) & \xrightarrow{F(f)} & F(B) \\ \alpha_A \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha_B \\ G(A) & \xrightarrow[G(f)]{} & G(B) \end{array}$$

commutes.^{30,31}

00Z5 Example 11.5.1.1.3. The **identity natural transformation** $\text{id}_F: F \Rightarrow F$ of F is the natural transformation consisting of the collection

$$\{\text{id}_{F(A)}: F(A) \rightarrow F(A)\}_{A \in \text{Obj}(C)}.$$

Proof. The naturality condition for id_F is the requirement that, for each morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ of C , the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(A) & \xrightarrow{F(f)} & F(B) \\ \text{id}_{F(A)} \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id}_{F(B)} \\ F(A) & \xrightarrow[F(f)]{} & F(B) \end{array}$$

commutes, which follows from unitality of the composition of C . \square

00Z6 Definition 11.5.1.1.4. Two natural transformations $\alpha, \beta: F \Rightarrow G$ are **equal** if we have

$$\alpha_A = \beta_A$$

for each $A \in \text{Obj}(C)$.

11.5.2. Vertical Composition of Natural Transformations.

00Z8 Definition 11.5.2.1.1. The **vertical composition** of two natural transformations $\alpha: F \Rightarrow G$ and $\beta: G \Rightarrow H$ as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & F & \\ C & \xrightarrow[G]{} & \mathcal{D} \\ & \alpha \Downarrow & \\ & \beta \Downarrow & \\ & H & \end{array}$$

²⁹Pictured in diagrams as

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & F & \\ C & \xrightarrow[G]{} & \mathcal{D} \\ & \alpha \Downarrow & \end{array}$$

³⁰Further Terminology: The morphism $\alpha_A: F_A \rightarrow G_A$ is called the **component of α at A** .

³¹Further Notation: We write $\text{Nat}(F, G)$ for the set of natural transformations from F to G .

is the natural transformation $\beta \circ \alpha: F \Rightarrow H$ consisting of the collection

$$\{(\beta \circ \alpha)_A: F(A) \rightarrow H(A)\}_{A \in \text{Obj}(C)}$$

with

$$(\beta \circ \alpha)_A \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \beta_A \circ \alpha_A$$

for each $A \in \text{Obj}(C)$.

Proof. The naturality condition for $\beta \circ \alpha$ is the requirement that the boundary of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(A) & \xrightarrow{F(f)} & F(B) \\ \alpha_A \downarrow & (1) & \downarrow \alpha_B \\ G(A) & \xrightarrow{G(f)} & G(B) \\ \beta_A \downarrow & (2) & \downarrow \beta_B \\ H(A) & \xrightarrow{H(f)} & H(B) \end{array}$$

commutes. Since

- (1) Subdiagram (1) commutes by the naturality of α ;
- (2) Subdiagram (2) commutes by the naturality of β ;

so does the boundary diagram. Hence $\beta \circ \alpha$ is a natural transformation. \square

00Z9 Proposition 11.5.2.1.2. Let C , D , and E be categories.

00ZA (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $(\beta, \alpha) \mapsto \beta \circ \alpha$ defines a function

$$\circ_{F,G,H}: \text{Nat}(G, H) \times \text{Nat}(F, G) \rightarrow \text{Nat}(F, H).$$

00ZB (2) *Associativity.* Let $F, G, H, K: C \rightrightarrows D$ be functors. The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Nat}(H, K) \times (\text{Nat}(G, H) \times \text{Nat}(F, G)) & & \\ \nearrow \circ_{\text{Nat}(H, K), \text{Nat}(G, H), \text{Nat}(F, G)}^{\text{Sets}} & \swarrow id_{\text{Nat}(H, K) \times \text{Nat}(F, G)} & \\ (\text{Nat}(H, K) \times \text{Nat}(G, H)) \times \text{Nat}(F, G) & & \text{Nat}(H, K) \times \text{Nat}(F, H) \\ \searrow \circ_{G, H, K} \times id_{\text{Nat}(F, G)} & & \swarrow \circ_{F, H, K} \\ \text{Nat}(G, K) \times \text{Nat}(F, G) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{F, G, K}} & \text{Nat}(F, K) \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. given natural transformations

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha: F &\Rightarrow G, \\ \beta: G &\Rightarrow H, \\ \gamma: H &\Rightarrow K,\end{aligned}$$

we have

$$(\gamma \circ \beta) \circ \alpha = \gamma \circ (\beta \circ \alpha).$$

00ZC (3) *Unitality.* Let $F, G: \mathcal{C} \rightrightarrows \mathcal{D}$ be functors.

(a) *Left Unitality.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{pt} \times \text{Nat}(F, G) & & \\ \downarrow [\text{id}_G] \times \text{id}_{\text{Nat}(F, G)} & \nearrow \lambda_{\text{Nat}(F, G)}^{\text{Sets}} \\ \text{Nat}(G, G) \times \text{Nat}(F, G) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{F, G, G}} & \text{Nat}(F, G) \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. given a natural transformation $\alpha: F \Rightarrow G$, we have

$$\text{id}_G \circ \alpha = \alpha.$$

(b) *Right Unitality.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Nat}(F, G) \times \text{pt} & & \\ \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{Nat}(F, G)} \times [\text{id}_F] & \nearrow \rho_{\text{Nat}(F, G)}^{\text{Sets}} \\ \text{Nat}(F, G) \times \text{Nat}(F, F) & \xrightarrow{\circ_{F, F, G}} & \text{Nat}(F, G) \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. given a natural transformation $\alpha: F \Rightarrow G$, we have

$$\alpha \circ \text{id}_F = \alpha.$$

00ZD (4) *Middle Four Exchange.* Let $F_1, F_2, F_3: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ and $G_1, G_2, G_3: \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ be functors. The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (\text{Nat}(G_2, G_3) \times \text{Nat}(G_1, G_2)) \times (\text{Nat}(F_2, F_3) \times \text{Nat}(F_1, F_2)) & \xleftarrow[\sim]{\mu_4} & (\text{Nat}(G_2, G_3) \times \text{Nat}(F_2, F_3)) \times (\text{Nat}(G_1, G_2) \times \text{Nat}(F_1, F_2)) \\ \downarrow \circ_{G_1, G_2, G_3} \times \circ_{F_1, F_2, F_3} & & \downarrow \star_{F_2, F_3, G_2, G_3} \times \star_{F_1, F_2, G_1, G_2} \\ \text{Nat}(G_1, G_3) \times \text{Nat}(F_1, F_3) & & \text{Nat}(G_2 \circ F_2, G_3 \circ F_3) \times \text{Nat}(G_1 \circ F_1, G_2 \circ F_2) \\ & \searrow \star_{F_1, F_3, G_1, G_3} & \swarrow \circ_{G_1 \circ F_1, G_2 \circ F_2, G_3 \circ F_3} \\ & \text{Nat}(G_1 \circ F_1, G_3 \circ F_3) & \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. given a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & F_1 & & G_1 & \\ & \text{---} \curvearrowright \text{---} & & \text{---} \curvearrowright \text{---} & \\ C & \xrightarrow{F_2} & \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{G_2} & \mathcal{E} \\ & \alpha \Downarrow & & \beta \Downarrow & \\ & \text{---} \curvearrowright \text{---} & & \text{---} \curvearrowright \text{---} & \\ & \alpha' \Downarrow & & \beta' \Downarrow & \\ & F_3 & & G_3 & \end{array}$$

in Cats_2 , we have

$$(\beta' \star \alpha') \circ (\beta \star \alpha) = (\beta' \circ \beta) \star (\alpha' \circ \alpha).$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functionality:* Clear.

Item 2, Associativity: Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} ((\gamma \circ \beta) \circ \alpha)_A &= (\gamma_A \circ \beta_A) \circ \alpha_A \\ &= \gamma_A \circ (\beta_A \circ \alpha_A) \\ &= (\gamma \circ (\beta \circ \alpha))_A \end{aligned}$$

for each $A \in \text{Obj}(C)$, showing the desired equality.

Item 3, Unitality: We have

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{id}_G \circ \alpha)_A &= \text{id}_G \circ \alpha_A \\ &= \alpha_A, \\ (\alpha \circ \text{id}_F)_A &= \alpha_A \circ \text{id}_F \\ &= \alpha_A \end{aligned}$$

for each $A \in \text{Obj}(C)$, showing the desired equality.

Item 4, Middle Four Exchange: This is proved in [Item 4 of Proposition 11.5.3.1.2](#). \square

11.5.3. Horizontal Composition of Natural Transformations.

00ZF Definition 11.5.3.1.1. The **horizontal composition**^{32,33} of two natural transformations $\alpha: F \Rightarrow G$ and $\beta: H \Rightarrow K$ as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow[F]{\quad\quad\quad} & \mathcal{D} \\ \alpha \Downarrow & & \Downarrow \beta \\ G & \xrightarrow[H]{\quad\quad\quad} & K \end{array}$$

of α and β is the natural transformation

$$\beta \star \alpha: (H \circ F) \Rightarrow (K \circ G),$$

as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow[H \circ F]{\quad\quad\quad} & \mathcal{E}, \\ \beta \star \alpha \Downarrow & & \\ K \circ G & \xrightarrow{\quad\quad\quad} & \end{array}$$

consisting of the collection

$$\{(\beta \star \alpha)_A: H(F(A)) \rightarrow K(G(A))\}_{A \in \text{Obj}(C)},$$

³²Further Terminology: Also called the **Godement product** of α and β .

³³Horizontal composition forms a map

$$\star_{(F,H),(G,K)}: \text{Nat}(H,K) \times \text{Nat}(F,G) \rightarrow \text{Nat}(H \circ F, K \circ G).$$

of morphisms of \mathcal{E} with

$$\begin{aligned} (\beta \star \alpha)_A &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \beta_{G(A)} \circ H(\alpha_A) \\ &= K(\alpha_A) \circ \beta_{F(A)}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H(F(A)) & \xrightarrow{H(\alpha_A)} & H(G(A)) \\ \beta_{F(A)} \downarrow & & \downarrow \beta_{G(A)} \\ K(F(A)) & \xrightarrow{K(\alpha_A)} & K(G(A)). \end{array}$$

Proof. First, we claim that we indeed have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H(F(A)) & \xrightarrow{H(\alpha_A)} & H(G(A)) \\ \beta_{G(A)} \circ H(\alpha_A) = K(\alpha_A) \circ \beta_{F(A)}, & \beta_{F(A)} \downarrow & \downarrow \beta_{G(A)} \\ K(F(A)) & \xrightarrow{K(\alpha_A)} & K(G(A)). \end{array}$$

This is, however, simply the naturality square for β applied to the morphism $\alpha_A: F(A) \rightarrow G(A)$. Next, we check the naturality condition for $\beta \star \alpha$, which is the requirement that the boundary of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H(F(A)) & \xrightarrow{H(F(f))} & H(F(B)) \\ H(\alpha_A) \downarrow & (1) & \downarrow H(\alpha_B) \\ H(G(A)) & \xrightarrow{H(G(f))} & H(G(B)) \\ \beta_{G(A)} \downarrow & (2) & \downarrow \beta_{G(B)} \\ K(G(A)) & \xrightarrow{K(G(f))} & K(G(B)) \end{array}$$

commutes. Since

- (1) Subdiagram (1) commutes by the naturality of α ;
- (2) Subdiagram (2) commutes by the naturality of β ;

so does the boundary diagram. Hence $\beta \circ \alpha$ is a natural transformation.³⁴ \square

00ZG Proposition 11.5.3.1.2. Let \mathcal{C} , \mathcal{D} , and \mathcal{E} be categories.

00ZH (1) *Functionality.* The assignment $(\beta, \alpha) \mapsto \beta \star \alpha$ defines a function

$$\star_{(F,G),(H,K)}: \text{Nat}(H, K) \times \text{Nat}(F, G) \rightarrow \text{Nat}(H \circ F, K \circ G).$$

00ZJ (2) *Associativity.* Let

$$\mathcal{C} \xrightarrow[G_1]{F_1} \mathcal{D} \xrightarrow[G_2]{F_2} \mathcal{E} \xrightarrow[G_3]{F_3} \mathcal{F}$$

³⁴Reference: [Bor94, Proposition 1.3.4].

be a diagram in Cats_2 . The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Nat}(F_3, G_3) \times \text{Nat}(F_2, G_2) \times \text{Nat}(F_1, G_1) & \xrightarrow{\star_{(F_2, G_2), (F_3, G_3)} \times \text{id}} & \text{Nat}(F_3 \circ F_2, G_3 \circ G_2) \times \text{Nat}(F_1, G_1) \\ \downarrow \text{id} \times \star_{(F_1, G_1), (F_2, G_2)} & & \downarrow \star_{(F_3 \circ F_2), (G_3 \circ G_2, F_1, G_1)} \\ \text{Nat}(F_3, G_3) \times \text{Nat}(F_2 \circ F_1, G_2 \circ G_1) & \xrightarrow{\star_{(F_2 \circ F_1), (G_2 \circ G_1, F_3, G_3)}} & \text{Nat}(F_3 \circ F_2 \circ F_1, G_3 \circ G_2 \circ G_1) \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. given natural transformations

$$\mathcal{C} \xrightarrow[F_1]{\alpha \Downarrow} \mathcal{D} \xrightarrow[F_2]{\beta \Downarrow} \mathcal{E} \xrightarrow[F_3]{\gamma \Downarrow} \mathcal{F},$$

we have

$$(\gamma \star \beta) \star \alpha = \gamma \star (\beta \star \alpha).$$

- 00ZK** (3) *Interaction With Identities.* Let $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ and $G: \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ be functors. The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{pt} \times \text{pt} & \xrightarrow{[\text{id}_G] \times [\text{id}_F]} & \text{Nat}(G, G) \times \text{Nat}(F, F) \\ \uparrow \zeta & & \downarrow \star_{(F, F), (G, G)} \\ \text{pt} & \xrightarrow{[\text{id}_{G \circ F}]} & \text{Nat}(G \circ F, G \circ F) \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. we have

$$\text{id}_G \star \text{id}_F = \text{id}_{G \circ F}.$$

- 00ZL** (4) *Middle Four Exchange.* Let $F_1, F_2, F_3: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ and $G_1, G_2, G_3: \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ be functors. The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} (\text{Nat}(G_2, G_3) \times \text{Nat}(G_1, G_2)) \times (\text{Nat}(F_2, F_3) \times \text{Nat}(F_1, F_2)) & \xleftarrow{\sim} & (\text{Nat}(G_2, G_3) \times \text{Nat}(F_2, F_3)) \times (\text{Nat}(G_1, G_2) \times \text{Nat}(F_1, F_2)) \\ \downarrow \circ_{G_1, G_2, G_3} \times \circ_{F_1, F_2, F_3} & & \downarrow \star_{F_2, F_3, G_2, G_3} \times \star_{F_1, F_2, G_1, G_2} \\ \text{Nat}(G_1, G_3) \times \text{Nat}(F_1, F_3) & & \text{Nat}(G_2 \circ F_2, G_3 \circ F_3) \times \text{Nat}(G_1 \circ F_1, G_2 \circ F_2) \\ & \searrow \circ_{F_1, F_3, G_1, G_3} & \swarrow \circ_{G_1 \circ F_1, G_2 \circ F_2, G_3 \circ F_3} \\ & \text{Nat}(G_1 \circ F_1, G_3 \circ F_3) & \end{array}$$

commutes, i.e. given a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & F_1 & & G_1 & \\ & \alpha \Downarrow & & \beta \Downarrow & \\ \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow[F_2]{\quad} & \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow[G_2]{\quad} & \mathcal{E} \\ \alpha' \Downarrow & \nearrow & \nearrow & \beta' \Downarrow & \\ & F_3 & & G_3 & \end{array}$$

in Cats_2 , we have

$$(\beta' \star \alpha') \circ (\beta \star \alpha) = (\beta' \circ \beta) \star (\alpha' \circ \alpha).$$

Proof. *Item 1, Functionality:* Clear.

Item 2, Associativity: Omitted.

Item 3, Interaction With Identities: We have

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{id}_G \star \text{id}_F)_A &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\text{id}_G)_{F_A} \circ G_{(\text{id}_F)_A} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_{G_{F_A}} \circ G_{\text{id}_{F_A}} \\ &= \text{id}_{G_{F_A}} \circ \text{id}_{G_{F_A}} \\ &= \text{id}_{G_{F_A}} \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\text{id}_{G \circ F})_A \end{aligned}$$

for each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$, showing the desired equality.

Item 4, Middle Four Exchange: Let $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$ and consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & G_{F''_A} & & \\ & \nearrow G_{\alpha'_A} & & \searrow \beta_{F''_A} & \\ G_{F_A} & \xrightarrow{G_{\alpha_A}} & G_{F'_A} & (1) & G''_{F''_A} \xrightarrow{\beta'_{F''_A}} G''_{F_A} \\ & \searrow \beta_{F'_A} & & \nearrow G'_{\alpha'_A} & \\ & & G'_{F'_A} & & \end{array}$$

The top composition is $((\beta' \circ \beta) \star (\alpha' \circ \alpha))_A$ and the bottom composition is $((\beta' \star \alpha') \circ (\beta \star \alpha))_A$. Since Subdiagram (1) commutes, they are equal. \square

11.5.4. Properties of Natural Transformations.

00ZN **Proposition 11.5.4.1.1.** Let $F, G: \mathcal{C} \rightrightarrows \mathcal{D}$ be functors. The following data are equivalent:³⁵

- 00ZP** (1) A natural transformation $\alpha: F \Rightarrow G$.
00ZQ (2) A functor $[\alpha]: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{K}}$ filling the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \mathcal{D} & \\ F \swarrow & \uparrow \text{ev}_0 & \\ C & \xrightarrow{[\alpha]} & \mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{K}}. \\ G \searrow & \downarrow \text{ev}_1 & \\ & \mathcal{D} & \end{array}$$

- 00ZR** (3) A functor $[\alpha]: \mathcal{C} \times \mathbb{K} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ filling the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & & \\ \uparrow \text{ev}_0 & \searrow F & \\ C \times \mathbb{K} & \xrightarrow{[\alpha]} & \mathcal{D}. \\ \downarrow \text{ev}_1 & \nearrow G & \\ C & & \end{array}$$

³⁵Taken from [MO 64365].

Proof. *From Item 1 to Item 2 and Back:* We may identify $\mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{K}}$ with $\text{Arr}(\mathcal{D})$. Given a natural transformation $\alpha: F \Rightarrow G$, we have a functor

$$\begin{aligned} [\alpha]: \mathcal{C} &\longrightarrow \mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{K}} \\ A &\longmapsto \alpha_A \\ (f: A \rightarrow B) &\longmapsto \left(\begin{array}{ccc} F_A & \xrightarrow{F_f} & F_B \\ \alpha_A \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha_B \\ G_A & \xrightarrow{G_f} & G_B \end{array} \right) \end{aligned}$$

making the diagram in **Item 2** commute. Conversely, every such functor gives rise to a natural transformation from F to G , and these constructions are inverse to each other.

From Item 2 to Item 3 and Back: This follows from **Item 3** of [Proposition 11.6.1.1.2](#). \square

11.5.5. Natural Isomorphisms.

00ZT **Definition 11.5.5.1.1.** A natural transformation $\alpha: F \Rightarrow G$ between functors $F, G: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ between categories \mathcal{C} and \mathcal{D} is a **natural isomorphism** if there exists a natural transformation $\alpha^{-1}: G \Rightarrow F$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha^{-1} \circ \alpha &= \text{id}_F, \\ \alpha \circ \alpha^{-1} &= \text{id}_G. \end{aligned}$$

00ZU **Proposition 11.5.5.1.2.** Let $\alpha: F \Rightarrow G$ be a natural transformation.

00ZV (1) *Characterisations.* The following conditions are equivalent:

- 00ZW** (a) The natural transformation α is a natural isomorphism.
00ZX (b) For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$, the morphism $\alpha_A: F_A \rightarrow G_A$ is an isomorphism.

00ZY (2) *Componentwise Inverses of Natural Transformations Assemble Into Natural Transformations.* Let $\alpha^{-1}: G \Rightarrow F$ be a transformation such that, for each $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_A^{-1} \circ \alpha_A &= \text{id}_{F(A)}, \\ \alpha_A \circ \alpha_A^{-1} &= \text{id}_{G(A)}. \end{aligned}$$

Then α^{-1} is a natural transformation.

Proof. *Item 1, Characterisations:* The implication **Item 1a** \Rightarrow **Item 1b** is clear, whereas the implication **Item 1b** \Rightarrow **Item 1a** follows from **Item 2**.

Item 2, Componentwise Inverses of Natural Transformations Assemble Into Natural Transformations: The naturality condition for α^{-1} corresponds to the commutativity of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G(A) & \xrightarrow{G(f)} & G(B) \\ \alpha_A^{-1} \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha_B^{-1} \\ F(A) & \xrightarrow{F(f)} & F(B) \end{array}$$

for each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$ and each $f \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, B)$. Considering the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 G(A) & \xrightarrow{G(f)} & G(B) \\
 \alpha_A^{-1} \downarrow & (1) & \downarrow \alpha_B^{-1} \\
 F(A) & \xrightarrow{F(f)} & F(B) \\
 \alpha_A \downarrow & (2) & \downarrow \alpha_B \\
 G(A) & \xrightarrow[G(f)]{} & G(B),
 \end{array}$$

where the boundary diagram as well as Subdiagram (2) commute, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 G(f) &= G(f) \circ \text{id}_{G(A)} \\
 &= G(f) \circ \alpha_A \circ \alpha_A^{-1} \\
 &= \alpha_B \circ F(f) \circ \alpha_A^{-1}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Postcomposing both sides with α_B^{-1} , we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 \alpha_B^{-1} \circ G(f) &= \alpha_B^{-1} \circ \alpha_B \circ F(f) \circ \alpha_A^{-1} \\
 &= \text{id}_{F(B)} \circ F(f) \circ \alpha_A^{-1} \\
 &= F(f) \circ \alpha_A^{-1},
 \end{aligned}$$

which is the naturality condition we wanted to show. Thus α^{-1} is a natural transformation. \square

11.6. Categories of Categories

11.6.1. Functor Categories. Let \mathcal{C} be a category and \mathcal{D} be a small category.

0101 Definition 11.6.1.1.1. The **category of functors from \mathcal{C} to \mathcal{D}** ³⁶ is the category $\text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$ ³⁷ where

- *Objects.* The objects of $\text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$ are functors from \mathcal{C} to \mathcal{D} ;
- *Morphisms.* For each $F, G \in \text{Obj}(\text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}))$, we have

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})}(F, G) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Nat}(F, G);$$

- *Identities.* For each $F \in \text{Obj}(\text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}))$, the unit map

$$\text{id}_F^{\text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})}: \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Nat}(F, F)$$

of $\text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$ at F is given by

$$\text{id}_F^{\text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_F,$$

where $\text{id}_F: F \Rightarrow F$ is the identity natural transformation of F of [Example 11.5.1.1.3](#);

³⁶Further Terminology: Also called the **functor category** $\text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$.

³⁷Further Notation: Also written $\mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{C}}$ and $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]$.

- *Composition.* For each $F, G, H \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{D}))$, the composition map

$$\circ_{F,G,H}^{\mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{D})}: \text{Nat}(G, H) \times \text{Nat}(F, G) \rightarrow \text{Nat}(F, H)$$

of $\mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{D})$ at (F, G, H) is given by

$$\beta \circ_{F,G,H}^{\mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{D})} \alpha \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \beta \circ \alpha,$$

where $\beta \circ \alpha$ is the vertical composition of α and β of Item 1 of Proposition 11.5.2.1.2.

0102 Proposition 11.6.1.1.2. Let C and \mathcal{D} be categories and let $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a functor.

0103 (1) *Functionality.* The assignments $C, \mathcal{D}, (C, \mathcal{D}) \mapsto \mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{D})$ define functors

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{Fun}(C, -_2): \mathbf{Cats} &\rightarrow \mathbf{Cats}, \\ \mathbf{Fun}(-_1, \mathcal{D}): \mathbf{Cats}^{\text{op}} &\rightarrow \mathbf{Cats}, \\ \mathbf{Fun}(-_1, -_2): \mathbf{Cats}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{Cats} &\rightarrow \mathbf{Cats}. \end{aligned}$$

0104 (2) *2-Functionality.* The assignments $C, \mathcal{D}, (C, \mathcal{D}) \mapsto \mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{D})$ define 2-functors

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{Fun}(C, -_2): \mathbf{Cats}_2 &\rightarrow \mathbf{Cats}_2, \\ \mathbf{Fun}(-_1, \mathcal{D}): \mathbf{Cats}_2^{\text{op}} &\rightarrow \mathbf{Cats}_2, \\ \mathbf{Fun}(-_1, -_2): \mathbf{Cats}_2^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{Cats}_2 &\rightarrow \mathbf{Cats}_2. \end{aligned}$$

0105 (3) *Adjointness.* We have adjunctions

$$\begin{aligned} (C \times - \dashv \mathbf{Fun}(C, -)): \quad \mathbf{Cats} &\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{C \times -} \\[-1ex] \perp \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\mathbf{Fun}(C, -)} \end{array} \mathbf{Cats}, \\ (- \times \mathcal{D} \dashv \mathbf{Fun}(\mathcal{D}, -)): \quad \mathbf{Cats} &\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{- \times \mathcal{D}} \\[-1ex] \perp \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\mathbf{Fun}(\mathcal{D}, -)} \end{array} \mathbf{Cats}, \end{aligned}$$

witnessed by bijections of sets

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Cats}}(C \times \mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E}) &\cong \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Cats}}(\mathcal{D}, \mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{E})), \\ \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Cats}}(C \times \mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E}) &\cong \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Cats}}(C, \mathbf{Fun}(\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E})), \end{aligned}$$

natural in $C, \mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E} \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Cats})$.

0106 (4) *2-Adjointness.* We have 2-adjunctions

$$\begin{aligned} (C \times - \dashv \mathbf{Fun}(C, -)): \quad \mathbf{Cats}_2 &\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{C \times -} \\[-1ex] \perp_2 \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\mathbf{Fun}(C, -)} \end{array} \mathbf{Cats}_2, \\ (- \times \mathcal{D} \dashv \mathbf{Fun}(\mathcal{D}, -)): \quad \mathbf{Cats}_2 &\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{- \times \mathcal{D}} \\[-1ex] \perp_2 \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow{\mathbf{Fun}(\mathcal{D}, -)} \end{array} \mathbf{Cats}_2, \end{aligned}$$

witnessed by isomorphisms of categories

$$\mathbf{Fun}(C \times \mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E}) \cong \mathbf{Fun}(\mathcal{D}, \mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{E})),$$

$$\mathbf{Fun}(C \times \mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E}) \cong \mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathbf{Fun}(\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E})),$$

natural in $C, \mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E} \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Cats}_2)$.

- 0107** (5) *Trivial Functor Categories.* We have a canonical isomorphism of categories

$$\mathbf{Fun}(\text{pt}, C) \cong C,$$

natural in $C \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Cats})$.

- 0108** (6) *Objectwise Computation of Co/Limits.* Let

$$D: \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{D})$$

be a diagram in $\mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{D})$. We have isomorphisms

$$\lim(D)_A \cong \lim_{i \in \mathcal{I}}(D_i(A)),$$

$$\operatorname{colim}(D)_A \cong \operatorname{colim}_{i \in \mathcal{I}}(D_i(A)),$$

naturally in $A \in \text{Obj}(C)$.

- 0109** (7) *Bicompleteness.* If \mathcal{E} is co/complete, then so is $\mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{E})$.

- 010A** (8) *Abelianness.* If \mathcal{E} is abelian, then so is $\mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{E})$.

- 010B** (9) *Monomorphisms and Epimorphisms.* Let $\alpha: F \Rightarrow G$ be a morphism of $\mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{D})$. The following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The natural transformation

$$\alpha: F \Rightarrow G$$

is a monomorphism (resp. epimorphism) in $\mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{D})$.

- (b) For each $A \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the morphism

$$\alpha_A: F_A \rightarrow G_A$$

is a monomorphism (resp. epimorphism) in \mathcal{D} .

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Omitted.

Item 2, 2-Functoriality: Omitted.

Item 3, Adjointness: Omitted.

Item 4, 2-Adjointness: Omitted.

Item 5, Trivial Functor Categories: Omitted.

Item 6, Objectwise Computation of Co/Limits: Omitted.

Item 7, Bicompleteness: This follows from ??.

Item 8, Abelianness: Omitted.

Item 9, Monomorphisms and Epimorphisms: Omitted. □

11.6.2. The Category of Categories and Functors.

- 010D** **Definition 11.6.2.1.1.** The category of (small) categories and functors is the category \mathbf{Cats} where

- *Objects.* The objects of \mathbf{Cats} are small categories;
- *Morphisms.* For each $C, \mathcal{D} \in \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Cats})$, we have

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Cats}}(C, \mathcal{D}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Obj}(\mathbf{Fun}(C, \mathcal{D}));$$

- *Identities.* For each $C \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$, the unit map

$$\mathbb{W}_C^{\text{Cats}} : \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}}(C, C)$$

of Cats at C is defined by

$$\text{id}_C^{\text{Cats}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_C,$$

where $\text{id}_C : C \rightarrow C$ is the identity functor of C of [Example 11.4.1.1.2](#);

- *Composition.* For each $C, D, E \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$, the composition map

$$\circ_{C, D, E}^{\text{Cats}} : \text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}}(D, E) \times \text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}}(C, D) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}}(C, E)$$

of Cats at (C, D, E) is given by

$$G \circ_{C, D, E}^{\text{Cats}} F \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} G \circ F,$$

where $G \circ F : C \rightarrow E$ is the composition of F and G of [Definition 11.4.1.1.3](#).

010E Proposition 11.6.2.1.2. Let C be a category.

010F (1) *Co/Completeness.* The category Cats is complete and cocomplete.

010G (2) *Cartesian Monoidal Structure.* The quadruple $(\text{Cats}, \times, \text{pt}, \text{Fun})$ is a Cartesian closed monoidal category.

Proof. *Item 1, Co/Completeness:* This follows from

Item 2, Cartesian Monoidal Structure: Omitted. □

11.6.3. The 2-Category of Categories, Functors, and Natural Transformations.

010J Definition 11.6.3.1.1. The **2-category of (small) categories, functors, and natural transformations** is the 2-category Cats_2 where

- *Objects.* The objects of Cats_2 are small categories;
- *Hom-Categories.* For each $C, D \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats}_2)$, we have

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}_2}(C, D) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Fun}(C, D);$$

- *Identities.* For each $C \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats}_2)$, the unit functor

$$\mathbb{W}_C^{\text{Cats}_2} : \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Fun}(C, C)$$

of Cats_2 at C is the functor picking the identity functor $\text{id}_C : C \rightarrow C$ of C ;

- *Composition.* For each $C, D, E \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats}_2)$, the composition bifunctor

$$\circ_{C, D, E}^{\text{Cats}_2} : \text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}_2}(D, E) \times \text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}_2}(C, D) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}_2}(C, E)$$

of Cats_2 at (C, D, E) is the functor where

- *Action on Objects.* For each object $(G, F) \in \text{Obj}(\text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}_2}(D, E) \times \text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}_2}(C, D))$, we have

$$\circ_{C, D, E}^{\text{Cats}_2}(G, F) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} G \circ F;$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each morphism $(\beta, \alpha) : (K, H) \Rightarrow (G, F)$ of $\text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}_2}(D, E) \times \text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}_2}(C, D)$, we have

$$\circ_{C, D, E}^{\text{Cats}_2}(\beta, \alpha) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \beta \star \alpha,$$

where $\beta \star \alpha$ is the horizontal composition of α and β of [Definition 11.5.3.1.1](#).

010K Proposition 11.6.3.1.2. Let C be a category.

010L (1) *2-Categorical Co/Completeness.* The 2-category Cats_2 is complete and cocomplete as a 2-category, having all 2-categorical and bicategorical co/limits.

Proof. *Item 1, Co/Completeness:* This follows from \square

11.6.4. The Category of Groupoids.

010N Definition 11.6.4.1.1. The **category of (small) groupoids** is the full subcategory Grpd of Cats spanned by the groupoids.

11.6.5. The 2-Category of Groupoids.

010Q Definition 11.6.5.1.1. The **2-category of (small) groupoids** is the full sub-2-category Grpd_2 of Cats_2 spanned by the groupoids.

11.7. Miscellany

11.7.1. Concrete Categories.

010T Definition 11.7.1.1.1. A category C is **concrete** if there exists a faithful functor $F: C \rightarrow \text{Sets}$.

11.7.2. Balanced Categories.

010V Definition 11.7.2.1.1. A category is **balanced** if every morphism which is both a monomorphism and an epimorphism is an isomorphism.

11.7.3. Monoid Actions on Objects of Categories. Let A be a monoid, let C be a category, and let $X \in \text{Obj}(C)$.

010X Definition 11.7.3.1.1. An *A -action on X* is a functor $\lambda: BA \rightarrow C$ with $\lambda(\star) = X$.

010Y Remark 11.7.3.1.2. In detail, an *A -action on X* is an A -action on $\text{End}_C(X)$, consisting of a morphism

$$\lambda: A \rightarrow \underbrace{\text{End}_C(X)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Hom}_C(X, X)}$$

satisfying the following conditions:

(1) *Preservation of Identities.* We have

$$\lambda_{1_A} = \text{id}_X.$$

(2) *Preservation of Composition.* For each $a, b \in A$, we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\lambda_a} & X \\ \lambda_b \circ \lambda_a = \lambda_{ab}, & \searrow \lambda_{ab} & \downarrow \lambda_b \\ & & X. \end{array}$$

11.7.4. Group Actions on Objects of Categories. Let G be a group, let C be a category, and let $X \in \text{Obj}(C)$.

0110 Definition 11.7.4.1.1. A ***G-action on X*** is a functor $\lambda: BG \rightarrow C$ with $\lambda(\star) = X$.

0111 Remark 11.7.4.1.2. In detail, a ***G-action on X*** is a G -action on $\text{Aut}_C(X)$, consisting of a morphism

$$\lambda: G \rightarrow \underbrace{\text{End}_C(X)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Hom}_C(X,X)}$$

satisfying the following conditions:

(1) *Preservation of Identities.* We have

$$\lambda_{1_A} = \text{id}_X.$$

(2) *Preservation of Composition.* For each $a, b \in A$, we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\lambda_a} & X \\ \lambda_b \circ \lambda_a & \searrow \lambda_{ab} & \downarrow \lambda_b \\ & X & \end{array}$$

Appendices

11.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups

<p>(30) Constructions With Groups</p> <p>Hyper Algebra</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyper-rings (34) Quantales <p>Near-Rings</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings <p>Real Analysis</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables <p>Measure Theory</p>	<p>(39) Measurable Spaces</p> <p>(40) Measures and Integration</p> <p>Probability Theory</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (40) Probability Theory <p>Stochastic Analysis</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus (43) Stochastic Differential Equations <p>Differential Geometry</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds <p>Schemes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (45) Schemes
---	---

11.2. Other Chapters

<p>Sets</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets <p>Indexed and Fibred Sets</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets <p>Category Theory</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions <p>Bicategories</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (18) Bicategories 	<p>(19) Internal Adjunctions</p> <p>Internal Category Theory</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (20) Internal Categories <p>Cyclic Stuff</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (21) The Cycle Category <p>Cubical Stuff</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (22) The Cube Category <p>Globular Stuff</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (23) The Globe Category <p>Cellular Stuff</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (24) The Cell Category <p>Monoids</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids <p>Monoids With Zero</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero <p>Groups</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups <p>Hyper Algebra</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups
---	---

(33) Hypersemirings and Hyper-	Probability Theory
rings	(40) Probability Theory
(34) Quantales	Stochastic Analysis
Near-Rings	(41) Stochastic Processes, Mar-
(35) Near-Semirings	tingales, and Brownian Mo-
(36) Near-Rings	tion
Real Analysis	(42) Itô Calculus
(37) Real Analysis in One Vari-	(43) Stochastic Differential Equa-
able	tions
(38) Real Analysis in Several	Differential Geometry
Variables	(44) Topological and Smooth
Measure Theory	Manifolds
(39) Measurable Spaces	Schemes
(40) Measures and Integration	(45) Schemes

CHAPTER 12

Types of Morphisms in Categories

0112 Create tags (see [MSE 350788] for some of these):

- (1) ??
- (2) ??
- (3) ??
- (4) ??
- (5) write material on sections and retractions

12.1. Monomorphisms

12.1.1. Foundations. Let \mathcal{C} be a category.

0115 **Definition 12.1.1.1.1.** A morphism $m: A \rightarrow B$ of \mathcal{C} is a **monomorphism** if, for each diagram of the form

$$m \circ f = m \circ g, \quad X \xrightarrow{\begin{smallmatrix} f \\ g \end{smallmatrix}} A \xrightarrow{m} B$$

in \mathbf{Cats} , we have $f = g$.

0116 **Example 12.1.1.1.2.** Here are some examples of monomorphisms.

0117 (1) *Monomorphisms in Sets.* The monomorphisms in \mathbf{Sets} are precisely the injections.

Proof. *Item 1, Monomorphisms in Sets:* Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism in \mathbf{Sets} . Suppose that f is a monomorphism and consider the diagram

$$\{*\} \xrightarrow{\begin{smallmatrix} [x] \\ [y] \end{smallmatrix}} A \xrightarrow{f} B,$$

where $[x]$ and $[y]$ are the morphisms picking the elements x and y of A . If $f(x) = f(y)$, then $f \circ [x] = f \circ [y]$, and thus $[x] = [y]$ since f is a monomorphism. Hence $x = y$ and we see that f is injective.

Conversely, suppose that f is injective. Proceeding by contrapositive, we claim that given a pair of maps $g, h: X \rightrightarrows A$ such that $g \neq h$, then $f \circ g \neq f \circ h$. Indeed, as g and h are different maps, there must exist at least one element $x \in X$ such that $g(x) \neq h(x)$. But then we have $f(g(x)) \neq f(h(x))$, since f is injective. Thus $f \circ g \neq f \circ h$, and we are done, having showed that f is a monomorphism. \square

0118 **Proposition 12.1.1.1.3.** Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism of \mathcal{C} .

0119 (1) *Characterisations.* The following conditions are equivalent:

- 011A** (a) The morphism f is a monomorphism.
- 011B** (b) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$, the map of sets

$$f_*: \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Sets}}(X, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Sets}}(X, B)$$

- 011C** is injective.
 (c) The kernel pair of f is trivial, i.e. we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_A} & A \\ A \times_B A \cong A, & \text{id}_A \downarrow & \downarrow f \\ & & A \xrightarrow{f} B. \end{array}$$

- 011D** (2) *Duality.* The following conditions are equivalent:
 (a) The morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ is a monomorphism in C .
 (b) The morphism $f^\dagger: B \rightarrow A$ is an epimorphism in C^{op} .

- 011E** (3) *Monomorphisms vs. Injective Maps.* Let
 - C be a concrete category as in ??;
 - $\mathfrak{F}_C: C \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be the forgetful functor from C to Sets ;
 - $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism of C .

If \mathfrak{F}_C preserves pullbacks, then the following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The morphism f is a monomorphism.
 (b) The morphism $\mathfrak{F}(f)_C$ is injective.
011F (4) *Stability Properties.* The class of all monomorphisms of C is stable under the following operations:
 (a) *Composition.* If f and g are monomorphisms, then so is $g \circ f$.¹
 (b) *Pullbacks.* Let

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times_C B & \longrightarrow & B \\ m' \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow m \\ A & \longrightarrow & C \end{array}$$

be a diagram in C . If m is a monomorphism in C , then so is m' .

- 011G** (5) *Morphisms From the Terminal Object Are Monomorphisms.* If C has a terminal object $\mathbb{1}_C$, then every morphism of C from $\mathbb{1}_C$ is a monomorphism.

Proof. *Item 1, Characterisations:* The equivalence between Items 1a and 1b is clear. We claim that Items 1a and 1c are equivalent:

¹Conversely, if $g \circ f$ is a monomorphism, then so is f .

- (1) *Item 1a* \implies *Item 1c*: Suppose that f is a monomorphism. Then A satisfies the universal property of the pullback:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & P & & & \\
 & \searrow \phi & \nearrow \phi & & \\
 & A & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_A} & A & \\
 & \downarrow \lrcorner & & & \downarrow f \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & B.
 \end{array}$$

- (2) *Item 1c* \implies *Item 1a*: Suppose that $A \cong A \times_B A$ and let $g, h: C \rightrightarrows A$ be a pair of morphisms. Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & C & & & \\
 & \searrow g & \nearrow h & & \\
 & A & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_A} & A & \\
 & \downarrow \lrcorner & & & \downarrow f \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & B.
 \end{array}$$

The universal property of the pullback says that there exists a unique morphism $C \rightarrow A$ making the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & C & & & \\
 & \searrow \exists! & \nearrow g & & \\
 & A & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_A} & A & \\
 & \downarrow \lrcorner & & & \downarrow f \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & B.
 \end{array}$$

commute, which implies $g = h$. Therefore, f is a monomorphism.

Item 3, Monomorphisms vs. Injective Maps: Assume that f is injective. As the forgetful functor from C to **Sets** is faithful, we see that [Proposition 12.1.2.1.2](#) together with ?? imply that f is a monomorphism.

Conversely, assume that f is a monomorphism. As F preserves pullbacks, it also preserves kernel pairs. By ??, we see that F preserves monomorphisms. Thus F_f is a monomorphism, and hence is injective by ??.

Item 4, Stability Properties: Let $f, g: X \rightrightarrows A \times_C B$ be two morphisms such that the diagram

$$X \xrightleftharpoons[g]{f} A \times_C B \xrightarrow{m'} A$$

commutes. It follows that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & X & & & \\
 & \swarrow f & \searrow \text{pr}_2 \circ f & & \\
 & A \times_C B & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{pr}_2 \quad} & B & \\
 & \downarrow m' & \lrcorner & \downarrow m & \\
 A & \xrightarrow{\psi} & C & &
 \end{array}$$

$m' \circ g$ m' ψ

also commutes. From the universal property of the pullback, it follows that there must be precisely one morphism from X to $A \times_C B$ making the above diagram commute. Thus $f = g$ and m' is a monomorphism.

Item 5, Morphisms From the Terminal Object Are Monomorphisms: Clear. \square

12.1.2. Monomorphism-Reflecting Functors.

011J Definition 12.1.2.1.1. A functor $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ **reflects monomorphisms** if, for each morphism f of C , whenever F_f is a monomorphism, so is f .

011K Proposition 12.1.2.1.2. Let $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a functor. If F is faithful, then it reflects monomorphisms.

Proof. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism of C and suppose that $F_f: F_A \rightarrow F_B$ is a monomorphism. Let $g, h: B \rightrightarrows C$ be two morphisms of C such that $g \circ f = h \circ f$. As F is faithful, we must have

$$F_g \circ F_f = F_{g \circ f} = F_{h \circ f} = F_h \circ F_f,$$

but as F_f is a monomorphism, it must be that $F_g = F_h$. Using the faithfulness of F again, we see that $g = h$. Therefore f is a monomorphism. \square

12.1.3. Split Monomorphisms.

Let C be a category.

011M Definition 12.1.3.1.1. A morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ of C is a **split monomorphism**² if there exists a morphism $g: B \rightarrow A$ of C such that³

$$g \circ f = \text{id}_A.$$

011N Proposition 12.1.3.1.2. Let C be a category.

011P (1) *Split Monomorphisms are Monomorphisms.* If m is a split monomorphism, then m is a monomorphism.

Proof. **Item 1, Split Monomorphisms are Monomorphisms:** Let $m: A \rightarrow B$ be a split monomorphism of C , let $e: B \rightarrow A$ be a morphism of C with

$$e \circ m = \text{id}_A,$$

²Further Terminology: Also called a **section**, or a **split monic** morphism.

³ **Warning:** There exist monomorphisms which are not split monomorphisms, e.g. $\mathbb{Z}/2 \hookrightarrow \mathbb{Z}/4$ in **Ring**.

and let $f, g: C \rightrightarrows A$ be two morphisms of C such that the diagram

$$C \xrightarrow{\begin{matrix} f \\ g \end{matrix}} A \xrightarrow{m} B$$

commutes. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} f &= \text{id}_A \circ f \\ &= (e \circ m) \circ f \\ &= e \circ (m \circ f) \\ &= e \circ (m \circ g) \\ &= (e \circ m) \circ g \\ &= \text{id}_A \circ g \\ &= g, \end{aligned}$$

showing m to be a monomorphism. \square

12.2. Epimorphisms

12.2.1. Foundations. Let C be a category.

011S Definition 12.2.1.1.1. A morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ of C is an **epimorphism** if for every commutative⁴ diagram of the form

$$A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{\begin{matrix} g \\ h \end{matrix}} C,$$

we have $g = h$.

011T Example 12.2.1.1.2. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a function. The following conditions are equivalent:

- (1) The function f is injective.
- (2) The function f is an epimorphism in Sets.

Proof. Suppose that f is surjective and let $g, h: B \rightrightarrows C$ be morphisms such that $g \circ f = h \circ f$. Then for each $a \in A$, we have

$$g(f(a)) = h(f(a)),$$

but this implies that

$$g(b) = h(b)$$

for each $b \in B$, as f is surjective. Thus $g = h$ and f is an epimorphism.

To prove the converse, we proceed by contrapositive. So suppose that f is not surjective and consider the diagram

$$A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{\begin{matrix} g \\ h \end{matrix}} C,$$

where h is the map defined by $h(b) = 0$ for each $b \in B$ and g is the map defined by

$$g(b) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } b \in \text{Im}(f), \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

⁴That is, with $g \circ f = h \circ f$.

Then $h \circ f = g \circ f$, as $h(f(a)) = 1 = g(f(a))$ for each $a \in A$. However, for any $b \in B \setminus \text{Im}(f)$, we have

$$g(b) = 0 \neq 1 = h(b).$$

Therefore $g \neq h$ and f is not an epimorphism. \square

011U Proposition 12.2.1.1.3. Let C be a category.

011V (1) *Characterisations.* Let C be a category with pullbacks and $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism of C . The following conditions are equivalent:

- 011W** (a) The morphism f is an epimorphism.
011X (b) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the map of sets

$$f^*: \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(B, X) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(A, X)$$

is injective.

011Y (c) The cokernel pair of f is trivial, i.e. we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & B & \\ & \lrcorner & \\ B \coprod_A B & \cong & B \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow f \\ & B & \\ & \xleftarrow{f} & \\ & A & \end{array}$$

011Z (2) *Epimorphisms vs. Surjective Maps.* Let

- C be a concrete category;
- $\mathfrak{F}: C \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ be the forgetful functor from C to Sets ;
- $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism of C .

If \mathfrak{F} preserves pushouts, then the following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The morphism f is an epimorphism.
- (b) The morphism f is surjective.

0120 (3) *Stability Properties.* The class of all epimorphisms of C is stable under the following operations:

- (a) *Composition.* If f and g are epimorphisms, then so is $g \circ f$.⁵
- (b) *Pushouts.* Let

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \coprod_C B & \xleftarrow{\quad} & B \\ \uparrow e' & \lrcorner & \uparrow e \\ A & \longrightarrow & C \end{array}$$

be a diagram in C . If m is an epimorphism in C , then so is e' .

0121 (4) *Morphisms to the Initial Object Are Monomorphisms.* If C has an initial object \emptyset_C , then every morphism of C to \emptyset_C is an epimorphism.

Proof. This is dual to [Proposition 12.1.1.3](#). \square

12.2.2. Regular Epimorphisms.

0123 **Proposition 12.2.2.1.1.** Let C be a category.

⁵Conversely, if $g \circ f$ is an epimorphism, then so is g .

(1) *Stability Under Pullbacks.* Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times_C B & \longrightarrow & B \\ e' \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow e \\ A & \longrightarrow & C \end{array}$$

in C . If e is a regular epimorphism, then so is e' .

Proof. *Epimorphisms Need Not Be Stable Under Pullback. : Regular Epimorphisms Are Stable Under Pullback.* \square

12.2.3. Effective Epimorphisms. Let C be a category.

0125 Definition 12.2.3.1.1. An epimorphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ of C is **effective** if we have an isomorphism

$$B \cong \text{CoEq}(A \times_B A \rightrightarrows A).$$

12.2.4. Split Epimorphisms. Let C be a category.

0127 Definition 12.2.4.1.1. A morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ of C is a **retraction**⁶ if there is an arrow $g: B \rightarrow A$ such that $f \circ g = \text{id}_B$.

0128 Proposition 12.2.4.1.2. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a morphism of C .

(1) Every split epimorphism is an epimorphism.⁷

Proof. This is dual to ??.

\square

Appendices

12.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

(11) Categories

- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

⁶Further Terminology: Also called a **split epimorphism**.

⁷Warning: There are epimorphisms which are not split epimorphisms, however, e.g. $\mathbb{Z} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{Z}/2$.

Cyclic Stuff	(21) The Cycle Category	Near-Rings
Cubical Stuff	(22) The Cube Category	(35) Near-Semirings
Globular Stuff	(23) The Globe Category	(36) Near-Rings
Cellular Stuff	(24) The Cell Category	Real Analysis
Monoids	(25) Monoids	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
	(26) Constructions	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
	With Monoids	
Monoids With Zero	(27) Monoids With Zero	Measure Theory
	(28) Constructions	(39) Measurable Spaces
	With Monoids With Zero	(40) Measures and Integration
Groups	(29) Groups	Probability Theory
	(30) Constructions With Groups	(40) Probability Theory
Hyper Algebra	(31) Hypermonoids	Stochastic Analysis
	(32) Hypergroups	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyper-rings	(42) Itô Calculus
	(34) Quantales	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
		Differential Geometry
		(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
		Schemes
		(45) Schemes

12.2. Other Chapters

Sets	(1) Sets	(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
	(2) Constructions With Sets	(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
	(3) Pointed Sets	(14) Constructions With Categories
	(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(15) Profunctors
	(5) Relations	(16) Cartesian Closed Categories
	(6) Spans	(17) Kan Extensions
	(7) Posets	
Indexed and Fibred Sets		Bicategories
	(7) Indexed Sets	(18) Bicategories
	(8) Fibred Sets	(19) Internal Adjunctions
	(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	Internal Category Theory
Category Theory		(20) Internal Categories
	(11) Categories	Cyclic Stuff
		(21) The Cycle Category
		Cubical Stuff

(22) The Cube Category	(35) Near-Semirings
Globular Stuff	(36) Near-Rings
(23) The Globe Category	Real Analysis
Cellular Stuff	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(24) The Cell Category	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
Monoids	Measure Theory
(25) Monoids	(39) Measurable Spaces
(26) Constructions	(40) Measures and Integration
Monoids	Probability Theory
Monoids With Zero	(40) Probability Theory
(27) Monoids With Zero	Stochastic Analysis
(28) Constructions	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
Monoids With Zero	(42) Itô Calculus
Groups	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
(29) Groups	Differential Geometry
(30) Constructions With Groups	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
Hyper Algebra	Schemes
(31) Hypermonoids	(45) Schemes
(32) Hypergroups	
(33) Hypersemirings and Hyper-rings	
(34) Quantales	
Near-Rings	

CHAPTER 13

Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma

0129

13.1. Other Chapters

Sets	Globular Stuff
(1) Sets	(23) The Globe Category
(2) Constructions With Sets	Cellular Stuff
(3) Pointed Sets	(24) The Cell Category
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	Monoids
(5) Relations	(25) Monoids
(6) Spans	(26) Constructions With Monoids
(7) Posets	Monoids With Zero
Indexed and Fibred Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
(7) Indexed Sets	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
(8) Fibred Sets	Groups
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(29) Groups
Category Theory	(30) Constructions With Groups
(11) Categories	Hyper Algebra
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(31) Hypermonoids
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	(32) Hypergroups
(14) Constructions With Categories	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
(15) Profunctors	(34) Quantales
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	Near-Rings
(17) Kan Extensions	(35) Near-Semirings
Bicategories	(36) Near-Rings
(18) Bicategories	Real Analysis
(19) Internal Adjunctions	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
Internal Category Theory	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
(20) Internal Categories	Measure Theory
Cyclic Stuff	(39) Measurable Spaces
(21) The Cycle Category	(40) Measures and Integration
Cubical Stuff	Probability Theory
(22) The Cube Category	

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

CHAPTER 14

Constructions With Categories

012A

Appendices

14.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

- (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory**
- (40) Probability Theory
- Stochastic Analysis**
- (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
 - (42) Itô Calculus
- (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
- Differential Geometry**
- (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
- Schemes**
- (45) Schemes

14.2. Other Chapters

- | | |
|--|---|
| Sets | Globular Stuff |
| (1) Sets | (23) The Globe Category |
| (2) Constructions With Sets | Cellular Stuff |
| (3) Pointed Sets | (24) The Cell Category |
| (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets | Monoids |
| (5) Relations | (25) Monoids |
| (6) Spans | (26) Constructions With Monoids |
| (7) Posets | Monoids With Zero |
| Indexed and Fibred Sets | (27) Monoids With Zero |
| (7) Indexed Sets | (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero |
| (8) Fibred Sets | Groups |
| (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets | (29) Groups |
| Category Theory | (30) Constructions With Groups |
| (11) Categories | Hyper Algebra |
| (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories | (31) Hypermonoids |
| (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma | (32) Hypergroups |
| (14) Constructions With Categories | (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings |
| (15) Profunctors | (34) Quantales |
| (16) Cartesian Closed Categories | Near-Rings |
| (17) Kan Extensions | (35) Near-Semirings |
| Bicategories | (36) Near-Rings |
| (18) Bicategories | Real Analysis |
| (19) Internal Adjunctions | (37) Real Analysis in One Variable |
| Internal Category Theory | (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables |
| (20) Internal Categories | Measure Theory |
| Cyclic Stuff | (39) Measurable Spaces |
| (21) The Cycle Category | (40) Measures and Integration |
| Cubical Stuff | Probability Theory |
| (22) The Cube Category | |

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

CHAPTER 15

Profunctors

012B

15.1. Profunctors

15.1.1. Foundations. Let \mathcal{C} and \mathcal{D} be categories.

012E **Definition 15.1.1.1.1.** A profunctor¹ $\wp: \mathcal{C} \nrightarrow \mathcal{D}$ from \mathcal{C} to \mathcal{D} is a functor $\wp: \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$.

012F **Remark 15.1.1.1.2.** Equivalently, we may define a profunctor from \mathcal{C} to \mathcal{D} as:

012G (1) A functor $\wp: \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$;

012H (2) A functor $\wp: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{PSh}(\mathcal{D})$;

012J (3) A functor $\wp: \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Sets})$;

012K (4) A cocontinuous functor $\wp: \text{PSh}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \text{PSh}(\mathcal{D})$;

That is, we have isomorphisms of categories

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Prof}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}) &\cong \text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \text{PSh}(\mathcal{D})), \\ &\cong \text{Fun}(\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}}, \text{CoPSh}(\mathcal{C})), \\ &\cong \text{CoContFun}(\text{PSh}(\mathcal{C}), \text{PSh}(\mathcal{D})), \end{aligned}$$

natural in $\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Cats})$.

Proof. We claim that **Items 1 to 4** are indeed equivalent:

- The equivalence between **Items 1 and 2** is an instance of currying, following from the isomorphisms of categories

$$\text{Fun}(\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C}, \text{Sets}) \cong \text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Fun}(\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}}, \text{Sets})) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \text{PSh}(\mathcal{D})).$$

- The equivalence between **Items 1 and 3** is also an instance of currying, following from the isomorphisms of categories

$$\text{Fun}(\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C}, \text{Sets}) \cong \text{Fun}(\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}}, \text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Sets})) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Fun}(\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}}, \text{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Sets})).$$

- The equivalence between **Items 1 and 4** follows from the universal property of the category $\text{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$ of presheaves on \mathcal{C} as the free cocompletion of \mathcal{C} via the Yoneda embedding

$$\mathfrak{y}: \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \hookrightarrow \text{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$$

of \mathcal{C} into $\text{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$ (?? of ??).

This finishes the proof. \square

15.2. Operations With Profunctors

15.2.1. The Domain and Range of a Profunctor.

¹*Further Terminology:* Also called a **distributor**, a **bimodule**, a **correspondence**, or a **relator**.

012N Definition 15.2.1.1.1. Let $\mathbf{p}: C \nrightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a profunctor.²

- (1) The **domain of \mathbf{p}** is the presheaf $\text{dom}(\mathbf{p}): \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ on \mathcal{D} defined by

$$\text{dom}(\mathbf{p})^- \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{colim}_{B \in \mathcal{D}} (\mathbf{p}_B^-).$$

- (2) The **range of \mathbf{p}** is the copresheaf $\text{range}(\mathbf{p}): C \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ on C defined by

$$\text{range}(\mathbf{p})_- \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{colim}_{A \in \mathcal{D}} (\mathbf{p}_A^A).$$

15.2.2. Composition of Profunctors. Let C , \mathcal{D} , and \mathcal{E} be categories and let $\mathbf{p}: C \nrightarrow \mathcal{D}$ and $\mathbf{q}: \mathcal{D} \nrightarrow \mathcal{E}$ be profunctors.

012Q Definition 15.2.2.1.1. The **composition of \mathbf{p} and \mathbf{q}** is the profunctor $\mathbf{q} \diamond \mathbf{p}: C \nrightarrow \mathcal{E}$ defined by³

$$(\mathbf{q} \diamond \mathbf{p})_{-2}^{-1} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int^{B \in \mathcal{D}} \mathbf{q}_B^{-1} \times \mathbf{p}_{-2}^B.$$

15.2.3. Representable Profunctors.

012S Definition 15.2.3.1.1. The **representable profunctor associated to a functor** $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is the profunctor $\widehat{F}^*: C \nrightarrow \mathcal{D}$ defined as the adjunct of the composition

$$C \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{D} \xrightarrow{\mathcal{L}} \mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{D})$$

under the adjunction

$$\text{Fun}(\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \times C, \text{Sets}) \cong \text{Fun}(C, \mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{D}))$$

of ?? of ??.⁴

²In other words, the domain and range of \mathbf{p} are the functors

$$\text{dom}(\mathbf{p}): \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Sets},$$

$$\text{range}(\mathbf{p}): C \rightarrow \text{Sets}$$

defined by

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{p}^\dagger} & \mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{D}) \\ \text{dom}(\mathbf{p}) \searrow & \downarrow \text{colim} & \downarrow \\ & \text{Sets}, & \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{dom}(\mathbf{p}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{colim} \circ \mathbf{p}^\dagger, \\ \text{range}(\mathbf{p}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{colim} \circ \mathbf{p}^\ddagger, \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{p}^\dagger} & \text{Fun}(C, \text{Sets}) \\ \text{range}(\mathbf{p}) \searrow & \downarrow \text{colim} & \downarrow \\ & \text{Sets}. & \end{array}$$

³Alternatively, we may define $\mathbf{q} \diamond \mathbf{p}$ (using the equivalent definition of Item 2 of Remark 15.1.1.1.2) by

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{p}^\dagger} & \mathbf{PSh}(C). \\ \downarrow \mathcal{L} & \nearrow \text{Lan}_{\mathcal{L}}(\mathbf{p}^\dagger) & \\ \mathcal{E} & \xrightarrow[\mathbf{q}^\dagger]{} & \mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{D}) \end{array}$$

⁴That is, we have

$$\widehat{F}^* \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(-_1, F_{-2}).$$

012T Definition 15.2.3.1.2. A profunctor is **representable** if it is isomorphic to a representable profunctor.

012U Definition 15.2.3.1.3. The **corepresentable⁵** profunctor associated to a functor $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is the profunctor $\widehat{F}_*: \mathcal{D} \nrightarrow C$ defined as the adjunct of the composition

$$C^{\text{op}} \xrightarrow{F^{\text{op}}} \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \xrightarrow{\exists} \text{CoPSh}(\mathcal{D})$$

under the adjunction

$$\text{Fun}(C^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{D}, \text{Sets}) \cong \text{Fun}(C^{\text{op}}, \text{CoPSh}(\mathcal{D}))$$

of ?? of ??.⁶

012V Definition 15.2.3.1.4. A profunctor is **corepresentable** if it is isomorphic to a corepresentable profunctor.

15.2.4. Collages. Let C and \mathcal{D} be categories.

012X Definition 15.2.4.1.1. The **collage** of a profunctor $\mathbf{p}: C \nrightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is the category $\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})$ ⁷ where⁸

- *Objects.* We have

$$\text{Obj}(\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Obj}(C) \coprod \text{Obj}(\mathcal{D});$$

- *Morphisms.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p}))$, we have

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})}(A, B) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{Hom}_C(A, B) & \text{if } A, B \in \text{Obj}(C), \\ \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(A, B) & \text{if } A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{D}), \\ \mathbf{p}(A, B) & \text{if } A \in \text{Obj}(C) \text{ and } B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{D}), \\ \emptyset & \text{if } A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{D}) \text{ and } B \in \text{Obj}(C); \end{cases}$$

- *Identities.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p}))$, the unit map

$$\mathbb{1}_A^{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})}: \text{pt} \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})}(A, A)$$

⁵Some authors call both \widehat{F}^* and \widehat{F}_* the **representable profunctors associated to F** .

⁶That is:

$$\widehat{F}_* \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(F_{-1}, -_2,).$$

⁷Further Notation: Also written $C \star^{\mathbf{p}} \mathcal{D}$, notably in [HigherToposTheory].

⁸We also have a functor $\phi: \text{Coll}(\mathbf{p}) \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$ where

- *Actions on Objects.* For each $A \in \text{Obj}(\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p}))$, we have

$$\phi_A \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} [0] & \text{if } A \in \text{Obj}(C), \\ [1] & \text{if } A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{D}). \end{cases}$$

- *Actions on Morphisms.* For each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p}))$, the action on morphisms

$$\phi_{A,B}: \text{Hom}_{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})}(\phi_A, \phi_B)$$

of ϕ at (A, B) is given by

$$\phi_{A,B}(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{id}_{[0]} & \text{if } A, B \in \text{Obj}(C), \\ \text{id}_{[1]} & \text{if } A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{D}), \\ [0] \rightarrow [1] & \text{if } A \in \text{Obj}(C) \text{ and } B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{D}). \end{cases}$$

If $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{D})$ and $B \in \text{Obj}(C)$, we have $\phi_{A,B} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_{\emptyset}$.

of $\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})$ at A is defined by

$$\text{id}_A \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \text{id}_A^C & \text{if } A \in \text{Obj}(C), \\ \text{id}_A^D & \text{if } A \in \text{Obj}(D); \end{cases}$$

- *Composition.* For each $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p}))$, the composition map

$$\circ_{A,B,C}^{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})}: \text{Hom}_{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})}(B, C) \times \text{Hom}_{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})}(A, B) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})}(A, C)$$

of $\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})$ at (A, B, C) is defined by⁹

$$\circ_{A,B,C}^{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \circ_{A,B,C}^C & \text{if } A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(C), \\ \mathbf{p}_C^{A,B} & \text{if } A, B \in \text{Obj}(C) \text{ and } C \in \text{Obj}(D), \\ \iota & \text{if } A, C \in \text{Obj}(C) \text{ and } B \in \text{Obj}(D), \\ \iota & \text{if } B, C \in \text{Obj}(C) \text{ and } A \in \text{Obj}(D), \\ \mathbf{p}_{B,C}^A & \text{if } A \in \text{Obj}(C) \text{ and } B, C \in \text{Obj}(D), \\ \iota & \text{if } B \in \text{Obj}(C) \text{ and } A, C \in \text{Obj}(D), \\ \iota & \text{if } C \in \text{Obj}(C) \text{ and } A, B \in \text{Obj}(D), \\ \circ_{A,B,C}^D & \text{if } A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(D). \end{cases}$$

012Y Example 15.2.4.1.2. If \mathbf{p} is the constant functor $\Delta_{\text{pt}}: \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Sets}$ with value pt , then $\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})$ is the join $\mathcal{C} \star \mathcal{D}$ of \mathcal{C} and \mathcal{D} of ??.

012Z Proposition 15.2.4.1.3. Let $\mathbf{p}: \mathcal{C} \nrightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a profunctor.

0130 (1) *Functoriality.* The assignment $\mathbf{p} \mapsto \text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})$ defines a functor¹⁰

$$\text{Coll}_{\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}}: \text{Prof}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}) \rightarrow \text{Cats}_{/\mathbb{M}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}),$$

where

⁹Here the maps $\mathbf{p}_C^{A,B}$ and $\mathbf{p}_{B,C}^A$ are the maps

$$\mathbf{p}_C^{A,B}: \mathbf{p}_C^B \times \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{p}_C^A,$$

$$\mathbf{p}_{B,C}^A: \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(B, C) \times \mathbf{p}_B^A \rightarrow \mathbf{p}_C^A$$

coming from the profunctor structure of \mathbf{p} and the ι 's are inclusions of the empty set into the appropriate Hom sets.

¹⁰Here $\text{Cats}_{/\mathbb{M}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$ is the category defined as the pullback

$$\text{Cats}_{/\mathbb{M}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{pt} \underset{[\mathcal{C}], \text{Cats}, \text{fib}_0}{\times} \text{Cats}_{/\mathbb{M}} \underset{\text{fib}_1, \text{Cats}, [\mathcal{D}]}{\times} \text{pt},$$

as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \text{Cats}_{/\mathbb{M}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}) & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ & & \text{Cats}_{/\mathbb{M}} \times \text{pt} & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ \text{pt} & & & & \text{pt.} \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ & & \text{Cats}_{/\mathbb{M}} & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ & [C] & & \text{fib}_{[0]} & \text{fib}_{[1]} \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ & \text{Cats} & & \text{Cats} & \\ & & \text{fib}_{[0]} & \text{fib}_{[1]} & \\ & & \text{Cats} & & \text{Cats} \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \end{array}$$

- *Action on Objects.* For each $\mathbf{p} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Prof}(C, D))$, we have

$$[\text{Coll}](\mathbf{p}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Coll}(\mathbf{p});$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q} \in \text{Obj}(\text{Prof}(C, D))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\text{Coll}_{\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}}: \text{Nat}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) \rightarrow \text{Fun}_{/\mathbb{H}}(\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p}), \text{Coll}(\mathbf{q}))$$

of Coll at (\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) is the function sending a natural transformation $\alpha: \mathbf{p} \Rightarrow \mathbf{q}$ to the functor

$$\text{Coll}(\alpha): \text{Coll}(\mathbf{p}) \rightarrow \text{Coll}(\mathbf{q})$$

over \mathbb{H} where

- *Action on Objects.* For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p}))$, we have

$$[\text{Coll}(\alpha)](X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X;$$

- *Action on Morphisms.* For each $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p}))$, the action on Hom-sets

$$\text{Coll}(\alpha)_{X, Y}: \text{Hom}_{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})}(X, Y) \rightarrow \underbrace{\text{Hom}_{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{q})}([\text{Coll}(\alpha)](X), [\text{Coll}(\alpha)](Y))}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Hom}_{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{q})}(X, Y)}$$

of $\text{Coll}(\alpha)$ at (X, Y) is defined as follows:

- * If $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(C)$ or $X, Y \in \text{Obj}(D)$, then we have

$$\text{Coll}(\alpha)_{X, Y}(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f$$

for each $f \in \text{Hom}_{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})}(X, Y)$.

- * If $X \in \text{Obj}(C)$ and $Y \in \text{Obj}(D)$, then

$$\text{Coll}(\alpha)_{X, Y}: \underbrace{\text{Hom}_{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p})}(X, Y)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbf{p}_Y^X} \rightarrow \underbrace{\text{Hom}_{\text{Coll}(\mathbf{q})}(X, Y)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbf{q}_Y^X}$$

is defined by

$$\text{Coll}(\alpha)_{X, Y}(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \alpha_Y^X;$$

- * If $Y \in \text{Obj}(C)$ and $X \in \text{Obj}(D)$, then we have

$$\text{Coll}(\alpha)_{X, Y}(f) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{id}_{\emptyset}.$$

0131 (2) *Collages as Lax Colimits.* We have an isomorphism of categories

$$\text{Coll}(\mathbf{p}) \cong \text{colim}^{\text{lax}}(\mathbf{p}),$$

functorial in \mathbf{p} , where the above lax colimit is taken in the bicategory Prof .

0132 (3) *Profunctors vs. Collages.* We have an equivalence of categories

$$(\text{Coll} \dashv \Gamma): \text{Prof}(C, D) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\text{Coll}} \\[-1ex] \xleftarrow[\Gamma]{\perp_{\text{eq}}} \end{array} \text{Cats}_{/\mathbb{H}},$$

where $\Gamma: \text{Cats}_{/\mathbb{H}} \rightarrow \text{Prof}(C, D)$ is the functor sending a functor $\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbb{H}$ to the profunctor

$$\Gamma(\mathbf{p}): C \nrightarrow D$$

given on objects by

$$\Gamma(\mathbf{p})_B^A \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{E}}(A, B)$$

for each $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{E})$.

Proof. *Item 1, Functoriality:* Omitted.

Item 2, Collages as Lax Colimits: See [collages-as-lax-colimits].

Item 3, Profunctors vs. Collages: See [joyal:distributors-and-barrels]. \square

15.3. Categories of Profunctors

15.3.1. The Bicategory of Profunctors.

0135 Definition 15.3.1.1.1. The **bicategory of profunctors** is the bicategory Prof where¹¹

- (1) *Objects.* The objects of Prof are categories;
- (2) *1-Morphisms.* The 1-morphisms of Prof are profunctors;
- (3) *2-Morphisms.* The 2-morphisms of Prof are natural transformations between profunctors;
- (4) *Identities.* For each $C \in \text{Obj}(\text{Prof})$, we have

$$\text{id}_C^{\text{Prof}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Hom}_C(-, -);$$

- (5) *Composition.* For each $C, D, E \in \text{Obj}(\text{Prof})$, the composition bifunctor

$$\diamond: \text{Prof}(D, E) \times \text{Prof}(C, D) \rightarrow \text{Prof}(C, E)$$

is defined on objects by sending profunctors $p: C \nrightarrow D$ and $q: D \nrightarrow E$ to the profunctor $q \diamond p$ of [Definition 15.2.2.1.1](#).

Proof. See [Definition 15.3.1.1.1](#). \square

15.3.2. Properties of Prof.

0137 Proposition 15.3.2.1.1. Let C and D be categories.

0138 (1) Self-Duality. The bicategory Prof is self-dual: we have a biequivalence of bicategories

$$(-)^{\text{op}}: \text{Prof} \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{Prof}^{\text{op}}$$

where

- *Action on Objects.* The functor $(-)^{\text{op}}$ sends categories to their opposites;
- *Action on 1-Morphisms.* The functor $(-)^{\text{op}}$ sends profunctors to itself under the identification

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Prof}(C, D) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Fun}(D^{\text{op}} \times C, \text{Sets}), \\ &\cong \text{Fun}(C \times D^{\text{op}}, \text{Sets}), \\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Prof}(D^{\text{op}}, C^{\text{op}}); \end{aligned}$$

- *Action on 2-Morphisms.* The functor $(-)^{\text{op}}$ sends natural transformations between profunctors to themselves.

¹¹The bicategory Prof admits a nice strictification to a 2-category: it is biequivalent to the sub-bicategory of Cats spanned by the presheaf categories, cocontinuous functors between them, and natural transformation between these.

- 0139 (2) *Relation to Cats.* The co/representable profunctor constructions of Definitions 15.2.3.1.1 and 15.2.3.1.3 define embeddings of bicategories

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{Cats}^{\text{op}} &\hookrightarrow \mathbf{Prof}, \\ \mathbf{Cats}^{\text{co}} &\hookrightarrow \mathbf{Prof}.\end{aligned}$$

- 013A (3) *Equivalences in Prof and Cauchy Completions.* Every category is equivalent to its Cauchy completion in \mathbf{Prof} .

- 013B (4) *Equivalences in Prof.* The following conditions are equivalent:

- (a) The categories \mathcal{C} and \mathcal{D} are equivalent in \mathbf{Prof} .
- (b) The categories $\mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$ and $\mathbf{PSh}(\mathcal{D})$ are equivalent in \mathbf{Cats}_2 .
- (c) The Cauchy completions of \mathcal{C} and \mathcal{D} are equivalent in \mathbf{Cats}_2 .

- 013C (5) *Adjunctions in Prof.* Let \mathcal{C} and \mathcal{D} be categories. The following data are equivalent:

- (a) An adjunction in \mathbf{Prof} from \mathcal{C} to \mathcal{D} .
- (b) A functor from \mathcal{C} to the Cauchy completion $\overline{\mathcal{D}}$ of \mathcal{D} .
- (c) A *semifunctor* from \mathcal{C} to \mathcal{D} .

- 013D (6) *As a Kleisli Bicategory.* We have a biequivalence of bicategories

$$\mathbf{Prof} \cong \mathbf{FreePsAlg}_{\mathbf{PSh}},$$

where \mathbf{PSh} is the presheaf category relative pseudomonad of [relative-pseudomonads-kleisli].

- 013E (7) *Closedness.* The bicategory \mathbf{Prof} is a closed bicategory, where given a profunctor $\mathfrak{p}: \mathcal{C} \nrightarrow \mathcal{D}$ and a category \mathcal{X} :

- *Right Kan Extensions.* The right adjoint

$$\text{Ran}_{\mathfrak{p}}: \text{Rel}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{X}) \rightarrow \text{Rel}(\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{X})$$

to the precomposition functor $\mathfrak{p}^*: \text{Rel}(\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{X}) \rightarrow \text{Rel}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{X})$ is given by

$$\text{Ran}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\mathfrak{q}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int_{A \in \mathcal{C}} \mathbf{Sets}(\mathfrak{p}_A^{-2}, \mathfrak{q}_A^{-1})$$

for each $\mathfrak{q} \in \text{Rel}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{X})$.

- *Right Kan Lifts.* The right adjoint to the postcomposition functor

$$\text{Rift}_{\mathfrak{p}}: \text{Rel}(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{D}) \rightarrow \text{Rel}(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{C})$$

to the postcomposition functor $\mathfrak{p}_*: \text{Rel}(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \text{Rel}(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{D})$ is given by

$$\text{Rift}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\mathfrak{q}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int_{B \in \mathcal{D}} \mathbf{Sets}(\mathfrak{p}_{-1}^B, \mathfrak{q}_{-2}^B)$$

for each $\mathfrak{q} \in \text{Rel}(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{D})$.

- 013F (8) *Un/Straightening for Profunctors: Two-Sided Discrete Fibrations.*

We have an equivalence of categories

$$\mathbf{Prof}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}) \cong \mathbf{DFib}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}).$$

Proof. *Item 1, Self-Duality:* See [lorelian2020coend].

Item 2, Relation to Cats: See [lorelian2020coend].

Item 3, Equivalences in Prof and Cauchy Completions: See [borceux-2].

Item 4, Equivalences in Prof: See [borceux-2].

Item 5, Adjunctions in Prof: Omitted.

Item 6, As a Kleisli Bicategory: See [relative-pseudomonads-kleisli-bicategories-and-substitutio

Item 7, Closedness: Omitted.

Item 8, Un/Straightening for Profunctors: Two-Sided Discrete Fibrations:

See [riehl:two-sided-discrete-fibrations]

□

15.4. Other Chapters

Sets	Monoids
(1) Sets	(25) Monoids
(2) Constructions With Sets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
(3) Pointed Sets	Monoids With Zero
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
(5) Relations	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
(6) Spans	Groups
(7) Posets	(29) Groups
Indexed and Fibred Sets	(30) Constructions With Groups
(7) Indexed Sets	Hyper Algebra
(8) Fibred Sets	(31) Hypermonoids
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(32) Hypergroups
Category Theory	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
(11) Categories	(34) Quantales
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	Near-Rings
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	(35) Near-Semirings
(14) Constructions With Categories	(36) Near-Rings
(15) Profunctors	Real Analysis
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(17) Kan Extensions	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
Bicategories	Measure Theory
(18) Bicategories	(39) Measurable Spaces
(19) Internal Adjunctions	(40) Measures and Integration
Internal Category Theory	Probability Theory
(20) Internal Categories	(40) Probability Theory
Cyclic Stuff	Stochastic Analysis
(21) The Cycle Category	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
Cubical Stuff	(42) Itô Calculus
(22) The Cube Category	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
Globular Stuff	Differential Geometry
(23) The Globe Category	
Cellular Stuff	
(24) The Cell Category	

(44) Topological and Smooth Schemes Manifolds (45) Schemes

CHAPTER 16

Cartesian Closed Categories

013G Create tags (see [MSE 350788] for some of these):

- (1) define bicategory $\text{Adj}(C)$
- (2) <https://www.google.com/search?q=category+of+categories+is+not+locally+cartesian+closed>
- (3) <https://math.stackexchange.com/questions/2864916/are-the-re-important-locally-cartesian-closed-categories-that-actually-are-not-ca>
- (4) Cats is not locally Cartesian closed: f^* does have a left adjoint (the proof for fibred sets seems to apply for any category with pullbacks), but does not have a right adjoint, as proved in example 1.7 of https://sinhp.github.io/files/CT/notes_on_lcccs.pdf
- (5) internal **Hom** in categories of co/Cartesian fibrations
- (6) <https://mathoverflow.net/questions/460146/universal-property-of-isbell-duality>
- (7) <http://www.tac.mta.ca/tac/volumes/36/12/36-12abs.html>
- (8) Cartesian closed categories and locally Cartesian closed categories
 - (a) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/locally+cartesian+closed+functor>
 - (b) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/cartesian+closed+functor>
 - (c) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/locally+cartesian+closed+category>
 - (d) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/Frobenius+reciprocity>
- (9) <https://math.stackexchange.com/questions/3657046/the-inverse-of-a-natural-isomorphism-is-a-natural-isomorphism> to justify adjunctions via homs
- (10) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/enrichment+versus+internalisation>
- (11) <https://mathoverflow.net/questions/382239/proof-that-a-cartesian-category-is-monoidal>
- (12) <https://arxiv.org/pdf/2004.08964.pdf>

Create tags:

- (1) <https://www.google.com/search?q=category+of+categories+is+not+locally+cartesian+closed>
- (2) <https://math.stackexchange.com/questions/2864916/are-the-re-important-locally-cartesian-closed-categories-that-actually-are-not-ca>
- (3) Cats is not locally Cartesian closed: f^* does have a left adjoint (the proof for fibred sets seems to apply for any category with pullbacks),

but does not have a right adjoint, as proved in example 1.7 of
https://sinhp.github.io/files/CT/notes_on_lcccs.pdf

- (4) Cartesian closed categories and locally Cartesian closed categories
 - (a) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/locally+cartesian+closed+functor>
 - (b) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/cartesian+closed+functor>
 - (c) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/locally+cartesian+closed+category>
 - (d) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/Frobenius+reciprocity>
- (5) <https://mathoverflow.net/questions/382239/proof-that-a-cartesian-category-is-monoidal>

16.1. Cartesian Closed Categories

Appendices

16.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

(20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

(35) Near-Semirings	Stochastic Analysis
(36) Near-Rings	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
Real Analysis	(42) Itô Calculus
(37) Real Analysis in One Variable	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables	
Measure Theory	Differential Geometry
(39) Measurable Spaces	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
(40) Measures and Integration	
Probability Theory	Schemes
(40) Probability Theory	(45) Schemes

16.2. Other Chapters

Sets	(21) The Cycle Category
(1) Sets	Cubical Stuff
(2) Constructions With Sets	(22) The Cube Category
(3) Pointed Sets	Globular Stuff
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(23) The Globe Category
(5) Relations	Cellular Stuff
(6) Spans	(24) The Cell Category
(7) Posets	Monoids
Indexed and Fibred Sets	(25) Monoids
(7) Indexed Sets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
(8) Fibred Sets	Monoids With Zero
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
Category Theory	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
(11) Categories	Groups
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(29) Groups
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	(30) Constructions With Groups
(14) Constructions With Categories	Hyper Algebra
(15) Profunctors	(31) Hypermonoids
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	(32) Hypergroups
(17) Kan Extensions	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
Bicategories	(34) Quantales
(18) Bicategories	Near-Rings
(19) Internal Adjunctions	(35) Near-Semirings
Internal Category Theory	(36) Near-Rings
(20) Internal Categories	Real Analysis
Cyclic Stuff	

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
- Measure Theory
 - (39) Measurable Spaces
 - (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory
 - (40) Probability Theory
- Stochastic Analysis
 - (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
 - (42) Itô Calculus
 - (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
- Differential Geometry
 - (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
- Schemes
 - (45) Schemes

CHAPTER 17

Kan Extensions

013J

Appendices

17.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids

- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero

- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups

- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids

- (32) Hypergroups

- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings

- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings

- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable

- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

17.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

Part 4

Bicategories

CHAPTER 18

Bicategories

013K Create tags and TODO:

- (1) spans in bicategories: add Proposition 7 here: <https://arxiv.org/abs/1903.03890>
- (2) add fact: internal adjunctions in $\text{PseudoFun}(C, D)$ are precisely the invertible strong transformations as in [JY21, Example 6.2.7]. What are the internal adjunctions?

18.1. Monomorphisms in Bicategories

18.1.1. Faithful Monomorphisms. Let C be a bicategory.

013N **Definition 18.1.1.1.** A 1-morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ is a **faithful monomorphism in C** if the following equivalent conditions are satisfied:

013P (1) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the functor

$$f_*: \text{Hom}_C(X, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_C(X, B)$$

given by postcomposition by f is faithful.

013Q (2) Given a diagram in C of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\alpha \Downarrow \beta} & A \xrightarrow{f} B, \\ & \psi & \end{array}$$

if we have $\text{id}_f \star \alpha = \text{id}_f \star \beta$, then $\alpha = \beta$.

013R **Example 18.1.1.2.** Here are some examples of faithful monomorphisms.

013S (1) *Full Monomorphisms in Cats_2 .*

013T (2) *Full Monomorphisms in Rel .*

013U (3) *Full Monomorphisms in Span .*

18.1.2. Full Monomorphisms. Let C be a bicategory.

013W **Definition 18.1.2.1.1.** A 1-morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ is a **full monomorphism in C** if the following equivalent conditions are satisfied:

013X (1) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the functor

$$f_*: \text{Hom}_C(X, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_C(X, B)$$

given by postcomposition by f is full.

014F (2) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(C)$ and each 2-morphism

$$\gamma: f \circ \phi \Rightarrow f \circ \psi, \quad X \xrightarrow[\substack{\scriptstyle f \circ \psi \\ \scriptstyle \downarrow \gamma}]{} B$$

of C , there exists a 2-morphism $\alpha: \phi \Rightarrow \psi$ of C such that we have an equality

$$X \xrightarrow[\psi]{\alpha} A \xrightarrow{f} B = X \xrightarrow[\substack{\gamma \\ f \circ \psi}]{f \circ \phi} B$$

of pasting diagrams in C , i.e. such that we have

$$\gamma = \text{id}_f \star \alpha.$$

013Z Example 18.1.2.1.2. Here are some examples of full monomorphisms.

0140 (1) *Full Monomorphisms in Cats₂.*

0141 (2) *Full Monomorphisms in Rel.*

0142 (3) *Full Monomorphisms in Span.*

18.1.3. Fully Faithful Monomorphisms. Let C be a bicategory.

0144 Definition 18.1.3.1.1. A 1-morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ is a **fully faithful monomorphism** in C if the following equivalent conditions are satisfied:

0145 (1) The 1-morphism f is fully and faithful.

0146 (2) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the functor

$$f_*: \text{Hom}_C(X, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_C(X, B)$$

given by postcomposition by f is fully faithful.

0147 (3) The conditions in Item 1 of **Definition 18.1.1.1.1** and Item 1 of **Definition 18.1.2.1.1** hold.

0148 Example 18.1.3.1.2. Here are some examples of fully faithful monomorphisms.

0149 (1) *Fully Faithful Monomorphisms in Cats₂.*

014A (2) *Fully Faithful Monomorphisms in Rel.*

014B (3) *Fully Faithful Monomorphisms in Span.*

18.1.4. Strict Monomorphisms. Let C be a bicategory.

014D Definition 18.1.4.1.1. A 1-morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ is a **strict monomorphism** in C if the following equivalent conditions are satisfied:

014E (1) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the action on objects

$$f_*: \text{Obj}(\text{Hom}_C(X, A)) \rightarrow \text{Obj}(\text{Hom}_C(X, B))$$

of the functor

$$f_*: \text{Hom}_C(X, A) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_C(X, B)$$

given by postcomposition by f is injective.

014F (2) For each diagram in C of the form

$$X \xrightarrow[\psi]{\phi} A \xrightarrow{f} B,$$

if $f \circ \phi = f \circ \psi$, then $\phi = \psi$.

014G Example 18.1.4.1.2. Here are some examples of strict monomorphisms.

014H (1) *Strict Monomorphisms in Cats₂.*

- 014J (2) *Strict Monomorphisms in **Rel**.*
 014K (3) *Strict Monomorphisms in **Span**.*

18.2. Epimorphisms in Bicategories

18.2.1. Faithful Epimorphisms. Let \mathcal{C} be a bicategory.

- 014N **Definition 18.2.1.1.1.** A 1-morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ is a **faithful epimorphism in \mathcal{C}** if the following equivalent conditions are satisfied:

- 014P (1) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$, the functor

$$f^*: \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(B, X) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, X)$$

given by precomposition by f is faithful.

- 014Q (2) Given a diagram in \mathcal{C} of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\ & \alpha \Downarrow \beta & \Downarrow \psi \\ & & X \end{array}$$

if we have $\alpha \star \text{id}_f = \beta \star \text{id}_f$, then $\alpha = \beta$.

- 014R **Example 18.2.1.1.2.** Here are some examples of faithful epimorphisms.

- 014S (1) *Full Epimorphisms in **Cats**₂.*
 014T (2) *Full Epimorphisms in **Rel**.*
 014U (3) *Full Epimorphisms in **Span**.*

18.2.2. Full Epimorphisms. Let \mathcal{C} be a bicategory.

- 014W **Definition 18.2.2.1.1.** A 1-morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ is a **full epimorphism in \mathcal{C}** if the following equivalent conditions are satisfied:

- 014X (1) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$, the functor

$$f^*: \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(B, X) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, X)$$

given by precomposition by f is full.

- 014F (2) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$ and each 2-morphism

$$\gamma: \phi \circ f \Rightarrow \psi \circ f, \quad X \xrightarrow[\psi \circ f]{\gamma \Downarrow} B$$

of \mathcal{C} , there exists a 2-morphism $\alpha: \phi \Rightarrow \psi$ of \mathcal{C} such that we have an equality

$$A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow[\psi]{\alpha \Downarrow} X = A \xrightarrow[\psi \circ f]{\phi \circ f} X$$

of pasting diagrams in \mathcal{C} , i.e. such that we have

$$\gamma = \alpha \star \text{id}_f.$$

- 014Z **Example 18.2.2.1.2.** Here are some examples of full epimorphisms.

- 0150 (1) *Full Epimorphisms in **Cats**₂.*
 0151 (2) *Full Epimorphisms in **Rel**.*
 0152 (3) *Full Epimorphisms in **Span**.*

18.2.3. Fully Faithful Epimorphisms. Let C be a bicategory.

0154 **Definition 18.2.3.1.1.** A 1-morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ is a **fully faithful epimorphism** in C if the following equivalent conditions are satisfied:

- 0155 (1) The 1-morphism f is fully and faithful.
- 0156 (2) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the functor

$$f^*: \text{Hom}_C(B, X) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_C(A, X)$$

given by precomposition by f is fully faithful.

- 0157 (3) The conditions in Item 1 of Definition 18.2.1.1.1 and Item 1 of Definition 18.2.2.1.1 hold.

0158 **Example 18.2.3.1.2.** Here are some examples of fully faithful epimorphisms.

- 0159 (1) *Fully Faithful Epimorphisms in Cats₂.*
- 015A (2) *Fully Faithful Epimorphisms in Rel.*
- 015B (3) *Fully Faithful Epimorphisms in Span.*

18.2.4. Strict Epimorphisms. Let C be a bicategory.

015D **Definition 18.2.4.1.1.** A 1-morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ is a **strict epimorphism** in C if the following equivalent conditions are satisfied:

- 015E (1) For each $X \in \text{Obj}(C)$, the action on objects

$$f^*: \text{Obj}(\text{Hom}_C(B, X)) \rightarrow \text{Obj}(\text{Hom}_C(A, X))$$

of the functor

$$f^*: \text{Hom}_C(B, X) \rightarrow \text{Hom}_C(A, X)$$

given by precomposition by f is injective.

- 015F (2) For each diagram in C of the form

$$A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow[\psi]{\phi} X,$$

if $\phi \circ f = \psi \circ f$, then $\phi = \psi$.

015G **Example 18.2.4.1.2.** Here are some examples of strict epimorphisms.

- 015H (1) *Strict Epimorphisms in Cats₂.*
- 015J (2) *Strict Epimorphisms in Rel.*
- 015K (3) *Strict Epimorphisms in Span.*

18.3. bicategories of spans

015L **Proposition 18.3.0.1.1.** Let A and B be objects of C .

- 015M (1) *As a Pullback.* We have an isomorphism of categories

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Span}(A, B) & \rightarrow & C_{/B} \\ \downarrow & \lrcorner & \downarrow \text{忘} \\ \text{Span}_C(A, B) & \cong & C_{/A} \times_C C_{/B}, \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & C_{/A} \longrightarrow C. \end{array}$$

Proof. *Item 1, As a Pullback:* In detail, the pullback $C_{/A} \times_C C_{/B}$ is the category where

- *Objects.* The objects of $C_{/A} \times_C C_{/B}$ consist of pairs $((S, f), (S', g))$ of objects of C consisting of
 - A pair (S, f) in $\text{Obj}(C_{/A})$ consisting of an object S of C and a morphism $f: S \rightarrow A$ of C ;
 - A pair (S', g) in $\text{Obj}(C_{/B})$ consisting of an object S' of C and a morphism $g: S' \rightarrow B$ of C ;
 such that

$$\underbrace{\mathfrak{f}(S, f)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S} = \underbrace{\mathfrak{f}(S', g)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S'}.$$

Thus the objects of $C_{/A} \times_C C_{/B}$ are the same as spans in C from A to B .

- *Morphisms.* A morphism of $C_{/A} \times_C C_{/B}$ from (S, f, g) to (S', f', g') consists of a pair of morphisms

$$\begin{aligned}\phi: S &\rightarrow S' \\ \psi: S &\rightarrow S'\end{aligned}$$

such that the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S & \xrightarrow{\phi} & S' \\ f \searrow & & \swarrow f' \\ A & & \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} S & \xrightarrow{\psi} & S' \\ g \searrow & & \swarrow g' \\ B & & \end{array}$$

such that

$$\underbrace{\mathfrak{f}(\phi)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \phi} = \underbrace{\mathfrak{f}(\psi)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi}.$$

Thus the morphisms of $C_{/A} \times_C C_{/B}$ are also the same as morphisms of spans in C from (S, f, g) to (S', f', g') .

- *Identities and Composition.* The identities and composition of $C_{/A} \times_C C_{/B}$ are also the same as those in $\text{Span}_C(A, B)$.

This finishes the proof. □

Appendices

18.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets

(8) Fibred Sets

- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors

(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	(32) Hypergroups
(17) Kan Extensions	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
Bicategories	(34) Quantales
(18) Bicategories	
(19) Internal Adjunctions	
Internal Category Theory	
(20) Internal Categories	
Cyclic Stuff	
(21) The Cycle Category	
Cubical Stuff	
(22) The Cube Category	
Globular Stuff	
(23) The Globe Category	
Cellular Stuff	
(24) The Cell Category	
Monoids	
(25) Monoids	With
(26) Constructions	
Monoids	
Monoids With Zero	
(27) Monoids With Zero	With
(28) Constructions	
Monoids With Zero	
Groups	
(29) Groups	
(30) Constructions With Groups	
Hyper Algebra	
(31) Hypermonoids	
With	
Stochastic Analysis	
(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion	
(42) Itô Calculus	
(43) Stochastic Differential Equations	
Differential Geometry	
(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds	
Schemes	
(45) Schemes	

18.2. Other Chapters

Sets	(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets
(1) Sets	
(2) Constructions With Sets	
(3) Pointed Sets	
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	Category Theory
(5) Relations	
(6) Spans	
(7) Posets	
Indexed and Fibred Sets	
(7) Indexed Sets	
(8) Fibred Sets	
	(11) Categories
	(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
	(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
	(14) Constructions With Categories
	(15) Profunctors
	(16) Cartesian Closed Categories
	(17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyper-rings
(18) Bicategories	
(19) Internal Adjunctions	
Internal Category Theory	(34) Quantales
(20) Internal Categories	
Cyclic Stuff	Near-Rings
(21) The Cycle Category	(35) Near-Semirings
Cubical Stuff	(36) Near-Rings
(22) The Cube Category	Real Analysis
Globular Stuff	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(23) The Globe Category	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
Cellular Stuff	Measure Theory
(24) The Cell Category	(39) Measurable Spaces
Monoids	(40) Measures and Integration
(25) Monoids	Probability Theory
(26) Constructions	(40) Probability Theory
Monoids	With Stochastic Analysis
Monoids With Zero	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
(27) Monoids With Zero	(42) Itô Calculus
(28) Constructions	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
Monoids With Zero	Differential Geometry
Groups	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
(29) Groups	Schemes
(30) Constructions With Groups	(45) Schemes
Hyper Algebra	
(31) Hypermonoids	
(32) Hypergroups	

CHAPTER 19

Internal Adjunctions

015N Create tags:

- (1) <https://www.google.com/search?q=mate+of+an+adjunction>
- (2) Moreover, by uniqueness of adjoints (Item 2 of Proposition 19.1.2.1.4), this implies also that $S = f^{-1}$.
- (3) define bicategory $\text{Adj}(C)$
- (4) walking monad
- (5) proposition: 2-functors preserve unitors and associators
- (6) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/2-category+of+adjunctions>. Is there a 3-category too?
- (7) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/free+monad>
- (8) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/CatAdj>
- (9) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/Adj>
- (10) $\text{Adj}(\text{Adj}(C))$

19.1. Internal Adjunctions

19.1.1. The Walking Adjunction.

015R **Definition 19.1.1.1.** The **walking adjunction** is the bicategory Adj freely generated by¹

- *Objects.* A pair of objects A and B ;
- *Morphisms.* A pair of morphisms

$$L: A \rightarrow B,$$

$$R: B \rightarrow A;$$

- *2-Morphisms.* A pair of 2-morphisms

$$\eta: \text{id}_A \rightarrow R \circ L,$$

$$\epsilon: L \circ R \rightarrow \text{id}_B;$$

¹See [SS86] for an explicit description of the 2-category (as opposed to a bicategory) version of Adj in terms of finite ordinals, similar to the description of the 2-category version of the walking monad (??) as a subcategory of Δ .

subject to the equalities

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} B \\ \swarrow L \quad \nearrow R \\ \parallel \eta \quad \parallel \epsilon \\ A \xrightarrow{\text{id}_A} A \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{c} B \\ \swarrow L \quad \nearrow \text{id}_B \\ \parallel \text{id}_L \parallel \\ A \xrightarrow{\text{id}_A} A \end{array} \\
 \begin{array}{c} A \\ \swarrow R \quad \nearrow L \\ \parallel \epsilon \quad \parallel \eta \\ B \xrightarrow{\text{id}_B} B \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{c} A \\ \swarrow R \quad \nearrow \text{id}_A \\ \parallel \text{id}_R \parallel \\ B \xrightarrow{\text{id}_B} B \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

of pasting diagrams, which are equivalent to the following conditions:

(1) *The Left Triangle Identity.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 L \circ \text{id}_A & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_L * \eta} & L \circ (R \circ L) & \xrightarrow{(\alpha_{L,R,L}^{\text{Adj}})^{-1}} & (L \circ R) \circ L \\
 & \searrow \rho_L^{\text{Adj}} & & & \downarrow \epsilon * \text{id}_L \\
 & & & & \text{id}_B \circ L \\
 & & & & \downarrow \lambda_L^{\text{Adj}} \\
 & & & & L
 \end{array}$$

commutes.

(2) *The Right Triangle Identity.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \text{id}_A \circ R & \xrightarrow{\eta * \text{id}_R} & (R \circ L) \circ R & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{R,L,R}^{\text{Adj}}} & R \circ (L \circ R) \\
 & \searrow \lambda_R^{\text{Adj}} & & & \downarrow \text{id}_R * \epsilon \\
 & & & & \text{id}_B \circ R \\
 & & & & \downarrow \rho_R^{\text{Adj}} \\
 & & & & R
 \end{array}$$

19.1.2. Internal Adjunctions. Let \mathcal{C} be a bicategory.

015T Definition 19.1.2.1.1. An **internal adjunction** in \mathcal{C} ^{2,3} is a 2-functor $\text{Adj} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$.

015U Remark 19.1.2.1.2. In detail, an **internal adjunction** in \mathcal{C} consists of

²Further Terminology: Also called an **adjunction internal to \mathcal{C}** .

³Further Terminology: In this situation, we also call (g, f) an **adjoint pair**, f the **left adjoint** of the pair, g the **right adjoint** of the pair, η the **unit** of the adjunction, and ϵ the **counit** of the adjunction.

- *Objects.* A pair of objects A and B of C ;
- *Morphisms.* A pair of morphisms

$$L: A \rightarrow B,$$

$$R: B \rightarrow A$$

of C ;

- *2-Morphisms.* A pair of 2-morphisms

$$\eta: \text{id}_A \rightarrow R \circ L,$$

$$\epsilon: L \circ R \rightarrow \text{id}_B$$

of C ;

subject to the equalities

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} B \\ \swarrow L \quad \nearrow R \\ \parallel \eta \quad \parallel \\ A \xrightarrow{\text{id}_A} A \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{c} B \\ \swarrow L \quad \parallel \text{id}_L \quad \nearrow R \\ \parallel \quad \parallel \\ A \xrightarrow{\text{id}_A} A \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} A \\ \swarrow R \quad \nearrow L \\ \parallel \epsilon \quad \parallel \\ B \xrightarrow{\text{id}_B} B \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{c} A \\ \swarrow R \quad \parallel \text{id}_R \quad \nearrow L \\ \parallel \quad \parallel \\ B \xrightarrow{\text{id}_B} B \end{array} \end{array}$$

of pasting diagrams in C , which are equivalent to the following conditions:⁴

- (1) *The Left Triangle Identity.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} L \circ \text{id}_A & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_L * \eta} & L \circ (R \circ L) & \xrightarrow{(\alpha_{L,R,L}^C)^{-1}} & (L \circ R) \circ L \\ & \searrow \rho_L^C & & & \downarrow \text{id}_B \circ L \\ & & & & \downarrow \lambda_L^C \\ & & & & L \end{array}$$

commutes.

⁴When C is a 2-category, these diagrams take the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} L & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_L * \eta} & L \circ R \circ L \\ \parallel & \searrow \text{id}_L & \downarrow \epsilon * \text{id}_L \\ & & L \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} R & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_R * \eta} & R \circ L \circ R \\ \parallel & \searrow \text{id}_L & \downarrow \epsilon * \text{id}_R \\ & & R. \end{array}$$

(2) *The Right Triangle Identity.* The diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \text{id}_A \circ R & \xrightarrow{\eta \star \text{id}_R} & (R \circ L) \circ R & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{R,L,R}^C} & R \circ (L \circ R) \\
 & \searrow \lambda_R^C & & & \downarrow \text{id}_R \star \epsilon \\
 & & R \circ \text{id}_B & & \downarrow \rho_R^C \\
 & & & & R.
 \end{array}$$

015V Example 19.1.2.1.3. Here are some examples of internal adjunctions.

- 015W** (1) *Internal Adjunctions in \mathbf{Cats}_2 .* The internal adjunctions in the 2-category \mathbf{Cats}_2 of categories, functors, and natural transformations are precisely the adjunctions of ??.
- 015X** (2) *Internal Adjunctions in \mathbf{Rel} .* The internal adjunctions in \mathbf{Rel} are precisely the relations of the form $\text{Gr}(f) \dashv f^{-1}$ with f a function; see ?? of ??.
- 015Y** (3) *Internal Adjunctions in \mathbf{Span} .* The internal adjunctions in \mathbf{Span} are precisely the spans of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & S & \\
 \phi \swarrow & & \searrow g \\
 A & & B
 \end{array}$$

with ϕ an isomorphism; see ?? of ??.

015Z Proposition 19.1.2.1.4. Let C be a bicategory.

- 0160** (1) *Duality.* Let (f, g, η, ϵ) be an internal adjunction in C .
(a) The quadruple (g, f, η, ϵ) is an internal adjunction in C^{op} .
(b) The quadruple (g, f, ϵ, η) is an internal adjunction in C^{co} .
(c) The quadruple (f, g, η, ϵ) is an internal adjunction in C^{coop} .
- 0161** (2) *Uniqueness of Adjoints.* Let (f, g, η, ϵ) and $(f, g', \eta', \epsilon')$ be internal adjunctions in C . We have a canonical isomorphism⁵

$$g \xrightarrow{(\lambda_g^C)^{-1}} \text{id}_A \circ g \xrightarrow{\eta' \star \text{id}_g} (g' \circ f) \circ g \xrightarrow{\alpha_{g',f,g}^C} g' \circ (f \circ g) \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{g'} \star \epsilon} g' \circ \text{id}_B \xrightarrow{(\rho_{g'}^C)^{-1}} g'$$

with inverse

$$g' \xrightarrow{(\lambda_{g'}^C)^{-1}} \text{id}_B \circ g' \xrightarrow{\eta \star \text{id}_{g'}} (g \circ f) \circ g' \xrightarrow{\alpha_{g',f,g}^C} g \circ (f \circ g') \xrightarrow{\text{id}_g \star \epsilon'} g \circ \text{id}_B \xrightarrow{(\lambda_g^C)^{-1}} g.$$

- 0162** (3) *Carrying Internal Adjunctions Through Pseudofunctors.* Let $F: C \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a pseudofunctor and (f, g, η, ϵ) be an internal adjunction in C . There is an induced internal adjunction⁶

$$(F(f), F(g), \bar{\eta}, \bar{\epsilon})$$

⁵Slogan: Left adjoints are unique up to canonical isomorphism. Dually, so are right adjoints.

⁶ Warning: Lax or oplax functors which are not pseudofunctors need not preserve internal adjunctions.

in \mathcal{D} , where:

(a) The unit

$$\bar{\eta}: \text{id}_{F(A)} \rightrightarrows F(g) \circ F(f)$$

is the composition

$$\text{id}_{F(A)} \xrightarrow{F_A} F(\text{id}_A) \xrightarrow{F(\eta)} F(g \circ f) \xrightarrow{F_{g,f}^{-1}} F(g) \circ F(f).$$

(b) The counit

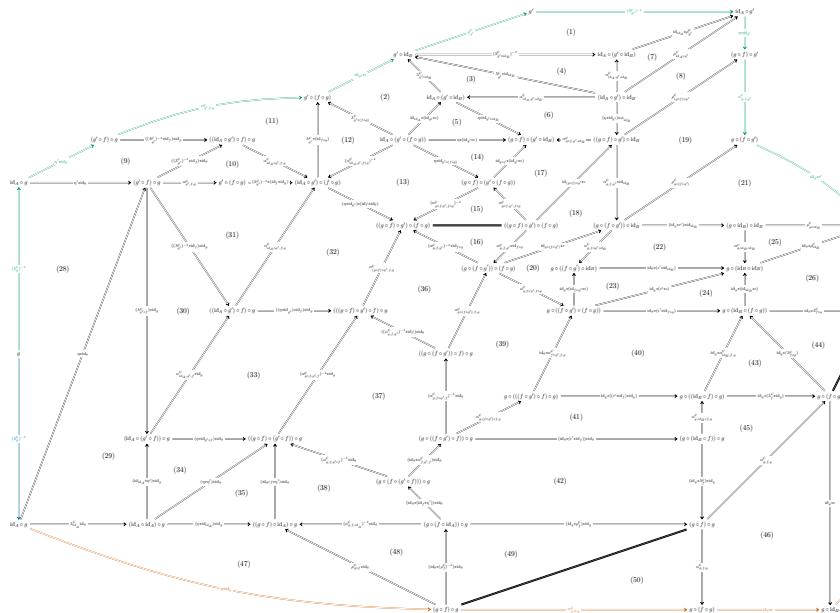
$$\bar{\epsilon}: F(f) \circ F(g) \rightrightarrows \text{id}_{F(B)}$$

is the composition

$$F(f) \circ F(g) \xrightarrow{F_{f,g}} F(f \circ g) \xrightarrow{F(\epsilon)} F(\text{id}_B) \xrightarrow{F_B} \text{id}_{F(B)}.$$

Proof. *Item 1, Duality:* Omitted.⁷

*Item 2, Uniqueness of Adjoints:*⁸ Consider the diagram (if you *really* want to consider it I fear you will need to zoom in)



In this diagram:

- (1) The morphisms in green are the composition $g \xrightarrow{\cong} g' \xrightarrow{\cong} g$;
- (2) The morphisms in red are equal to λ_g^C by the right triangle identity for (f, g, η, ϵ) . Hence the composition of the morphism in blue with the morphisms in red is the identity;
- (3) Subdiagrams (1), (2), (10), (11), (29), (31), and (43) commute by the naturality of the left unit of C and its inverse;
- (4) Subdiagrams (8), (19), and (21) commute by the naturality of the right unit of C and its inverse;

⁷Reference: [JY21, Exercise 6.6.2].

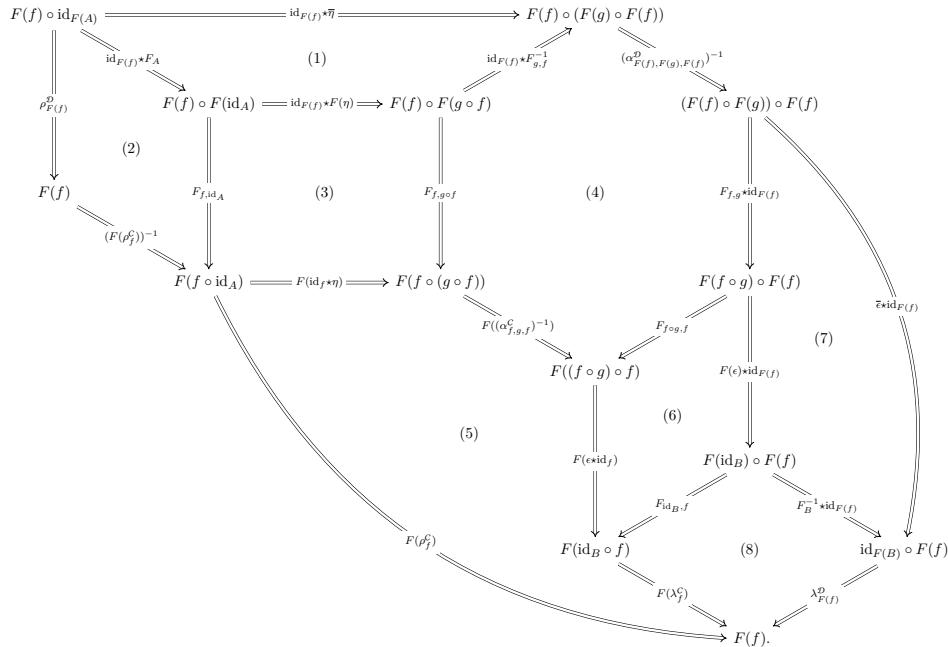
⁸Reference: [JY21, Lemma 6.1.6].

- (5) Subdiagrams (6), (13), (17), (18), (20), (22), (32), (33), (36), (38), (40), (41), and (45) commute by the naturality of the associator of C and its inverse;
- (6) Subdiagrams (37), (39), and (42) commute by the pentagon identity for C ;
- (7) Subdiagrams (3), (4), (7), (12), (25), (30), and (48) commute by ?? of ??;
- (8) Subdiagrams (5), (14), (23), (24), (34), and (35) commute by middle-four exchange;
- (9) Subdiagrams (9), (15), (16), (27), (28), (44), (46), (49), and (50) commute trivially;
- (10) Subdiagram (26) commutes by ???? of ??;
- (11) Subdiagram (47) commutes by ?? of ?? and the naturality of the left unit of right unit of C .

Hence $g \cong g'$.

Item 3, Carrying Internal Adjunctions Through Pseudofunctors: ⁹We claim that the left and right triangle identities for $(F(f), F(g), \bar{\eta}, \bar{\epsilon})$ hold:

- (1) The left triangle identity for $(F(f), F(g), \bar{\eta}, \bar{\epsilon})$ is the condition that the boundary diagram of the diagram (you may need to zoom in)

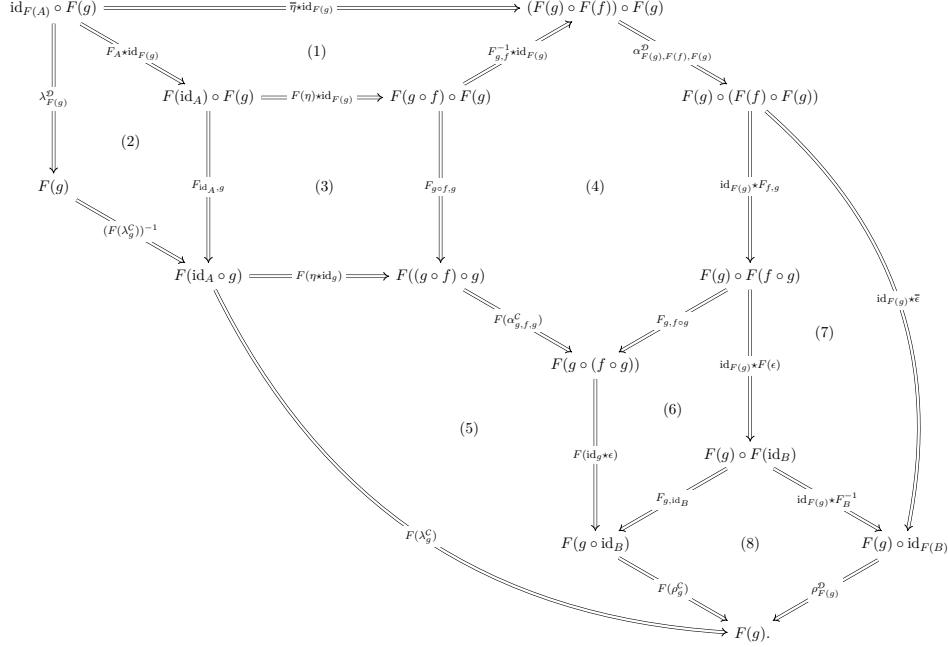


commutes. Since

- (a) Subdiagrams (1) and (7) commute by applying middle-four exchange twice,
- (b) Subdiagrams (2) and (8) commute by the left and right lax unity conditions for F ,
- (c) Subdiagrams (3) and (6) commute by the naturality of the lax functoriality constraints of F ,

⁹Reference: [JY21, Proposition 6.1.7].

- (d) Subdiagram (4) commutes by the lax associativity condition for F , and
(e) Subdiagram (5) commutes by the left triangle identity for (f, g, η, ϵ) ,
so does the boundary diagram.
(2) The right triangle identity for $(F(f), F(g), \bar{\eta}, \bar{\epsilon})$ is the condition that the boundary diagram of the diagram (you may need to zoom in)



commutes. Since

- (a) Subdiagrams (1) and (7) commute by applying middle-four exchange twice,
(b) Subdiagrams (2) and (8) commute by the left and right lax unity conditions for F ,
(c) Subdiagrams (3) and (6) commute by the naturality of the lax functoriality constraints of F ,
(d) Subdiagram (4) commutes by the lax associativity condition for F , and
(e) Subdiagram (5) commutes by the right triangle identity for (f, g, η, ϵ) ,

so does the boundary diagram.

This finishes the proof. \square

19.1.3. Internal Adjoint Equivalences.

Let C be a bicategory.

- 0164 Definition 19.1.3.1.1.** An internal adjunction (f, g, η, ϵ) in C is an **internal adjoint equivalence** if η and ϵ are isomorphisms in C .
- 0165 Example 19.1.3.1.2.** Here are some examples of internal adjoint equivalences.
- 0166** (1) *Internal Adjoint Equivalences in Cats₂.* The internal adjoint equivalences in the 2-category Cats_2 of categories, functors, and

natural transformations are precisely the adjoint equivalences of ?? .¹⁰

- 0167 (2) *Internal Adjoint Equivalences in Mod.* The internal adjoint equivalences in **Mod** are precisely the invertible R -modules; see ?? .¹¹
- 0168 (3) *Internal Adjoint Equivalences in PseudoFun(C, \mathcal{D})*. The internal adjoint equivalences in **PseudoFun**(C, \mathcal{D}) are precisely the invertible strong transformations; see ?? .¹²
- 0169 (4) *Internal Adjoint Equivalences in Rel.* The internal adjoint equivalences in **Rel** are precisely the relations of the form $\text{Gr}(f) \dashv f^{-1}$ with f an isomorphism; see ?? .
- 016A (5) *Internal Adjoint Equivalences in Span.* The internal adjoint equivalences in **Span** are precisely the spans of the form $A \xleftarrow{\phi} S \xrightarrow{\psi} B$ with ϕ and ψ isomorphisms; see ?? .

016B **Proposition 19.1.3.1.3.** Let C be a bicategory.

- (1) *Carrying Internal Adjoint Equivalences Through Pseudofunctors.*

016C Let $F: C \longrightarrow \mathcal{D}$ be a pseudofunctor and (f, g, η, ϵ) be an internal adjunction in C . If (f, g, η, ϵ) is an internal adjoint equivalence in C , then the induced internal adjunction

$$(F(f), F(g), \bar{\eta}, \bar{\epsilon})$$

in \mathcal{D} of Item 3 of Proposition 19.1.2.1.4 is an internal adjoint equivalence as well.

- (2) *Internal Adjunctions Always Refine to Internal Adjoint Equivalences.*

016D Let (f, g, η, ϵ) be an internal adjunction in C . If f is an equivalence, then there exist 2-morphisms

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{\eta}: \text{id}_A &\Longrightarrow g \circ f \\ \bar{\epsilon}: f \circ g &\Longrightarrow \text{id}_B\end{aligned}$$

of C such that $(f, g, \bar{\eta}, \bar{\epsilon})$ is an internal adjoint equivalence.

Proof. *Item 1, Carrying Internal Adjoint Equivalences Through Pseudofunctors:* See [JY21, Proposition 6.2.3].

Item 2, Internal Adjunctions Always Refine to Internal Adjoint Equivalences: See [JY21, Proposition 6.2.4]. \square

19.1.4. Mates. Let C be a bicategory, let (f, g, η, ϵ) and $(f', g', \eta', \epsilon')$ be adjunctions, and let h and k be morphisms of C as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & f & \\ A & \begin{array}{c} \swarrow \perp \searrow \\ g \end{array} & B \\ h \downarrow & & \downarrow k \\ C & \begin{array}{c} \swarrow \perp \searrow \\ f' \end{array} & D \\ & g' & \end{array}$$

¹⁰Reference: [JY21, Examples 6.2.5].

¹¹Reference: [JY21, Examples 6.2.6].

¹²Reference: [JY21, Examples 6.2.7].

016F Definition 19.1.4.1.1. The **mates** of a pair of 2-morphisms

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} A \xrightarrow{f} B \\ h \downarrow \quad \Downarrow^{\omega} \quad \downarrow k \\ C \xrightarrow{f'} D \end{array} & \omega: f' \circ h \Rightarrow k \circ f, & \begin{array}{c} A \xleftarrow{g} B \\ h \downarrow \quad \Downarrow^{\nu} \quad \downarrow k \\ C \xleftarrow{g'} D \end{array} \\ & \nu: h \circ g \Rightarrow g' \circ k & \end{array}$$

are the 2-morphisms

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} A \xleftarrow{g} B \\ h \downarrow \quad \Downarrow^{\omega^\dagger} \quad \downarrow k \\ C \xleftarrow{g'} D \end{array} & \omega^\dagger: h \circ g \Rightarrow g' \circ k, & \begin{array}{c} A \xrightarrow{f} B \\ h \downarrow \quad \Downarrow^{\nu^\dagger} \quad \downarrow k \\ C \xrightarrow{f'} D \end{array} \\ & \nu^\dagger: f' \circ h \Rightarrow k \circ f & \end{array}$$

defined as the pastings of the diagrams¹³

016G Proposition 19.1.4.1.2. Let $\omega: f' \circ h \Rightarrow k \circ f$ and $\nu: h \circ g \Rightarrow g' \circ k$ be 2-morphisms.

016H (1) The Mate Correspondence. The map

$$(-)^\dagger: \text{Hom}_{\text{Hom}_C(A,C)}(f' \circ h, k \circ f) \longrightarrow \text{Hom}_{\text{Hom}_C(B,D)}(h \circ g, g' \circ k)$$

$$\omega \longmapsto \omega^\dagger$$

¹³If C is a 2-category, these pasting diagrams become the following:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} B \xrightarrow{g} A \\ k \downarrow \quad \Downarrow^{\omega^\dagger} \quad \downarrow h \\ D \xrightarrow{g'} C \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{c} B \xrightarrow{g} A \xrightarrow{h} C \\ \text{id}_B \searrow \quad \Downarrow^{\epsilon} \quad \downarrow f \quad \Downarrow^{\omega} \quad \downarrow f' \quad \Downarrow^{\eta'} \quad \text{id}_C \\ B \xrightarrow{k} D \xrightarrow{g'} C \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} C \xrightarrow{f'} D \\ h \uparrow \quad \Downarrow^{\nu^\dagger} \quad \uparrow k \\ A \xrightarrow{f} B \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{c} A \xrightarrow{h} C \xrightarrow{f'} D \\ \text{id}_A \nearrow \quad \Downarrow^{\eta} \quad \uparrow g \quad \Downarrow^{\nu} \quad \uparrow g' \quad \nearrow \text{id}_D \\ A \xrightarrow{k} B \xrightarrow{f} D \end{array} \end{array}$$

is a bijection.

Proof. Item 1, The Mate Correspondence: Here we give a proof for 2-categories (which indirectly proves also the general case by ??). A proof for general bicategories can be found in [JY21, Lemma 6.1.13].

Let

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A \xleftarrow{g} B & \\ h \downarrow & \Downarrow \nu & \downarrow k \\ C \xleftarrow{g'} D & & \end{array}$$

be a 2-morphism of \mathcal{C} . The mate ν^\dagger of ν is then given by

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & A & \\ & \swarrow \text{id}_A & \downarrow f \\ & A \xleftarrow{g} B & \\ h \downarrow & \Downarrow \nu & \downarrow k \\ C \xrightarrow{f'} D & = & C \xleftarrow{g'} D \\ f' \downarrow & \Downarrow \epsilon' & \searrow \text{id}_D \\ & D, & \end{array}$$

and the mate of ν^\dagger is the 2-morphism $(\nu^\dagger)^\dagger : f' \circ h \Rightarrow k \circ f$ given by

$$\begin{array}{cccc} & A \xleftarrow{g} B & A \xleftarrow{g} B & A \xleftarrow{g} B \\ & \swarrow \text{id}_A & \swarrow \text{id}_B & \downarrow \text{id}_g \\ & A \xleftarrow{g} B & & A \xleftarrow{g} B \\ h \downarrow & \Downarrow (\nu^\dagger)^\dagger & \downarrow k & \downarrow \text{id}_g \\ C \xleftarrow{g'} D & = & C \xleftarrow{g'} D & = \\ & \swarrow \text{id}_C & \swarrow \text{id}_D & \downarrow \text{id}_{g'} \\ & C \xleftarrow{g'} D & & C \xleftarrow{g'} D \end{array}$$

Similarly, $(\omega)^\dagger = \omega$. □

19.2. Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions

19.2.1. Lax Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions. Let \mathcal{C} be a bicategory and let $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ and $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ be internal adjunctions in \mathcal{C} .

016L Definition 19.2.1.1.1. A **lax morphism of internal adjunctions** from $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ to $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ is a lax transformation between these viewed as 2-functors from the walking adjunction.

016M Remark 19.2.1.1.2. In detail, a **lax morphism of internal adjunctions** from $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ to $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ consists of

- **1-Morphisms.** A pair of 1-morphisms

$$\begin{aligned}\phi: A &\rightarrow A', \\ \psi: B &\rightarrow B'\end{aligned}$$

of \mathcal{C} ;

- **2-Morphisms.** A pair of 2-morphisms

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{F} & B \\ \downarrow \phi & \nearrow \alpha & \downarrow \psi \\ A' & \xrightarrow{F'} & B' \\ & & \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \alpha: F' \circ \phi \Rightarrow \psi \circ F, \\ \beta: G' \circ \phi \Rightarrow \psi \circ G \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} A & \xleftarrow{G} & B \\ \downarrow \phi & \nearrow \beta & \downarrow \psi \\ A' & \xleftarrow{G'} & B' \end{array};$$

of \mathcal{C} ;

satisfying the following conditions:

- (1) *Compatibility With Units.* We have an equality

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{pasting diagram in } \mathcal{C} & = & \text{pasting diagram in } \mathcal{C} \\ \text{involving } \eta, \text{id}_A, \phi, \lambda_\phi^C, \rho_{\phi}^{C,-1}, \psi, \alpha, \beta, \text{id}_{A'}, \text{id}_{B'}, \text{id}_{B}, \text{id}_B, \text{id}_A & & \text{involving } \eta', \text{id}_{A'}, \phi, \lambda_\phi^C, \rho_{\phi}^{C,-1}, \psi, \alpha, \beta, \text{id}_{A'}, \text{id}_{B'}, \text{id}_{B}, \text{id}_B, \text{id}_A \end{array}$$

of pasting diagrams in \mathcal{C} ;

- (2) *Compatibility With Counits.* We have an equality

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{pasting diagram in } \mathcal{C} & = & \text{pasting diagram in } \mathcal{C} \\ \text{involving } \epsilon, \text{id}_B, \psi, G, \beta, \phi, \alpha, \text{id}_{B'}, \text{id}_{A'}, \text{id}_{B}, \text{id}_B, \text{id}_A & & \text{involving } \epsilon', \text{id}_{B'}, \psi, \rho_{\psi}^{C,-1}, \lambda_\psi^C, \text{id}_{B'}, \text{id}_{A'}, \text{id}_{B}, \text{id}_B, \text{id}_A \end{array}$$

of pasting diagrams in \mathcal{C} .

19.2.2. Oplax Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions. Let \mathcal{C} be a bicategory and let $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ and $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ be internal adjunctions in \mathcal{C} .

016P Definition 19.2.2.1.1. An **oplax morphism of internal adjunctions** from $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ to $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ is an oplax transformation between these viewed as 2-functors from the walking adjunction.

016Q Remark 19.2.2.1.2. In detail, an **oplax morphism of internal adjunctions** from $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ to $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ consists of

- **1-Morphisms.** A pair of 1-morphisms

$$\begin{aligned}\phi: A &\rightarrow A', \\ \psi: B &\rightarrow B'\end{aligned}$$

of C ;

- **2-Morphisms.** A pair of 2-morphisms

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{F} & B \\ \phi \downarrow & \swarrow \alpha & \downarrow \psi \\ A' & \xrightarrow[F']{} & B' \\ & & \alpha: \psi \circ F \Rightarrow F' \circ \phi, \\ & & \beta: \psi \circ G \Rightarrow G' \circ \phi \\ & & \phi \downarrow & \swarrow \beta & \downarrow \psi \\ A' & \xleftarrow[G']{} & B' \end{array}$$

of C ;

satisfying the following conditions:

- (1) *Compatibility With Units.* We have an equality

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Diagram showing pasting of } \psi \text{ and } \lambda_{\phi}^{C,-1} \text{ in } C & = & \text{Diagram showing pasting of } \phi \text{ and } \beta \text{ in } C \end{array}$$

of pasting diagrams in C ;

- (2) *Compatibility With Counits.* We have an equality

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Diagram showing pasting of } \eta \text{ and } \phi \text{ in } C & = & \text{Diagram showing pasting of } \rho_{\psi}^C \text{ and } \lambda_{\psi}^{C,-1} \text{ in } C \end{array}$$

of pasting diagrams in C .

19.2.3. Strong Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions. Let C be a bicategory and let $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ and $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ be internal adjunctions in C .

016S Definition 19.2.3.1.1. A **strong morphism of internal adjunctions** from $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ to $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ is a strong transformation between these viewed as 2-functors from the walking adjunction.

016T Remark 19.2.3.1.2. In detail, a **strong morphism of internal adjunctions** from $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ to $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ is equivalently:

- (1) A lax morphism of internal adjunctions as in [Remark 19.2.1.1.2](#) whose 2-morphisms are invertible.
- (2) An oplax morphism of internal adjunctions as in [Remark 19.2.2.1.2](#) whose 2-morphisms are invertible.

19.2.4. Strict Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions. Let \mathcal{C} be a bicategory and let $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ and $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ be internal adjunctions in \mathcal{C} .

016V Definition 19.2.4.1.1. A **strict morphism of internal adjunctions** from $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ to $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ is a strict transformation between these viewed as 2-functors from the walking adjunction.

016W Remark 19.2.4.1.2. In detail, a **strict morphism of internal adjunctions** from $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ to $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ is equivalently:

- (1) A lax morphism of internal adjunctions as in [Remark 19.2.1.1.2](#) whose 2-morphisms are identities.
- (2) An oplax morphism of internal adjunctions as in [Remark 19.2.2.1.2](#) whose 2-morphisms are identities.

19.3. 2-Morphisms Between Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions

19.3.1. 2-Morphisms Between Lax Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions. Let \mathcal{C} be a bicategory, let $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ and $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ be internal adjunctions in \mathcal{C} , and let $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ and $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ be lax morphisms of internal adjunctions from $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ to $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$.

016Z Definition 19.3.1.1.1. A **2-morphism from $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ to $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$** is a modification between these viewed as lax transformations.

0170 Remark 19.3.1.1.2. In detail, a **2-morphism from $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ to $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$** consist of 2-morphisms

$$\Gamma: \phi_1 \Rightarrow \phi_2$$

$$\Sigma: \psi_1 \Rightarrow \psi_2$$

of \mathcal{C} such that we have equalities

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} A \xrightarrow{F} B \\ \phi_1 \left(\begin{array}{c} \Rightarrow \\ \phi_2 \end{array} \right) \alpha_2 \swarrow \quad \searrow \psi_2 \\ A' \xrightarrow{F'} B' \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{c} A \xrightarrow{F} B \\ \phi_1 \left(\begin{array}{c} \alpha_1 \nearrow \\ \Rightarrow \end{array} \right) \psi_1 \left(\begin{array}{c} \Sigma \\ \Rightarrow \end{array} \right) \psi_2 \\ A' \xrightarrow{F'} B' \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} B \xrightarrow{G} A \\ \psi_1 \left(\begin{array}{c} \Sigma \\ \Rightarrow \end{array} \right) \psi_2 \quad \beta_2 \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ B' \xrightarrow{G'} A' \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{c} B \xrightarrow{G} A \\ \psi_1 \left(\begin{array}{c} \beta_1 \nearrow \\ \Rightarrow \end{array} \right) \phi_1 \left(\begin{array}{c} \Gamma \\ \Rightarrow \end{array} \right) \phi_2 \\ B' \xrightarrow{G'} A' \end{array} \end{array}$$

of pasting diagrams in \mathcal{C} .

19.3.2. 2-Morphisms Between Oplax Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions.

Let \mathcal{C} be a bicategory, let $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ and $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ be internal adjunctions in \mathcal{C} , and let $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ and $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ be oplax morphisms of internal adjunctions from $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ to $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$.

0172 Definition 19.3.2.1.1. A **2-morphism from** $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ **to** $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ is a modification between these viewed as oplax transformations.

0173 Remark 19.3.2.1.2. In detail, a **2-morphism from** $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ **to** $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ consist of 2-morphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma: \phi_1 &\Rightarrow \phi_2 \\ \Sigma: \psi_1 &\Rightarrow \psi_2 \end{aligned}$$

of \mathcal{C} such that we have equalities

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} A \xrightarrow{F} B \\ \phi_2 \left(\begin{array}{c} \Leftarrow \\ \phi_1 \end{array} \right) \alpha_1 \swarrow \quad \searrow \psi_1 \\ A' \xrightarrow{F'} B' \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{c} A \xrightarrow{F} B \\ \phi_2 \left(\begin{array}{c} \alpha_2 \nearrow \\ \Rightarrow \end{array} \right) \psi_2 \left(\begin{array}{c} \Sigma \\ \Leftarrow \end{array} \right) \psi_1 \\ A' \xrightarrow{F'} B' \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} B \xrightarrow{G} A \\ \psi_2 \left(\begin{array}{c} \Sigma \\ \Leftarrow \end{array} \right) \psi_1 \quad \beta_1 \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ B' \xrightarrow{G'} A' \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{c} B \xrightarrow{G} A \\ \psi_2 \left(\begin{array}{c} \beta_2 \nearrow \\ \Rightarrow \end{array} \right) \phi_2 \left(\begin{array}{c} \Gamma \\ \Leftarrow \end{array} \right) \phi_1 \\ B' \xrightarrow{G'} A' \end{array} \end{array}$$

of pasting diagrams in \mathcal{C} .

19.3.3. 2-Morphisms Between Strong Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions.

Let \mathcal{C} be a bicategory, let $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ and $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ be internal adjunctions in \mathcal{C} , and let $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ and $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ be strong morphisms of internal adjunctions from $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ to $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$.

0175 Definition 19.3.3.1.1. A **2-morphism from** $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ **to** $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ is a modification between these viewed as strong transformations.

0176 Remark 19.3.3.1.2. In detail, a **2-morphism from** $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ **to** $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ is equivalently:

- A 2-morphism (Γ, Σ) from $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ to $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ viewed as lax transformations as in [Remark 19.3.1.1.2](#).
- A 2-morphism (Γ, Σ) from $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ to $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ viewed as oplax transformations as in [Remark 19.3.2.1.2](#).

19.3.4. 2-Morphisms Between Strict Morphisms of Internal Adjunctions. Let \mathcal{C} be a bicategory, let $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ and $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$ be internal adjunctions in \mathcal{C} , and let $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ and $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ be lax morphisms of internal adjunctions from $(A, B, F, G, \eta, \epsilon)$ to $(A', B', F', G', \eta', \epsilon')$.

0178 Definition 19.3.4.1.1. A **2-morphism from** $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ **to** $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ is a modification between these viewed as strict transformations.

0179 Remark 19.3.4.1.2. In detail, a **2-morphism from** $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ **to** $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ is equivalently:

- A 2-morphism (Γ, Σ) from $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ to $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ viewed as lax transformations as in [Remark 19.3.1.1.2](#).
- A 2-morphism (Γ, Σ) from $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ to $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ viewed as oplax transformations as in [Remark 19.3.2.1.2](#).
- A 2-morphism (Γ, Σ) from $(\phi_1, \psi_1, \alpha_1, \beta_1)$ to $(\phi_2, \psi_2, \alpha_2, \beta_2)$ viewed as strong transformations as in [Remark 19.3.3.1.2](#).

19.4. Bicategories of Internal Adjunctions in a Bicategory

Appendices

19.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories

Types of Morphisms in Categories

- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff	(35) Near-Semirings
(22) The Cube Category	(36) Near-Rings
Globular Stuff	Real Analysis
(23) The Globe Category	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
Cellular Stuff	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
(24) The Cell Category	Measure Theory
Monoids	(39) Measurable Spaces
(25) Monoids	(40) Measures and Integration
(26) Constructions With Monoids	Probability Theory
Monoids With Zero	(40) Probability Theory
(27) Monoids With Zero	Stochastic Analysis
(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
Groups	(42) Itô Calculus
(29) Groups	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
(30) Constructions With Groups	Differential Geometry
Hyper Algebra	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
(31) Hypermonoids	Schemes
(32) Hypergroups	(45) Schemes
(33) Hypersemirings and Hyper-rings	
(34) Quantales	
Near-Rings	

19.2. Other Chapters

Sets	(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
(1) Sets	(14) Constructions With Categories
(2) Constructions With Sets	(15) Profunctors
(3) Pointed Sets	(16) Cartesian Closed Categories
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(17) Kan Extensions
(5) Relations	Bicategories
(6) Spans	(18) Bicategories
(7) Posets	(19) Internal Adjunctions
Indexed and Fibred Sets	Internal Category Theory
(7) Indexed Sets	(20) Internal Categories
(8) Fibred Sets	Cyclic Stuff
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(21) The Cycle Category
Category Theory	Cubical Stuff
(11) Categories	(22) The Cube Category
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	Globular Stuff

(23) The Globe Category	(36) Near-Rings
Cellular Stuff	Real Analysis
(24) The Cell Category	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
Monoids	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
(25) Monoids	With Measure Theory
(26) Constructions	(39) Measurable Spaces
Monoids	(40) Measures and Integration
Monoids With Zero	Probability Theory
(27) Monoids With Zero	(40) Probability Theory
(28) Constructions	Stochastic Analysis
Monoids With Zero	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
Groups	(42) Itô Calculus
(29) Groups	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
(30) Constructions With Groups	Differential Geometry
Hyper Algebra	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
(31) Hypermonoids	Schemes
(32) Hypergroups	(45) Schemes
(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings	
(34) Quantales	
Near-Rings	
(35) Near-Semirings	

Part 5

Internal Category Theory

CHAPTER 20

Internal Categories

017B

Appendices

20.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

20.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

Part 6

Cyclic Stuff

CHAPTER 21

The Cycle Category

017C

Appendices

21.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

21.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

Part 7

Cubical Stuff

CHAPTER 22

The Cube Category

017D

Appendices

22.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

- (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory**
- (40) Probability Theory
- Stochastic Analysis**
- (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
 - (42) Itô Calculus
- (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
- Differential Geometry**
- (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
- Schemes**
- (45) Schemes

22.2. Other Chapters

- Sets
- (1) Sets
 - (2) Constructions With Sets
 - (3) Pointed Sets
 - (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
 - (5) Relations
 - (6) Spans
 - (7) Posets
- Indexed and Fibred Sets
- (7) Indexed Sets
 - (8) Fibred Sets
 - (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets
- Category Theory
- (11) Categories
 - (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
 - (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
 - (14) Constructions With Categories
 - (15) Profunctors
 - (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
 - (17) Kan Extensions
- Bicategories
- (18) Bicategories
 - (19) Internal Adjunctions
- Internal Category Theory
- (20) Internal Categories
- Cyclic Stuff
- (21) The Cycle Category
- Cubical Stuff
- (22) The Cube Category
- Globular Stuff
- (23) The Globe Category
- Cellular Stuff
- (24) The Cell Category
- Monoids
- (25) Monoids
 - (26) Constructions With Monoids
- Monoids With Zero
- (27) Monoids With Zero
 - (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
- Groups
- (29) Groups
 - (30) Constructions With Groups
- Hyper Algebra
- (31) Hypermonoids
 - (32) Hypergroups
 - (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
 - (34) Quantales
- Near-Rings
- (35) Near-Semirings
 - (36) Near-Rings
- Real Analysis
- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
 - (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
- Measure Theory
- (39) Measurable Spaces
 - (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

Part 8

Globular Stuff

CHAPTER 23

The Globe Category

017E

Appendices

23.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

- (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory**
- (40) Probability Theory
- Stochastic Analysis**
- (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
 - (42) Itô Calculus
- (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
- Differential Geometry**
- (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
- Schemes**
- (45) Schemes

23.2. Other Chapters

- Sets
- (1) Sets
 - (2) Constructions With Sets
 - (3) Pointed Sets
 - (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
 - (5) Relations
 - (6) Spans
 - (7) Posets
- Indexed and Fibred Sets
- (7) Indexed Sets
 - (8) Fibred Sets
 - (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets
- Category Theory
- (11) Categories
 - (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
 - (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
 - (14) Constructions With Categories
 - (15) Profunctors
 - (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
 - (17) Kan Extensions
- Bicategories
- (18) Bicategories
 - (19) Internal Adjunctions
- Internal Category Theory
- (20) Internal Categories
- Cyclic Stuff
- (21) The Cycle Category
- Cubical Stuff
- (22) The Cube Category
- Globular Stuff
- (23) The Globe Category
- Cellular Stuff
- (24) The Cell Category
- Monoids
- (25) Monoids
 - (26) Constructions With Monoids
- Monoids With Zero
- (27) Monoids With Zero
 - (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
- Groups
- (29) Groups
 - (30) Constructions With Groups
- Hyper Algebra
- (31) Hypermonoids
 - (32) Hypergroups
 - (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
 - (34) Quantales
- Near-Rings
- (35) Near-Semirings
 - (36) Near-Rings
- Real Analysis
- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
 - (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
- Measure Theory
- (39) Measurable Spaces
 - (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

Part 9

Cellular Stuff

CHAPTER 24

The Cell Category

017F

Appendices

24.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

24.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

Part 10

Monoids

CHAPTER 25

Monoids

017G

Appendices

25.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

25.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

- | | |
|--|---|
| (40) Probability Theory
Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus | (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
Schemes

(45) Schemes |
|--|---|

CHAPTER 26

Constructions With Monoids

017H

Appendices

26.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

- (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory**
- (40) Probability Theory
- Stochastic Analysis**
- (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
 - (42) Itô Calculus
- (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
- Differential Geometry**
- (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
- Schemes**
- (45) Schemes

26.2. Other Chapters

- Sets
- (1) Sets
 - (2) Constructions With Sets
 - (3) Pointed Sets
 - (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
 - (5) Relations
 - (6) Spans
 - (7) Posets
- Indexed and Fibred Sets
- (7) Indexed Sets
 - (8) Fibred Sets
 - (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets
- Category Theory
- (11) Categories
 - (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
 - (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
 - (14) Constructions With Categories
 - (15) Profunctors
 - (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
 - (17) Kan Extensions
- Bicategories
- (18) Bicategories
 - (19) Internal Adjunctions
- Internal Category Theory
- (20) Internal Categories
- Cyclic Stuff
- (21) The Cycle Category
- Cubical Stuff
- (22) The Cube Category
- Globular Stuff
- (23) The Globe Category
- Cellular Stuff
- (24) The Cell Category
- Monoids
- (25) Monoids
 - (26) Constructions With Monoids
- Monoids With Zero
- (27) Monoids With Zero
 - (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
- Groups
- (29) Groups
 - (30) Constructions With Groups
- Hyper Algebra
- (31) Hypermonoids
 - (32) Hypergroups
 - (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
 - (34) Quantales
- Near-Rings
- (35) Near-Semirings
 - (36) Near-Rings
- Real Analysis
- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
 - (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
- Measure Theory
- (39) Measurable Spaces
 - (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

Part 11

Monoids With Zero

CHAPTER 27

Monoids With Zero

017J

Appendices

27.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

- (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory**
- (40) Probability Theory
- Stochastic Analysis**
- (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
 - (42) Itô Calculus
- (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
- Differential Geometry**
- (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
- Schemes**
- (45) Schemes

27.2. Other Chapters

- | | |
|--|---|
| Sets | Globular Stuff |
| (1) Sets | (23) The Globe Category |
| (2) Constructions With Sets | Cellular Stuff |
| (3) Pointed Sets | (24) The Cell Category |
| (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets | Monoids |
| (5) Relations | (25) Monoids |
| (6) Spans | (26) Constructions With Monoids |
| (7) Posets | Monoids With Zero |
| Indexed and Fibred Sets | (27) Monoids With Zero |
| (7) Indexed Sets | (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero |
| (8) Fibred Sets | Groups |
| (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets | (29) Groups |
| Category Theory | (30) Constructions With Groups |
| (11) Categories | Hyper Algebra |
| (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories | (31) Hypermonoids |
| (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma | (32) Hypergroups |
| (14) Constructions With Categories | (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings |
| (15) Profunctors | (34) Quantales |
| (16) Cartesian Closed Categories | Near-Rings |
| (17) Kan Extensions | (35) Near-Semirings |
| Bicategories | (36) Near-Rings |
| (18) Bicategories | Real Analysis |
| (19) Internal Adjunctions | (37) Real Analysis in One Variable |
| Internal Category Theory | (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables |
| (20) Internal Categories | Measure Theory |
| Cyclic Stuff | (39) Measurable Spaces |
| (21) The Cycle Category | (40) Measures and Integration |
| Cubical Stuff | Probability Theory |
| (22) The Cube Category | |

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

CHAPTER 28

Constructions With Monoids With Zero

017K

Appendices

28.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

28.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

- | | |
|--|---|
| (40) Probability Theory
Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus | (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
Schemes

(45) Schemes |
|--|---|

Part 12

Groups

CHAPTER 29

Groups

017L

Appendices

29.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

29.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

CHAPTER 30

Constructions With Groups

017M

Appendices

30.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

30.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

- | | |
|--|---|
| (40) Probability Theory
Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus | (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
Schemes

(45) Schemes |
|--|---|

Part 13

Hyper Algebra

CHAPTER 31

Hypermonoids

017N

Appendices

31.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

31.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

CHAPTER 32

Hypergroups

017P

Appendices

32.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

- (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory**
- (40) Probability Theory
- Stochastic Analysis**
- (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
 - (42) Itô Calculus
- (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
- Differential Geometry**
- (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
- Schemes**
- (45) Schemes

32.2. Other Chapters

- | | |
|--|---|
| Sets | Globular Stuff |
| (1) Sets | (23) The Globe Category |
| (2) Constructions With Sets | Cellular Stuff |
| (3) Pointed Sets | (24) The Cell Category |
| (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets | Monoids |
| (5) Relations | (25) Monoids |
| (6) Spans | (26) Constructions With Monoids |
| (7) Posets | Monoids With Zero |
| Indexed and Fibred Sets | (27) Monoids With Zero |
| (7) Indexed Sets | (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero |
| (8) Fibred Sets | Groups |
| (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets | (29) Groups |
| Category Theory | (30) Constructions With Groups |
| (11) Categories | Hyper Algebra |
| (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories | (31) Hypermonoids |
| (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma | (32) Hypergroups |
| (14) Constructions With Categories | (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings |
| (15) Profunctors | (34) Quantales |
| (16) Cartesian Closed Categories | Near-Rings |
| (17) Kan Extensions | (35) Near-Semirings |
| Bicategories | (36) Near-Rings |
| (18) Bicategories | Real Analysis |
| (19) Internal Adjunctions | (37) Real Analysis in One Variable |
| Internal Category Theory | (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables |
| (20) Internal Categories | Measure Theory |
| Cyclic Stuff | (39) Measurable Spaces |
| (21) The Cycle Category | (40) Measures and Integration |
| Cubical Stuff | Probability Theory |
| (22) The Cube Category | |

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

CHAPTER 33

Hypersemirings and Hyperrings

017Q

Appendices

33.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

33.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

- | | |
|--|---|
| (40) Probability Theory
Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus | (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
Schemes

(45) Schemes |
|--|---|

CHAPTER 34

Quantales

017R

Appendices

34.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

34.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

- | | |
|---|---|
| (40) Probability Theory
Stochastic Analysis | (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
Differential Geometry |
| (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion | (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds |
| (42) Itô Calculus | Schemes
(45) Schemes |

Part 14

Near-Rings

CHAPTER 35

Near-Semirings

017S

Appendices

35.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

35.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
--	---

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

CHAPTER 36

Near-Rings

017T

Appendices

36.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

- (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory**
- (40) Probability Theory
- Stochastic Analysis**
- (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
- (42) Itô Calculus
- (43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

- (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
- Schemes**
- (45) Schemes

36.2. Other Chapters

- Sets
 - (1) Sets
 - (2) Constructions With Sets
 - (3) Pointed Sets
 - (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
 - (5) Relations
 - (6) Spans
 - (7) Posets
- Indexed and Fibred Sets
 - (7) Indexed Sets
 - (8) Fibred Sets
 - (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets
- Category Theory
 - (11) Categories
 - (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
 - (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
 - (14) Constructions With Categories
 - (15) Profunctors
 - (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
 - (17) Kan Extensions
- Bicategories
 - (18) Bicategories
 - (19) Internal Adjunctions
- Internal Category Theory
 - (20) Internal Categories
- Cyclic Stuff
 - (21) The Cycle Category
- Cubical Stuff
 - (22) The Cube Category
- Globular Stuff
 - (23) The Globe Category
- Cellular Stuff
 - (24) The Cell Category
- Monoids
 - (25) Monoids
 - (26) Constructions With Monoids
- Monoids With Zero
 - (27) Monoids With Zero
 - (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
- Groups
 - (29) Groups
 - (30) Constructions With Groups
- Hyper Algebra
 - (31) Hypermonoids
 - (32) Hypergroups
 - (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
 - (34) Quantales
- Near-Rings
 - (35) Near-Semirings
 - (36) Near-Rings
- Real Analysis
 - (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
 - (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
- Measure Theory
 - (39) Measurable Spaces
 - (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

Part 15

Real Analysis

CHAPTER 37

Real Analysis in One Variable

017U

Appendices

37.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

37.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

CHAPTER 38

Real Analysis in Several Variables

017V

Appendices

38.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration
Probability Theory

(40) Probability Theory
Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

38.2. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

(23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

(24) The Cell Category

Monoids

(25) Monoids
(26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

(27) Monoids With Zero
(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

(29) Groups
(30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

(31) Hypermonoids
(32) Hypergroups
(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
(34) Quantales

Near-Rings

(35) Near-Semirings
(36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

(39) Measurable Spaces
(40) Measures and Integration

Probability Theory

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

Part 16

Measure Theory

CHAPTER 39

Measurable Spaces

017W

Appendices

39.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

- (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory**
- (40) Probability Theory
- Stochastic Analysis**
- (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
 - (42) Itô Calculus
- (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
- Differential Geometry**
- (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
- Schemes**
- (45) Schemes

39.2. Other Chapters

- | | |
|--|---|
| Sets | Globular Stuff |
| (1) Sets | (23) The Globe Category |
| (2) Constructions With Sets | Cellular Stuff |
| (3) Pointed Sets | (24) The Cell Category |
| (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets | Monoids |
| (5) Relations | (25) Monoids |
| (6) Spans | (26) Constructions With Monoids |
| (7) Posets | Monoids With Zero |
| Indexed and Fibred Sets | (27) Monoids With Zero |
| (7) Indexed Sets | (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero |
| (8) Fibred Sets | Groups |
| (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets | (29) Groups |
| Category Theory | (30) Constructions With Groups |
| (11) Categories | Hyper Algebra |
| (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories | (31) Hypermonoids |
| (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma | (32) Hypergroups |
| (14) Constructions With Categories | (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings |
| (15) Profunctors | (34) Quantales |
| (16) Cartesian Closed Categories | Near-Rings |
| (17) Kan Extensions | (35) Near-Semirings |
| Bicategories | (36) Near-Rings |
| (18) Bicategories | Real Analysis |
| (19) Internal Adjunctions | (37) Real Analysis in One Variable |
| Internal Category Theory | (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables |
| (20) Internal Categories | Measure Theory |
| Cyclic Stuff | (39) Measurable Spaces |
| (21) The Cycle Category | (40) Measures and Integration |
| Cubical Stuff | Probability Theory |
| (22) The Cube Category | |

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

CHAPTER 40

Measures and Integration

017X

Appendices

40.A. Other Chapters

Sets	(22) The Cube Category
(1) Sets	
(2) Constructions With Sets	
(3) Pointed Sets	
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	
(5) Relations	
(6) Spans	
(7) Posets	
Indexed and Fibred Sets	
(7) Indexed Sets	
(8) Fibred Sets	
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	
Category Theory	
(11) Categories	
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	
(14) Constructions With Categories	
(15) Profunctors	
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	
(17) Kan Extensions	
Bicategories	
(18) Bicategories	
(19) Internal Adjunctions	
Internal Category Theory	
(20) Internal Categories	
Cyclic Stuff	
(21) The Cycle Category	
Cubical Stuff	
	(22) The Cube Category
Globular Stuff	
	(23) The Globe Category
Cellular Stuff	
	(24) The Cell Category
Monoids	
	(25) Monoids
	(26) Constructions With Monoids
Monoids With Zero	
	(27) Monoids With Zero
	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
Groups	
	(29) Groups
	(30) Constructions With Groups
Hyper Algebra	
	(31) Hypermonoids
	(32) Hypergroups
	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
	(34) Quantales
Near-Rings	
	(35) Near-Semirings
	(36) Near-Rings
Real Analysis	
	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
Measure Theory	
	(39) Measurable Spaces

- (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory**
- (40) Probability Theory
- Stochastic Analysis**
- (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
 - (42) Itô Calculus
- (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
- Differential Geometry**
- (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
- Schemes**
- (45) Schemes

40.2. Other Chapters

- | | |
|--|---|
| Sets | Globular Stuff |
| (1) Sets | (23) The Globe Category |
| (2) Constructions With Sets | Cellular Stuff |
| (3) Pointed Sets | (24) The Cell Category |
| (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets | Monoids |
| (5) Relations | (25) Monoids |
| (6) Spans | (26) Constructions With Monoids |
| (7) Posets | Monoids With Zero |
| Indexed and Fibred Sets | (27) Monoids With Zero |
| (7) Indexed Sets | (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero |
| (8) Fibred Sets | Groups |
| (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets | (29) Groups |
| Category Theory | (30) Constructions With Groups |
| (11) Categories | Hyper Algebra |
| (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories | (31) Hypermonoids |
| (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma | (32) Hypergroups |
| (14) Constructions With Categories | (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings |
| (15) Profunctors | (34) Quantales |
| (16) Cartesian Closed Categories | Near-Rings |
| (17) Kan Extensions | (35) Near-Semirings |
| Bicategories | (36) Near-Rings |
| (18) Bicategories | Real Analysis |
| (19) Internal Adjunctions | (37) Real Analysis in One Variable |
| Internal Category Theory | (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables |
| (20) Internal Categories | Measure Theory |
| Cyclic Stuff | (39) Measurable Spaces |
| (21) The Cycle Category | (40) Measures and Integration |
| Cubical Stuff | Probability Theory |
| (22) The Cube Category | |

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

Part 17

Probability Theory

CHAPTER 41

Probability Theory

017Y

Appendices

41.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

41.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	 Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

Part 18

Stochastic Analysis

CHAPTER 42

Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

017Z

Appendices

42.A. Other Chapters

Sets	(1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets	Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category
Indexed and Fibred Sets	(7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category
Category Theory	(11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions	Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category
Bicategories	(18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions	Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids
Internal Category Theory	(20) Internal Categories	Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
Cyclic Stuff	(21) The Cycle Category	Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups
		Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales
		Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings
		Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory	(42) Itô Calculus
(39) Measurable Spaces	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
(40) Measures and Integration	
Probability Theory	
(40) Probability Theory	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
Stochastic Analysis	
(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion	
	Differential Geometry
	Schemes
	(45) Schemes

42.2. Other Chapters

Sets	(22) The Cube Category
(1) Sets	Globular Stuff
(2) Constructions With Sets	(23) The Globe Category
(3) Pointed Sets	Cellular Stuff
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	(24) The Cell Category
(5) Relations	Monoids
(6) Spans	(25) Monoids
(7) Posets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
Indexed and Fibred Sets	Monoids With Zero
(7) Indexed Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
(8) Fibred Sets	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	
Category Theory	Groups
(11) Categories	(29) Groups
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(30) Constructions With Groups
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	Hyper Algebra
(14) Constructions With Categories	(31) Hypermonoids
(15) Profunctors	(32) Hypergroups
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
(17) Kan Extensions	(34) Quantales
Bicategories	Near-Rings
(18) Bicategories	(35) Near-Semirings
(19) Internal Adjunctions	(36) Near-Rings
Internal Category Theory	Real Analysis
(20) Internal Categories	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
Cyclic Stuff	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
(21) The Cycle Category	Measure Theory
Cubical Stuff	(39) Measurable Spaces

- | | |
|---|---|
| (40) Measures and Integration
Probability Theory | (42) Itô Calculus
(43) Stochastic Differential Equations |
| (40) Probability Theory
Stochastic Analysis | Differential Geometry |
| (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion | (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
Schemes |
| | (45) Schemes |

CHAPTER 43

Itô Calculus

0180

Appendices

43.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

(40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory (40) Probability Theory Stochastic Analysis (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion (42) Itô Calculus	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations Differential Geometry (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds Schemes (45) Schemes
---	---

43.2. Other Chapters

Sets (1) Sets (2) Constructions With Sets (3) Pointed Sets (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets (5) Relations (6) Spans (7) Posets Indexed and Fibred Sets (7) Indexed Sets (8) Fibred Sets (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets Category Theory (11) Categories (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma (14) Constructions With Categories (15) Profunctors (16) Cartesian Closed Categories (17) Kan Extensions Bicategories (18) Bicategories (19) Internal Adjunctions Internal Category Theory (20) Internal Categories Cyclic Stuff (21) The Cycle Category Cubical Stuff (22) The Cube Category	Globular Stuff (23) The Globe Category Cellular Stuff (24) The Cell Category Monoids (25) Monoids (26) Constructions With Monoids Monoids With Zero (27) Monoids With Zero (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero Groups (29) Groups (30) Constructions With Groups Hyper Algebra (31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings (34) Quantales Near-Rings (35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings Real Analysis (37) Real Analysis in One Variable (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables Measure Theory (39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration Probability Theory
---	---

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

CHAPTER 44

Stochastic Differential Equations

0181

Appendices

44.A. Other Chapters

Sets

- (1) Sets
- (2) Constructions With Sets
- (3) Pointed Sets
- (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets
- (5) Relations
- (6) Spans
- (7) Posets

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) Indexed Sets
- (8) Fibred Sets
- (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets

Category Theory

- (11) Categories
- (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
- (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma
- (14) Constructions With Categories
- (15) Profunctors
- (16) Cartesian Closed Categories
- (17) Kan Extensions

Bicategories

- (18) Bicategories
- (19) Internal Adjunctions

Internal Category Theory

- (20) Internal Categories

Cyclic Stuff

- (21) The Cycle Category

Cubical Stuff

- (22) The Cube Category

Globular Stuff

- (23) The Globe Category

Cellular Stuff

- (24) The Cell Category

Monoids

- (25) Monoids
- (26) Constructions With Monoids

Monoids With Zero

- (27) Monoids With Zero
- (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero

Groups

- (29) Groups
- (30) Constructions With Groups

Hyper Algebra

- (31) Hypermonoids
- (32) Hypergroups
- (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
- (34) Quantales

Near-Rings

- (35) Near-Semirings
- (36) Near-Rings

Real Analysis

- (37) Real Analysis in One Variable
- (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables

Measure Theory

- (39) Measurable Spaces

- (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory**
- (40) Probability Theory
- Stochastic Analysis**
- (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
 - (42) Itô Calculus
- (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
- Differential Geometry**
- (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
- Schemes**
- (45) Schemes

44.2. Other Chapters

- | | |
|--|---|
| Sets | Globular Stuff |
| (1) Sets | (23) The Globe Category |
| (2) Constructions With Sets | Cellular Stuff |
| (3) Pointed Sets | (24) The Cell Category |
| (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets | Monoids |
| (5) Relations | (25) Monoids |
| (6) Spans | (26) Constructions With Monoids |
| (7) Posets | Monoids With Zero |
| Indexed and Fibred Sets | (27) Monoids With Zero |
| (7) Indexed Sets | (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero |
| (8) Fibred Sets | Groups |
| (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets | (29) Groups |
| Category Theory | (30) Constructions With Groups |
| (11) Categories | Hyper Algebra |
| (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories | (31) Hypermonoids |
| (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma | (32) Hypergroups |
| (14) Constructions With Categories | (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings |
| (15) Profunctors | (34) Quantales |
| (16) Cartesian Closed Categories | Near-Rings |
| (17) Kan Extensions | (35) Near-Semirings |
| Bicategories | (36) Near-Rings |
| (18) Bicategories | Real Analysis |
| (19) Internal Adjunctions | (37) Real Analysis in One Variable |
| Internal Category Theory | (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables |
| (20) Internal Categories | Measure Theory |
| Cyclic Stuff | (39) Measurable Spaces |
| (21) The Cycle Category | (40) Measures and Integration |
| Cubical Stuff | Probability Theory |
| (22) The Cube Category | |

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

Part 19

Differential Geometry

CHAPTER 45

Topological and Smooth Manifolds

0182

Appendices

45.A. Other Chapters

Sets	(22) The Cube Category
(1) Sets	
(2) Constructions With Sets	
(3) Pointed Sets	
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	
(5) Relations	
(6) Spans	
(7) Posets	
Indexed and Fibred Sets	
(7) Indexed Sets	
(8) Fibred Sets	
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	
Category Theory	
(11) Categories	
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	
(14) Constructions With Categories	
(15) Profunctors	
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	
(17) Kan Extensions	
Bicategories	
(18) Bicategories	
(19) Internal Adjunctions	
Internal Category Theory	
(20) Internal Categories	
Cyclic Stuff	
(21) The Cycle Category	
Cubical Stuff	
	(22) The Cube Category
Globular Stuff	
	(23) The Globe Category
Cellular Stuff	
	(24) The Cell Category
Monoids	
	(25) Monoids
	(26) Constructions With Monoids
Monoids With Zero	
	(27) Monoids With Zero
	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
Groups	
	(29) Groups
	(30) Constructions With Groups
Hyper Algebra	
	(31) Hypermonoids
	(32) Hypergroups
	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
	(34) Quantales
Near-Rings	
	(35) Near-Semirings
	(36) Near-Rings
Real Analysis	
	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
Measure Theory	
	(39) Measurable Spaces

- (40) Measures and Integration
- Probability Theory**
- (40) Probability Theory
- Stochastic Analysis**
- (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
 - (42) Itô Calculus
- (43) Stochastic Differential Equations
- Differential Geometry**
- (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
- Schemes**
- (45) Schemes

45.2. Other Chapters

- | | |
|--|---|
| Sets | Globular Stuff |
| (1) Sets | (23) The Globe Category |
| (2) Constructions With Sets | Cellular Stuff |
| (3) Pointed Sets | (24) The Cell Category |
| (4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets | Monoids |
| (5) Relations | (25) Monoids |
| (6) Spans | (26) Constructions With Monoids |
| (7) Posets | Monoids With Zero |
| Indexed and Fibred Sets | (27) Monoids With Zero |
| (7) Indexed Sets | (28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero |
| (8) Fibred Sets | Groups |
| (9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets | (29) Groups |
| Category Theory | (30) Constructions With Groups |
| (11) Categories | Hyper Algebra |
| (12) Types of Morphisms in Categories | (31) Hypermonoids |
| (13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma | (32) Hypergroups |
| (14) Constructions With Categories | (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings |
| (15) Profunctors | (34) Quantales |
| (16) Cartesian Closed Categories | Near-Rings |
| (17) Kan Extensions | (35) Near-Semirings |
| Bicategories | (36) Near-Rings |
| (18) Bicategories | Real Analysis |
| (19) Internal Adjunctions | (37) Real Analysis in One Variable |
| Internal Category Theory | (38) Real Analysis in Several Variables |
| (20) Internal Categories | Measure Theory |
| Cyclic Stuff | (39) Measurable Spaces |
| (21) The Cycle Category | (40) Measures and Integration |
| Cubical Stuff | Probability Theory |
| (22) The Cube Category | |

(40) Probability Theory

Stochastic Analysis

(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion

(42) Itô Calculus

(43) Stochastic Differential Equations

Differential Geometry

(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds

Schemes

(45) Schemes

Part 20

Schemes

CHAPTER 46

Schemes

0183

46.1. Introduction

In this document we define schemes. A basic reference is [EGA].

46.2. Other Chapters

Sets	Cubical Stuff
(1) Sets	(22) The Cube Category
(2) Constructions With Sets	Globular Stuff
(3) Pointed Sets	(23) The Globe Category
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	Cellular Stuff
(5) Relations	(24) The Cell Category
(6) Spans	Monoids
(7) Posets	(25) Monoids
Indexed and Fibred Sets	(26) Constructions With Monoids
(7) Indexed Sets	Monoids With Zero
(8) Fibred Sets	(27) Monoids With Zero
(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets	(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero
Category Theory	Groups
(11) Categories	(29) Groups
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(30) Constructions With Groups
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	Hyper Algebra
(14) Constructions With Categories	(31) Hypermonoids
(15) Profunctors	(32) Hypergroups
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
(17) Kan Extensions	(34) Quantales
Bicategories	Near-Rings
(18) Bicategories	(35) Near-Semirings
(19) Internal Adjunctions	(36) Near-Rings
Internal Category Theory	Real Analysis
(20) Internal Categories	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
Cyclic Stuff	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
(21) The Cycle Category	

- | | |
|---|--|
| Measure Theory | (42) Itô Calculus |
| (39) Measurable Spaces | (43) Stochastic Differential Equations |
| (40) Measures and Integration | |
| Probability Theory | Differential Geometry |
| (40) Probability Theory | (44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds |
| Stochastic Analysis | |
| (41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion | Schemes |
| | (45) Schemes |

Part 21

Secret Part

CHAPTER 47

To Do List

0185 This chapter contains some material about relations and constructions with them. Notably, we discuss and explore:

47.1. Notes to Self

47.1.1. Things To Ask On MO/Zulip.

0188 **Remark 47.1.1.1.** Here is a list of things to be asked on MO/Zulip.

- (1) What are
 - (a) Cartesian bicategories
 - (b) Double categories of relations (<https://arxiv.org/abs/2107.07621>)
 - (c) Categories of relations
 - (d) Allegories
 - (e) 1-Category equipped with relations (<https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/1-category+equipped+with+relations>)

good for? What have these notions been developed for, why are they important, and what have they lead to?

47.1.2. Things To Explore/Add.

018A **Remark 47.1.2.1.1.** Here is a list of things to be explored.

- (1) <https://mathoverflow.net/a/461814>
- (2) there's some cool stuff in <https://arxiv.org/abs/2312.00990>, e.g. on cofunctors.
- (3) internal adjunctions in **Mod** as in [JY21, Section 6.3]; see [JY21, Example 6.2.6].
- (4) write the “profunctors” equivalent of the relations chapter
- (5) change χ_B notation throughout the notes
- (6) maybe note that skew monoidal structures on **Rel**(A, B) satisfy coherence trivially since the 2-morphisms are inclusions
- (7) reconsider notation **FreeAlg** $_{\mathcal{P}}$ in **Relations**
- (8) Constructions With Sets: Isbell duality for powersets
- (9) Categories: comma category notation as in <https://mathoverflow.net/questions/455630>
- (10) Universal property of the bicategory of spans, <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/span>
- (11) Codensity monad $\text{Ran}_J(J)$ of a relation (What about $\text{Rift}_J(J)$?)
- (12) Relative comonads in **Rel**.
- (13) Write proper sections on straightening for lax functors from sets to **Rel** or **Span** (displayed sets) when I study the corresponding notions for categories

- (14) Write about cospans.
- (15) CoCartesian fibration classifying $\text{Fun}(F, G)$, <https://mathoverflow.net/questions/457533/cocartesian-fibration-classifying-mathrmfunf-g>
- (16) Constructions With Sets: functoriality of limits/colimits, like functoriality of pullbacks
- (17) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/adjoint+lifting+theorem>
- (18) <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/Gabriel%28%93Ulmer+duality>

47.1.3. Random Cool Papers.

018C **Remark 47.1.3.1.1.** Here are some random cool papers that appeared on arXiv and that I want to check eventually.

- (1) [A Derived Geometric Approach to Propagation of Solution Singularities for Non-linear PDEs I: Foundations](#)
- (2) [The Fundamental Theorem of Calculus point-free, with applications to exponentials and logarithms](#)

47.1.4. Omitted Proofs To Add.

Не так благотворна истина, как зловредна ее видимость.

Truth does not do as much good in the world as the appearance of truth does evil.

Даниил Данковский

Daniil Dankovsky

There's a very large number of omitted proofs throughout these notes; here I list some of the ones that I really want to add to the notes at some point.

018E **Remark 47.1.4.1.1.** Here is a list of omitted proofs that I really want to eventually write up or add a reference to.

- ?? of ??

Appendices

47.A. Other Chapters

Sets

(7) Posets

- (1) [Sets](#)
- (2) [Constructions With Sets](#)
- (3) [Pointed Sets](#)
- (4) [Tensor Products of Pointed Sets](#)
- (5) [Relations](#)
- (6) [Spans](#)

Indexed and Fibred Sets

- (7) [Indexed Sets](#)
- (8) [Fibred Sets](#)
- (9) [Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets](#)

Category Theory

(11) Categories	(29) Groups
(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories	(30) Constructions With Groups
Hyper Algebra	
(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	(31) Hypermonoids
(14) Constructions With Categories	(32) Hypergroups
(15) Profunctors	(33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	(34) Quantales
(17) Kan Extensions	Near-Rings
(35) Near-Semirings	
(36) Near-Rings	
Real Analysis	
(18) Bicategories	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(19) Internal Adjunctions	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
Internal Category Theory	
(20) Internal Categories	Measure Theory
(21) The Cycle Category	
Cubical Stuff	
(22) The Cube Category	(39) Measurable Spaces
Globular Stuff	
(23) The Globe Category	(40) Measures and Integration
Cellular Stuff	
(24) The Cell Category	Probability Theory
Monoids	
(25) Monoids	(40) Probability Theory
(26) Constructions With Monoids	Stochastic Analysis
Monoids With Zero	
(27) Monoids With Zero	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero	(42) Itô Calculus
Groups	
	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
Differential Geometry	
	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
Schemes	
	(45) Schemes

47.2. Other Chapters

Sets	Indexed and Fibred Sets
(1) Sets	(7) Indexed Sets
(2) Constructions With Sets	(8) Fibred Sets
(3) Pointed Sets	(9) Un/Straightening for Indexed and Fibred Sets
(4) Tensor Products of Pointed Sets	Category Theory
(5) Relations	(11) Categories
(6) Spans	(12) Types of Morphisms in Categories
(7) Posets	

(13) Adjunctions and the Yoneda Lemma	Hyper Algebra
(14) Constructions With Categories	(31) Hypermonoids (32) Hypergroups (33) Hypersemirings and Hyperrings
(15) Profunctors	(34) Quantales
(16) Cartesian Closed Categories	Near-Rings
(17) Kan Extensions	(35) Near-Semirings (36) Near-Rings
Bicategories	Real Analysis
(18) Bicategories	(37) Real Analysis in One Variable
(19) Internal Adjunctions	(38) Real Analysis in Several Variables
Internal Category Theory	Measure Theory
(20) Internal Categories	(39) Measurable Spaces (40) Measures and Integration
Cyclic Stuff	Probability Theory
(21) The Cycle Category	(40) Probability Theory
Cubical Stuff	Stochastic Analysis
(22) The Cube Category	(41) Stochastic Processes, Martingales, and Brownian Motion
Globular Stuff	(42) Itô Calculus
(23) The Globe Category	(43) Stochastic Differential Equations
Cellular Stuff	Differential Geometry
(24) The Cell Category	(44) Topological and Smooth Manifolds
Monoids	Schemes
(25) Monoids	(45) Schemes
(26) Constructions With Monoids	
Monoids With Zero	
(27) Monoids With Zero	
(28) Constructions With Monoids With Zero	
Groups	
(29) Groups	
(30) Constructions With Groups	

Bibliography

- [MO 119454] user30818. *Category and the Axiom of Choice*. MathOverflow. URL: <https://mathoverflow.net/q/119454> (cit. on p. 265).
- [MO 350788] Peter LeFanu Lumsdaine. *Epimorphisms of relations*. MathOverflow. URL: <https://mathoverflow.net/q/455260> (cit. on p. 118).
- [MO 382264] Neil Strickland. *Proof that a Cartesian category is monoidal*. MathOverflow. URL: <https://mathoverflow.net/q/382264> (cit. on p. 16).
- [MO 64365] Giorgio Mossa. *Natural Transformations as Categorical Homotopies*. MathOverflow. URL: <https://mathoverflow.net/q/64365> (cit. on p. 275).
- [MSE 267469] Zhen Lin. *Show that the powerset partial order is a cartesian closed category*. Mathematics Stack Exchange. URL: <https://math.stackexchange.com/q/267469> (cit. on p. 39).
- [MSE 350788] Qiaochu Yuan. *Mono's and Epi's in the category Rel?* Mathematics Stack Exchange. URL: <https://math.stackexchange.com/q/350788> (cit. on pp. 116, 118, 245, 285, 308).
- [Bor94] Francis Borceux. *Handbook of Categorical Algebra I*. Vol. 50. Encyclopedia of Mathematics and its Applications. Basic Category Theory. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1994, pp. xvi+345. ISBN: 0-521-44178-1 (cit. on p. 273).
- [BS10] John C. Baez and Michael Shulman. “Lectures on n -Categories and Cohomology”. In: *Towards higher categories*. Vol. 152. IMA Vol. Math. Appl. Springer, New York, 2010, pp. 1–68. DOI: [10.1007/978-1-4419-1524-5_1](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4419-1524-5_1). URL: https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4419-1524-5_1 (cit. on p. 2).
- [Cie97] Krzysztof Ciesielski. *Set Theory for the Working Mathematician*. Vol. 39. London Mathematical Society Student Texts. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1997, pp. xii+236. ISBN: 0-521-59441-3; 0-521-59465-0. DOI: [10.1017/CBO9781139173131](https://doi.org/10.1017/CBO9781139173131). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1017/CBO9781139173131> (cit. on p. 35).
- [GGN15] David Gepner, Moritz Groth, and Thomas Nikolaus. “Universality of Multiplicative Infinite Loop Space Machines”. In: *Algebr. Geom. Topol.* 15.6 (2015), pp. 3107–3153. ISSN: 1472-2747. DOI: [10.2140/agt.2015.15.3107](https://doi.org/10.2140/agt.2015.15.3107). URL: <https://doi.org/10.2140/agt.2015.15.3107> (cit. on p. 90).
- [JY21] Niles Johnson and Donald Yau. *2-Dimensional Categories*. Oxford University Press, Oxford, 2021, pp. xix+615. ISBN: 978-0-19-887138-5; 978-0-19-887137-8. DOI: [10.1093/oso/9780198871385.001.0001](https://doi.org/10.1093/oso/9780198871385.001.0001).

- 9780198871378.001.0001. URL: <https://doi.org/10.1093/oso/9780198871378.001.0001> (cit. on pp. 316, 327, 328, 330, 332, 437).
- [Nie04] Susan Niefield. “Change of Base for Relational Variable Sets”. In: *Theory Appl. Categ.* 12 (2004), No. 7, 248–261. ISSN: 1201-561X (cit. on p. 241).
- [nLa24a] nLab Authors. *Displayed Category*. <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/displayed+category>. Oct. 2024 (cit. on p. 241).
- [nLa24b] nLab Authors. *Groupoid*. <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/groupoid>. Oct. 2024 (cit. on p. 266).
- [nLab23] The nLab Authors. *Skeleton*. 2024. URL: <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/skeleton> (cit. on p. 250).
- [Pro24a] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Bijection Between $R \times (S \times T)$ and $(R \times S) \times T$* — Proof Wiki. 2024. URL: [https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Bijection_between_R_x_\(S_x_T\)_and_\(R_x_S\)_x_T](https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Bijection_between_R_x_(S_x_T)_and_(R_x_S)_x_T) (cit. on p. 16).
- [Pro24b] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Bijection Between $S \times T$ and $T \times S$* — Proof Wiki. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Bijection_between_S_x_T_and_T_x_S (cit. on p. 16).
- [Pro24c] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Cartesian Product Distributes Over Set Difference* — Proof Wiki. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Cartesian_Product_Distributes_over_Set_Difference (cit. on p. 16).
- [Pro24d] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Cartesian Product Distributes Over Symmetric Difference* — Proof Wiki. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Cartesian_Product_Distributes_over_Symmetric_Difference (cit. on p. 16).
- [Pro24e] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Cartesian Product Distributes Over Union* — Proof Wiki. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Cartesian_Product_Distributes_over_Union (cit. on p. 16).
- [Pro24f] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Cartesian Product Is Empty Iff Factor Is Empty* — Proof Wiki. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Cartesian_Product_is_EEmpty_if_Factor_is_EEmpty (cit. on p. 16).
- [Pro24g] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Cartesian Product of Intersections* — Proof Wiki. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Cartesian_Product_of_Intersections (cit. on p. 16).
- [Pro24h] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Characteristic Function of Intersection* — Proof Wiki. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Characteristic_Function_of_Intersection (cit. on p. 39).
- [Pro24i] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Characteristic Function of Set Difference* — Proof Wiki. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Characteristic_Function_of_Set_Difference (cit. on p. 41).
- [Pro24j] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Characteristic Function of Symmetric Difference* — Proof Wiki. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Characteristic_Function_of_Symmetric_Difference.

- [Pro24k] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Characteristic Function of Union — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Characteristic_Function_of_Union (cit. on p. 45).
- [Pro24l] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Complement of Complement — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Complement_of_Complement (cit. on p. 42).
- [Pro24m] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Condition For Mapping from Quotient Set To Be A Surjection — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Condition_for_Mapping_from_Quotient_Set_to_be_Surjection (cit. on p. 145).
- [Pro24n] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Condition For Mapping From Quotient Set To Be An Injection — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Condition_for_Mapping_from_Quotient_Set_to_be_Injection (cit. on p. 145).
- [Pro24o] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Condition For Mapping From Quotient Set To Be Well-Defined — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Condition_for_Mapping_from_Quotient_Set_to_be_Well-Defined (cit. on p. 145).
- [Pro24p] Proof Wiki Contributors. *De Morgan's Laws (Set Theory) — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: [https://proofwiki.org/wiki/De_Morgan%27s_Laws_\(Set_Theory\)](https://proofwiki.org/wiki/De_Morgan%27s_Laws_(Set_Theory)) (cit. on pp. 41, 42).
- [Pro24q] Proof Wiki Contributors. *De Morgan's Laws (Set Theory)/Set Difference/Difference with Union — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: [https://proofwiki.org/wiki/De_Morgan%27s_Laws_\(Set_Theory\)/Set_Difference/Difference_with_Union](https://proofwiki.org/wiki/De_Morgan%27s_Laws_(Set_Theory)/Set_Difference/Difference_with_Union) (cit. on p. 41).
- [Pro24r] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Equivalence of Definitions of Symmetric Difference — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Equivalence_of_Definitions_of_Symmetric_Difference (cit. on p. 45).
- [Pro24s] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Intersection Distributes Over Symmetric Difference — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Intersection_Distributes_over_Symmetric_Difference (cit. on p. 45).
- [Pro24t] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Intersection Is Associative — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Intersection_is_Associative (cit. on p. 39).
- [Pro24u] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Intersection Is Commutative — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Intersection_is_Commutative (cit. on p. 39).
- [Pro24v] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Intersection With Empty Set — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Intersection_with_Empty_Set (cit. on p. 39).
- [Pro24w] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Intersection With Set Difference Is Set Difference With Intersection — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Intersection_with_Set_Difference_Is_Set_Difference_With_Intersection (cit. on p. 39).

- [Pro24x] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Difference_is_Set_Difference_with_Intersection* (cit. on p. 41).
- [Pro24y] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Intersection_With_Subset_Is_Subset — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Intersection_With_Subset_is_Subset (cit. on p. 39).
- [Pro24z] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Mapping_From_Quotient_Set_When Defined_Is_Unique — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Mapping_from_Quotient_Set_when_Defined_is_Unique (cit. on p. 145).
- [Pro24aa] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Quotient_Mapping_Is_Coequalizer — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Quotient_Mapping_is_Coequalizer (cit. on p. 33).
- [Pro24ab] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Set_Difference_as_Intersection_With_Complement — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Set_Difference_as_Intersection_with_Complement (cit. on p. 41).
- [Pro24ac] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Set_Difference_as_Symmetric_Difference_With_Intersection — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Set_Difference_as_Symmetric_Difference_with_Intersection (cit. on p. 41).
- [Pro24ad] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Set_Difference_Over_Subset — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Set_Difference_over_Subset (cit. on p. 41).
- [Pro24ae] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Set_Difference_With_Empty_Set_Is_Self — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Set_Difference_with_Empty_Set_is_Self (cit. on p. 41).
- [Pro24af] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Set_Difference_With_Self_Is_Empty_Set — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Set_Difference_with_Self_is_Empty_Set (cit. on p. 41).
- [Pro24ag] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Set_Difference_With_Set_Difference_Is_Union_of_Set_Difference_With_Intersection — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Set_Difference_With_Set_Difference_Is_Union_of_Set_Difference_With_Intersection (cit. on p. 41).
- [Pro24ah] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Set_Difference_With_Subset_Is_Superset_of_Set_Difference — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Set_Difference_With_Subset_is_Superset_of_Set_Difference (cit. on p. 41).
- [Pro24ai] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Set_Difference_With_Union — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Set_Difference_With_Union (cit. on p. 41).
- [Pro24aj] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Set_Intersection_Distributes_Over_Union — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Intersection_Distributes_over_Union (cit. on p. 39).

- [Pro24ak] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Set Intersection Is Idempotent — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Set_Intersection_is_Idempotent (cit. on p. 39).
- [Pro24al] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Set Intersection Preserves Subsets — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Set_Intersection_Preserves_Subsets (cit. on p. 39).
- [Pro24am] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Set Union Is Idempotent — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Set_Union_is_Idempotent (cit. on p. 36).
- [Pro24an] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Set Union Preserves Subsets — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Set_Union_Preserves_Subsets (cit. on p. 36).
- [Pro24ao] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Symmetric Difference Is Associative — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Symmetric_Difference_is_Associative (cit. on p. 45).
- [Pro24ap] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Symmetric Difference Is Commutative — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Symmetric_Difference_is_Commutative (cit. on p. 45).
- [Pro24aq] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Symmetric Difference of Complements — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Symmetric_Difference_of_Complements (cit. on p. 45).
- [Pro24ar] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Symmetric Difference on Power Set Forms Abelian Group — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Symmetric_Difference_on_Power_Set_forms_Abelian_Group (cit. on p. 45).
- [Pro24as] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Symmetric Difference With Complement — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Symmetric_Difference_with_Complement (cit. on p. 45).
- [Pro24at] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Symmetric Difference With Empty Set — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Symmetric_Difference_with_Empty_Set (cit. on p. 45).
- [Pro24au] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Symmetric Difference With Intersection Forms Ring — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Symmetric_Difference_with_Intersection_forms_Ring (cit. on p. 45).
- [Pro24av] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Symmetric Difference With Self Is Empty Set — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Symmetric_Difference_with_Self_is_Empty_Set (cit. on p. 45).
- [Pro24aw] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Symmetric Difference With Union Does Not Form Ring — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Symmetric_Difference_with_Union_does_not_form_Ring (cit. on p. 45).
- [Pro24ax] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Symmetric Difference With Universe — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Symmetric_Difference_with_Universe (cit. on p. 45).

- [Pro24ay] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Union as Symmetric Difference With Intersection — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Union_as_Symmetric_Difference_with_Intersection (cit. on p. 36).
- [Pro24az] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Union Distributes Over Intersection — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Union_Distributes_over_Intersection (cit. on p. 36).
- [Pro24ba] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Union Is Associative — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Union_is_Associative (cit. on p. 36).
- [Pro24bb] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Union Is Commutative — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Union_is_Commutative (cit. on p. 36).
- [Pro24bc] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Union of Symmetric Differences — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Union_of_Symmetric_Differences (cit. on p. 45).
- [Pro24bd] Proof Wiki Contributors. *Union With Empty Set — Proof Wiki*. 2024. URL: https://proofwiki.org/wiki/Union_with_Empty_Set (cit. on p. 36).
- [PS19] Maximilien Péroux and Brooke Shipley. “Coalgebras in Symmetric Monoidal Categories of Spectra”. In: *Homology Homotopy Appl.* 21.1 (2019), pp. 1–18. ISSN: 1532-0073. DOI: [10.4310/HHA.2019.v21.n1.a1](https://doi.org/10.4310/HHA.2019.v21.n1.a1). URL: <https://doi.org/10.4310/HHA.2019.v21.n1.a1> (cit. on p. 90).
- [Rie17] Emily Riehl. *Category Theory in Context*. Vol. 10. Aurora: Dover Modern Math Originals. Courier Dover Publications, 2017, pp. xviii+240. ISBN: 978-0486809038. URL: <http://www.math.jhu.edu/~eriehl/context.pdf> (cit. on pp. 260, 266).
- [SS86] Stephen Schanuel and Ross Street. “The Free Adjunction”. In: *Cahiers Topologie Géom. Différentielle Catég.* 27.1 (1986), pp. 81–83. ISSN: 0008-0004 (cit. on p. 323).

Index of Notation

A

- $[a]$, 142
- (A, B) , 35
- Adj , 323
- $A \coprod B$, 25
- $A \coprod_C B$, 27
- $A \triangle B$, 42
- $A \times B$, 11
- $A \times_C B$, 16
- $A \times_{f,C,g} B$, 16
- $A \cup B$, 35

B

- $\beta \circ \alpha$, 270
- $\beta \star \alpha$, 272

C

- $C(A, B)$, 245
- Cats , 279
- Cats_2 , 280
- $[C, \mathcal{D}]$, 277
- $\chi_{(-)}$, 46
- χ_{-2}^{-1} , 46
- χ_U , 46
- χ_x , 46
- $\chi_X(-_1, -_2)$, 46
- $\chi_X(-, U)$, 46
- $\chi_X(-, x)$, 46
- $\chi_X(U, -)$, 46
- $\chi_X(x, -)$, 46
- $\text{CoEq}(f, g)$, 32
- $\text{Coim}(f)$, 143
- $\text{Coll}(\mathfrak{p})$, 301
- $\text{Coll}(R)$, 134
- $\text{Coll}(R)$, 134
- $\coprod_{i \in I} A_i$, 24
- $\text{Core}(C)$, 258

C^{\simeq} , 258

D

- \mathcal{D}^C , 277
- $\text{dom}(\mathfrak{p})$, 300
- $\text{dom}(R)$, 125

E

- \emptyset_{cat} , 247
- \emptyset , 34
- $\text{Eq}(f, g)$, 21
- $\text{eq}(f, g)$, 21

F

- \widehat{F}_* , 301
- \widehat{F}^* , 300
- FibSets , 216
- $\text{FibSets}(K)$, 215
- f^{-1} , 57
- $f^{-1}(V)$, 57
- \mathbb{F}_1 , 67
- $f_!$, 59
- $f_{!,\text{cp}}(U)$, 61
- $f_{!,\text{im}}(U)$, 60
- $f_!(U)$, 59
- f^* , 53, 250
- f_x^* , 214
- $f(U)$, 53
- $\text{Fun}(C, \mathcal{D})$, 277

G

- $\text{Gr}(A)$, 120
- Grpd , 281
- Grpd_2 , 281

H

$\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}_*}^{\otimes, \text{L}}(X \times Y, Z)$, 76
 $\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}_*}^{\otimes, \text{R}}(X \times Y, Z)$, 77
 $\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}_*}^{\otimes}(X \times Y, Z)$, 78

Q
 $\mathfrak{q} \diamond \mathfrak{p}$, 304
 $\mathfrak{q} \diamond \mathfrak{p}$, 300

I
 id_C , 261
 id_F , 269
 $\bigcup_{i \in I} R_i$, 127
 $\bigcap_{X \in \mathcal{F}} X$, 37
ISets, 206
ISets(K), 205

K
 $\text{K}_0(C)$, 256

L
 Λ , 175

M
 $\text{Mor}(C)$, 245

N
 \ltimes , 248
 $\text{Nat}(F, G)$, 269

O
 ω^\dagger , 331

P
 $\mathfrak{p}: C \dashrightarrow \mathcal{D}$, 299
 $\phi^{-1}(x)$, 214
 ϕ_x , 214
 $\Pi_f(X)$, 219
 $\Pi_\phi(X)$, 211
 $\pi_0(C)$, 252
 \mathcal{P}^{-1} , 50, 161
 $\prod_{i \in I} A_i$, 10
Prof, 304
 $\mathcal{P}_!$, 50, 161
 \mathcal{P}_* , 50, 161
 pt , 67
 pt , 247
 $\mathcal{P}(X)$, 49

R
 $\text{range}(\mathfrak{p})$, 300
 $\text{range}(R)$, 125
 R^\dagger , 129
Rel, 100
Rel, 103
 $\text{Rel}(A, B)$, 94
Rel(A, B), 94
 Rel^{dbl} , 104
 $\text{Rel}^{\text{eq}}(A, B)$, 141
Rel^{eq}(A, B), 141
 $\text{Rel}^{\text{refl}}(A, A)$, 135
Rel^{refl}(A, A), 135
 $\text{Rel}^{\text{symm}}(A, A)$, 137
Rel^{symm}(A, A), 137
 $\text{Rel}^{\text{trans}}(A)$, 139
Rel^{trans}(A), 139
 R^{eq} , 141
 $R \cap S$, 126
 R^{-1} , 153
 R_{-1} , 149
 $R^{-1}(V)$, 153
 $R_{-1}(V)$, 149
 R^{refl} , 136
 $R_!$, 157
 $R_!(U)$, 157
 R^* , 145
 R^{symm} , 137
 $R \times S$, 128
 R^{trans} , 139
 $R(U)$, 146
 $R \cup S$, 125

S
 S_{ab} , 192
 $S \diamond R$, 130
 $\text{Sets}_{/K}$, 215
 Sets_* , 68
Hom _{Sets_*} (X, Y), 70
 $\Sigma_f(X)$, 218
 $\Sigma_\phi(X)$, 210
 \sim_{cotriv} , 98

\sim_{id} , 46	U^c , 41
\sim_R^{refl} , 136	$\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i$, 35
\sim_R^{symm} , 137	$\bigcup_{i \in I} R_i$, 126
\sim_R^{eq} , 141	Un_K , 238
\sim_R^{trans} , 139	$\text{UnNat}(F, G)$, 268
\sim^{triv} , 97	
Span , 180	
$\text{Span}(A, B)$, 177	
Span^{dbl} , 181	
$\text{St}_{A,B}$, 191	
St_K , 236	
S^0 , 67	
T	X
$\{\text{t}, \text{f}\}$, 2	$\{X\}$, 34
$\prod_{i \in I} R_i$, 129	X_{disc} , 254
$\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}$, 2	X_{indisc} , 255
U	$X \cap Y$, 37
	$X \setminus Y$, 39
	X / \sim_R , 142
	$X \otimes_{\mathbb{F}_1} Y$, 86
	X^+ , 70
	$X \vee Y$, 71
	$X \wedge Y$, 86
	$\{X, Y\}$, 34

Index of Set Theory

B

bilinear morphism
of pointed sets, 77
bilinear morphism of pointed sets
left, 76
right, 76
binary intersection, 37

C

Cartesian product, 10, 11
category of relations, 100
 associator of, 101
 internal Hom of, 102
 left unit of, 101
 monoidal product of, 100
 monoidal unit of, 100
 right unit of, 101
 symmetry of, 102
characteristic embedding, 46
characteristic function
 of a set, 46
 of an element, 46
characteristic relation, 46
coequaliser of sets, 32
coimage, 143
complement of a set, 41

D

difference of sets, 39
disjoint union, 25
 of a family of sets, 24

E

empty set, 34
equaliser of sets, 21
equivalence class, 142

equivalence relation
kernel, 141

F

fibre coproduct of sets, 27
fibre product of sets, 16
fibred set, 214
 category of, 215, 216
 change of base, 217
 dependent product, 219
 dependent sum, 218
 fibre over an element, 214
 internal **Hom** of, 222
 morphism of, 214
 transport map on fibres, 214
field with one element
 module over, 67
 module over, morphism of, 67
function
 associated direct image
 function, 53
 associated direct image with
 compact support function, 59
 associated direct image with
 compact support function,
 complement part, 61
 associated direct image with
 compact support function,
 image part, 60
 associated inverse image
 function, 57
 coimage of, 143
 graph of, 120
 inverse of, 122
 kernel of, 141

I

indexed set, 205

category of, 206
 category of K -inded sets, 205
 change of indexing, 209
 coequaliser, 209
 coproduct, 208
 dependent product, 211
 dependent sum, 210
 equaliser, 207, 208
 internal **Hom** of, 211
 morphism of, 205
 product, 207, 208
 pullback, 207, 208
 pushout, 209
 indicator function, *see also*
 characteristic function
 intersection of a family of sets, 37

L

left tensor product of pointed sets
 skew associator, 80
 skew left unit, 81
 skew right unit, 82

M

(-1) -category, 2
 (-2) -category, 2
 module
 underlying pointed set of, 67

O

ordered pairing, 35

P

pairing of two sets, 34
 pointed function, *see also* pointed
 set, morphism of
 pointed set, 67
 category of, 68
 coequaliser of, 70
 coproduct of, 70
 cotensor by a set, 79
 equaliser of, 69
 \mathbb{F}_1 , 67
 free, 70
 left tensor product, 79
 morphism of, 67

of morphisms of pointed sets, 70
 product of, 69
 pullback of, 69
 pushout of, 70
 right tensor product, 83
 tensor by a set, 78
 trivial, 67
 underlying a module, 67
 underlying a semimodule, 67
 wedge sum of, 71
 0-sphere, 67
 pointed sets
 left-skew monoidal category
 structure on, 82
 right-skew monoidal category
 structure on, 85
 poset
 of (-1) -categories, 2
 of truth values, 2
 powerset, 49
 product of a family of sets, 10
 product of sets, 11
 pullback of sets, 16
 pushout of sets, 27

Q

quotient

 by an equivalence relation, 142

R

relation, 94
 associated direct image
 function, 145
 associated direct image with
 compact support function,
 157
 associated strong inverse image
 function, 149
 associated to a span, 195
 associated weak inverse image
 function, 153
 category of, 100
 closed symmetric monoidal
 category of, 103
 collage of, 134
 composition of, 130
 corepresentable, 124

cotrivial, 98
 domain of, 125
 double category of, 104
 equivalence closure of, 141
 equivalence relation, 141
 equivalence, set of, 141
 functional, 98
 intersection of, 126
 intersection of a family of, 127
 inverse of, 129
 on powersets associated to a
 relation, 162
 partial equivalence relation, 141
 poset of, 94, 137, 139, 141
 product of, 128
 product of a family of, 129
 range of, 125
 reflexive, 135
 reflexive closure of, 136
 reflexive, poset of, 135
 reflexive, set of, 135
 representable, 124
 set of, 94
 symmetric, 137
 symmetric closure of, 137
 symmetric, set of, 137
 total, 99
 transitive, 138
 transitive closure of, 139
 transitive, set of, 139
 trivial, 97
 2-category of, 103
 union of, 125
 union of a family of, 126
 right tensor product of pointed
 sets
 skew associator, 84
 skew left unit, 84
 skew right unit, 85

S
 semimodule
 underlying pointed set of, 67
 set of bilinear morphisms of
 pointed sets, 78
 left, 76
 right, 77
 singleton set, 34
 smash product
 of pointed sets, 86
 span, 175
 associated relation, 195
 bicategory of, 180
 category of, 177, 178
 composition of, 190
 corepresentable, 190
 functional, 176
 horizontal composition of
 morphisms of, 190
 morphism of, 176
 representable, 189
 total, 177
 straightening
 of a fibred set, 236
 of a span, 191
 symmetric difference of sets, 42

U
 union, 35
 of a family of sets, 35
 unstraightening
 for spans, 192
 of an indexed set, 238

Z
 0-category, 5
 0-groupoid, 5